NEW SPANISH VICEROY RECEIVES ORDERS FROM MADRID, SPAIN

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo received orders

from the Spanish government that supported the actions of Chief Pilot Esteban Jose Martinez

but the viceroy was to release the captured British vessels

and provide compensation to the Associated Merchants for salaries and provisions

American trading ship *Fair American* was allowed to quietly sail out of San Blas

so Spanish-American relations would not suffer -- early 1790

British Royal Navy Captain (on leave of absence) James Colnett was told Associated Merchants’ ships

*Argonaut* and *Princess Royal* would be returned to the Associated Merchants

SPANISH VICEROY PREPARES A SMALL FLEET FOR SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

Santa Cruz de Nuca (Nootka Sound) was to be reoccupied by the Spanish

but Spain wanted no repetition of Esteban Jose Martinez’s aggressive actions without just cause

Newly appointed 52nd Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

took steps to reestablish the Spanish colony at San Lorenzo

Commandant of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra issued instructions to occupy

and fortify the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

Spanish officers were also ordered to:

•prevent foreign encroachment on the colony;

•explore and claim “Nueva Galicia”(the west coast);

•collect data on the Pacific Northwest flora and fauna;

•conduct scientific meteorological experiments and obtain mineral samples;

equally as important they were to establish friendly relations with the local Indians

and study their culture

Mexican copper sheets were provided to use in the trade for sea otter pelts

NEWS ABOUT THE EVENTS AT NOOTKA SOUND REACHES LONDON

Great Britain’s King George III and Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger)

soon learned of the British ships *Iphigenia Nubiana, Princess Royal and North West America*

belonging to the Associated Merchants for trading to the Northwest Coast of America

each being captured by Spain’s Esteban Jose Martinez

British Captain James Colnett and his crew were being held as prisoners

at the Spanish naval base at San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)[[1]](#footnote-1)

James Colnett’s arrest was particularly troublesome in England

he was, after all, still an officer of the British Royal Navy on leave of absence

Accounts of events surrounding the Nootka Sound Controversy were embellished in England

by Captain John Meares and his Associated Merchants partner Richard Cadman Etches

to escalate anti-Spanish sentiment in England to the crisis level

COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA ORGANIZES A SPANISH FLEET FOR SAN LORENZO

Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza was the most senior officer available at San Blas, New Spain

he was promoted to Commandant of Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

Commandant Eliza was placed in charge of the fleet to be sent north to defend Spain’s San Lorenzo

to strengthen the settlement there, chart the waters of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

explore the North Pacific and return the *Princesa Real* (former *Princess Royal*) to the British

Commandant Eliza carried instructions to dislodge any foreigners found at San Lorenzo

Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s fleet consisted of four ships:

•Eliza’s flagship, *Concepcion,* was a clumsy shallow-draft ship not very good for northern waters

but the frigate was the largest vessel the Spanish had at San Blas;

•Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo commanded the small armed launch *San Carlos* which was assigned

to explore the coast north of San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) and enter (Alaskan) waters;

•Ensign Jacinto Caamano sailed the *Nuestra Senora del Rosario* (or *La Princesa)*

this ship was sometimes called a frigate and sometimes a corvette -- both were three-masted

Caamano would sail directly to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) but did not sail beyond

•Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper served as commander of the *Princesa Real* this was British captain and businessman John Meares’ confiscated *Northwest America*

she was to be returned to the British when Royal Navy Captain James Colnett

arrived at San Lorenzo

All of the Spanish officers had instructions to explore, build forts, establish relations with the natives,

convert the natives to the Catholic religion and prevent encroachment of foreigners,

but they were not to molest the Russians in the North Pacific

SEVENTY-SIX SPANISH SOLDIERS ACCOMPANY COMMANDANT ELIZA’S FLEET

In addition to the officers and crewmen of Eliza’s expedition

seventy-six soldiers of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia (a community in Spain)

under the command of Senior Captain of the Spanish Army Pedro d’Alberni

were to restore Esteban Jose Martinez’ old fortifications and barracks at Fort San Miguel

and defend the Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca if necessary

against incursions by the British and, in particular, the Russians

they brought artillery for the fortified post with them

eighty other men also from Catalonia also were transported to establish the colony

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK ARRIVES IN MACAU, CHINA

Kendrick sailed the *Lady Washington* into Dirty Butter Bay near Macau, China -- January 26, 1790

there he re-rigged the single-masted sloop into a two masted brigantine

that featured a square-rigged front sail and sloop-rigged rear sail

this transformation took so long that most of the year’s trading season was lost

part of the time Kendrick had been desperately ill

part of the time he had spent refitting the *Lady Washington*

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS BETWEEN BRITAIN AND SPAIN DETERIORATE

After Esteban Jose Martinez had returned to New Spain (Mexico) with the British ships he had seized

then-Viceroy of Mexico Don Manuel Antonio Flores reported a somewhat inaccurate account

of Martinez’ activities to the Spanish government in Madrid, Spain

picking up rumors of an international insult, the outraged British charge d’affaires in Madrid communicated with British Prime Minister Pitt (the Younger)

promptly there followed an exchange of stiff notes between the two world powers,

but the bristling was done in diplomatic privacy

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY CONDUCTS TRADE IN CANTON, CHINA

As Captain Gray was preparing to sail for Boston near the end of January 1790

he received a letter from Captain John Kendrick his trading partner

who had just put into Dirty Butter Bay near Macau, China

by return letter Gray suggested that Kendrick hold onto the pelts as the market was depressed

In Canton Captain Gray met with agents of the newly established firm of Shaw and Randall

to acquire a cargo for Barrel, Bulfinch & Company to transport to Boston

Bill of lading for the shipment was most unique: **Shipped by the grace of God, in good order and condition, by Shaw and Randall, in and upon the good ship called the *Columbia***, **whereof is master under God, for this present voyage, Robert Gray, and now riding at anchor at Wampoa, and by God’s grace bound for Boston, in America -- to say, 220 chests of Bohea tea, 170 half-chests, do, 144 quarter-chests, do, to be delivered unto Samuel Parkman, Esq. or to his assigns; and so God, send the good ship to her desired port in safety, Amen. Dated at Canton, February 3rd, 1790[[2]](#footnote-2)**

*PRINCESA REAL* SETS SAIL FOR SAN LORENZO

It was necessary to speed the Spanish expedition to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

as quickly as possible -- before any other countries could settle at Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

*Princesa Real* commanded by Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper was the first vessel

to leave San Blas -- February 3, 1790

although small, the *Princesa Real* (Associated Merchants former *North West America*)

was in better condition than any of the other ships

this thirty-nine-foot vessel was armed with seven guns

Lieutenant Francisco Eliza on the *Concepcion*, Lieutenant Jacinto Caamano on the *La Princesa*

and Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo aboard the armed launch *San Carlos*

would follow as quickly as practical

SPANISH PREPARATIONS CONTINUE ON THE REMAINDER OF ELIZA’S FLEET

Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s four-ship fleet was the largest Spanish force

yet to be sent to the northwest

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper’s *Princesa Real* had already sailed to San Lorenzo

Eliza’s remaining ships prepared to sail without taking many of the necessary supplies

they were loaded with three month’s supply of hardtack and other provisions

to permanently establish a colony at Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

they also carried artillery to fortify Esteban Jose Martinez’s abandoned Fort San Miguel

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY DEPARTS FROM CHINA

Captain Gray sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* from Canton, China to Boston -- February 12, 1790

Sailing down the Pearl River Captain Gray passed within sight of Captain John Kendrick’s anchorage,

but the two men did not meet as bad weather prevented the possibility

(or so Gray later told the Barrel, Bullfinch and Company owners)

SPANISH FLEET ARRIVES AT SAN LORENZO

Commander of the expedition Commandant Francisco de Eliza sailed the frigate *Concepcion*

accompanied by Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo’s armed launch *San Carlos*

and Ensign Jacinto Caamano with *La Princesa*

Eliza, Fidalgo and Caamano arrived at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) -- April 4, 1790

they anchored at the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca

fortunately for Spain no vessels from unfriendly nations had arrived in the area

Commandant Eliza established three lines of defense for the little settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca:

•300-ton frigate *Concepcion*,

•soldiers under Spanish Army Captain Pedro d’Alberni on land and on the frigate,

•rebuilding of Fort San Miguel and barracks at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

that had been abandoned by Esteban Jose Martinez on San Miguel Island was undertaken

SPANISH SETTLEMENT OF SANTA CRUZ DE NUCA IS ESTABLISHED

Eighty men from Catalonia had been transported north by Commandant Eliza

to re-establish the colony of Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

Seventy-six soldiers of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia

under the command of Senior Captain of the Spanish Army Pedro d’Alberni

began to rebuild Fort San Miguel

Construction of Fort San Miguel and various buildings was difficult

as the fort was located at the top of the small, steep, rocky island

openings and slits in the rock walls of the fort had to be made for the muskets and cannons

it took four days to place eight large cannons -- later six smaller cannons were added

Fort San Miguel was not large enough for eight additional large cannons

Commandant Eliza had brought so they were they were placed in storage on the mainland

Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca was thus fortified by Fort San Miguel

Other tasks were undertaken to secure the Spanish possession:

•some of the men were put to work planting a garden;

•exploring expeditions were organized;

•*Concepcion* carried parts of the *Santa Gertrudis la Magna* (former *North West America)*

which had been dismantled in San Blas

these pieces were used to construct the schooner *Santa Saturnina* named for Eliza’s wife

this was the third incarnation of the *North West America*

(*Santa Saturnina* will be used to explore the Strait of Georgia [1791]);

•exploring expeditions were organized

COMPANY OF VOLUNTEERS OF CATALONIA ARE STATION AT SAN LORENZO

Senior Captain of the Spanish Army Pedro d’Alberni commanded the seventy-six soldiers

permanently stationed at San Lorenzo in defense of the Spanish colony if necessary

Army Captain d’Alberni cultivated the first garden in (today’s British Columbia)

each week he carefully sowed a row each of many different kinds of vegetables

in order to determine the best sowing times

all of the plants he tried he grew successfully with the exception of wheat and maize (corn)

clearly Pedro d’Alberni expected Spain to be there for a long time

SPANISH EFFORTS TO IMPROVE NATIVE RELATIONS BRING ONLY LIMITED SUCCESS

Nootka Indians remembering the [1789] killing of Maquinna’s son Callicum

did not welcome the Spanish when they returned to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Eliza attempted to improve relations with local natives

however, several hostile encounters initiated by the Spanish occurred

planks were stolen from the houses of Nootka Indians for use by the Spanish

on another occasion five Indians were killed during their attempt to steal some water casks

through diplomacy and hard work Commandant Eliza was able to improve somewhat

Spanish relations with the people of Chief Maquinna

at least some of the Nootka Indians grew friendlier and provided assistance to the Spanish

Eliza focused his attention on preparing the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca for the (coming winter)

BRITISH CAPTAIN AND BUSINESSMAN JOHN MERES ARRIVES IN LONDON

(Captain John Meares had sailed from Canton, China [December 15, 1789] to deliver in person

news of the seizing ships belonging to Richard Cadman Etches Associated Merchants

and land Meares claimed to have purchased)

John Meares arrived in London -- April 23, 1790

he suddenly interjected himself into the international furor that London was experiencing

he began to confirm various rumors regarding Spanish aggression in Nootka Sound

Meares hired a press agent

he claimed to have purchased land from Maquinna in exchange for two pistols and trade goods

which had been taken by the Spaniards,

he claimed he constructed a building on this land which was destroyed by the Spanish,

he condemned Esteban Jose Martinez for the killing of Chief Maquinna’s son Callicum

and for having forced British Royal Navy Captain James Colnett’s Chinese artisans

to work in mines in New Spain (Mexico)

Newspaper articles began to appear: **“A correspondent says, the Spaniards have seized three British vessels, in the fur trade, at King George’s, or Nootka Sound, on the Western Coast of North America, which acted under a sanction of a licence from the East-India and South Sea Companies, and their crews are sent to Mexico in irons. A memorial of the transaction has been transmitted and presented to the Government by a Mr. Meares….”**[[3]](#footnote-3)

Captain Meares turned the full force of his considerable talents to preparing a suitable expense account

**“and in the fullness of time produced one that ranks as a triumph of imaginative literature”**[[4]](#footnote-4)

he claimed that his ships were “hulldown” with otter skins when seized;

he inflated the going price for skins;

he stretched his claim to an incredible $653,000 (1790 Spanish dollars)

Spanish policy of keeping all documents secret regarding her exploration activities

led contemporary writers, including some Spaniards, to accept Meares’ version of events

JOHN MEARES PREPARES A *MEMORIAL* FOR THE BRITISH PARLIAMENT

Captain and businessman John Meares and Richard Cadman Etches of the Associated Merchants

jointly began to prepare a Memorial to the British Parliament -- April 30, 1790

Their rendition of the seizing of Associated Merchants’ three ships and John Meares’ land

was written in terms that heavily favored the their (British) position

John Meares asked for an amazing $653,000 (1790 Spanish dollars) in damages

*PRINCESA REAL* ARRIVES AT SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

*Princesa Real* commanded by Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper was an extremely slow ship

although she was the first to sail from San Blas, she arrived last at San Lorenzo -- May 1790

Spain’s Fort San Miguel at San Lorenzo was already re-armed,

the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca was partially built

and a vegetable garden planted

Repairs on the *Princesa Real* were undertaken throughout the month of May

in anticipation of returning British Captain Thomas Hudson’s *Princess Royal*

and British Captain John Meares *North West America*

GREAT BRITAIN DELAYS AN EXPEDITION TO THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Preparation were underway in England to send a ship to the Pacific coast

George Vancouver was to have sailed on this voyage as second officer to Captain Henry Roberts

who, like Vancouver, accompanied Captain James Cook on his third expedition [1776-1780]

This effort was postponed by the British government when John Meares returned from Nootka Sound

with news that the Spanish had seized British ships and property there -- May 1790

SPAIN’S LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO SAILS FROM OF SAN LORENZO FOR ALASKA

Once established at Santa Cruz de Nuca in San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

Commandant Francisco Eliza dispatched cartographer (map maker) Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

on the armed launch *San Carlos* to explore the north Pacific Ocean (Alaska)

Lieutenant Fidalgo sailed from San Lorenzo -- May 4, 1790

under orders to conduct a detailed exploration of the coastline

and to investigate the extent of Russian involvement in (Alaska), counter the Russian presence

and reestablish the Spanish claim to the area

BRITISH KING GEORGE III ESCALATES THE NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY

British King George III sent a message to Parliament -- May 5, 1790

His Royal Majesty noted that three ships flying the British flag had been taken by the Spanish

and the Spanish government had established an exclusive right to trade on the Pacific coast

This message provoked an even greater public uproar of anti-Spanish sentiment in England

JOHN MEARES PRESENTS A MEMORIAL TO THE BRITISH HOUSE OF COMMONS

British captain John Mears and businessman Richard Cadman Etches presented a Memorial

which stirred up the members of Parliament -- May 13, 1790

Meares listed Spanish insults to the British flag:

•Supercargo William Douglas’ arrest and the banishment from Nootka Sound

of the *Iphigenia Nubiana;*

•seizing of the *Northwest America* under Mr. Robert Funter;

•seizing of the *Princess Royal* under Captain Thomas Hudson;

•seizing of the packet boat *Argonaut* under Royal Navy Captain James Colnett;

•and the kidnapping of one hundred Chinese and Hawaiian artisans, carpenters and laborers

BRITAIN TAKES ADVANGAGE OF THE NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY

Spanish seizures of British Associated Merchant’s ships and John Meares’ land at Nootka Sound

and the detaining of a British Royal Navy captain during a time of peace

were an insult to Britain and an offense against the law of nations

Angered by the incidents at Nootka Sound

and by ongoing competition with Spain for the Pacific Northwest

Great Britain’s government escalated the Nootka Sound Controversy

satisfaction was demanded by British government for the wrongs inflicted on its citizens

Utmost indignation was felt and expressed in England regarding Spanish insults to the British flag

John Meares’ charges gave Britain an opportunity to demolish Spain’s claims to North American

that had existed since a [1493] Papal Bull established Spain’s claim to the New World

JOHN MEARES’ ACCOUNTS OF EVENTS AT NOOTKA SOUND COME UNDER DISPUTE

Spain strongly disputed Captain Meares’ claims noting they lacked substance:

•Chief Maquinna subsequently denied that any purchase of land had been made by Meares,

Maquinna said that the Spanish had the only rightful claim to land at Nootka Sound

(facts regarding the amount and ownership of land have not been established to this day);

•Meares’ house had been pulled down by British Supercargo William Douglas -- not the Spanish;

•several versions of the killing of Maquinna’s son identified several possible killers;

•there were no Spanish mines in New Spain to occupy the Chinese artisans

These conflicting claims became key points in the Nootka Sound Controversy

NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY BECOMES THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

British Captain John Meares’ private woes ballooned into public anguish when the British government

issued his *Memorial* as a device to stir up even more popular indignation

Confident though Captain John Meares was he nonetheless must have been surprised

to find the British Foreign Office was already actively involved with the Spanish government

Meares was ushered straightaway into the office of no less a personage

than Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger) himself

Prime Minister Pit realized Great Britain could use the Nootka Sound incident to extort from Spain

recognition of the British right to make settlements in any unpopulated area claimed by Spain

Britain did not acknowledge the Spanish Crown’s ownership of the Pacific coast

Britain recognized no Spanish claims of sovereignty along the Pacific coast

British diplomacy, if it was successful, could very well

break Madrid’s economic and political monopoly on the Americas

EFFORTS TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS ONLY MAKE IT WORSE

Spain’s most effective statesman, Chief Minister of Spain Jose Monino y Redondo,

and Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger) both became involved in the Nootka Sound Crisis

Pitt demanded that Britain had the right to conduct trade in any Spanish territory they desired

despite Spanish laws to the contrary

Pitt knew this claim was indefensible and would likely lead to war,

but he felt driven by public cries of outrage directed toward the Spanish government

Britain in an ultimatum to Spain demanded compensation for the insulting actions undertaken

by Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza initiating the Nootka Sound Crisis

Prime Minister Pitt went on record as being ready to wage war to sustain the right of British merchants

to conduct trade in Asia and the Pacific Northwest

CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT HAS BEEN HELD BY THE SPANISH AT MEXICO CITY

British Royal Navy Captain (on leave of absence) James Colnett received word

from the Viceroy of New Spain that Associated Merchants company’s two ships would be returned

British Royal Naval Captain Colnett’s *Argonaut* was in San Blas

but the *Princesa Real* (Captain Thomas Hudson’s *Princess Royal*)

was with Spanish Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper in the north

Captain Colnett was told he could retrieve *Princesa Real*

if he sailed the *Argonaut* to San Lorenzo (Nootka) Sound to collect it

BRITISH ROYAL NAVY CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT LEAVES MEXICO CITY

Captain James Colnett was returned to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) -- May 1790

where the *Argonaut* was to be returned to his command

but the *Princess Royal* was on her way to Nootka Sound with Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper

and was now known as the *Princesa Real*

Captain Colnett began work refitting his ship (he will remain in San Blas until [July])

SPANISH LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO EXPLORES PRINCE WILLIAM SOUND

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo on the armed launch *San Carlos* entered the Gulf of Alaska

he reached Prince William Sound and investigated (today’s Orca Inlet)

in a solemn ceremony Fidalgo raised a large wooden cross and re-asserted Spanish sovereignty

over the sound which he called “Puerto Cordova” -- May 1790

(the city of Cordova, Alaska located there today retains the name)

his explorations found no signs of any Russian presence

SPAIN MAKES PREPARATIONS FOR WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN

Spain declined to pay compensation to the British for damages during the Nootka Sound incident

war between Spain and Great Britain seemed imminent

Spain had modernized her navy producing new 74-gun ships

and huge 112- and 120-gun three-decker warships

Despite constant shortages of trained crews the Spanish naval force was not to be under-estimated

British naval officers did not do so although British political leaders were less cautious

BRITISH GOVERNMENT MAKES PREPARATIONS FOR WAR

Britain’s King George III informed both houses of Parliament

that resolution of the Nootka Sound Crisis could not be reached -- May 25, 1790

Spain was preparing to enforce her claim to Nootka Sound and the Pacific coast

His British Royal Majesty demanded Parliament support the Crown

and maintain the independence of the British flag

British Royal Navy undertook preparations for combat

preparations were begun to construct a fleet of forty warships

which became known as the “Great Spanish Armament of 1790”

Britain’s Prime Minister William Pitt (the Younger) contacted both the Dutch Republic and Prussia

asking them to provide support to the British as allies

Dutch Republic, long an ally of France against the British, promised naval support to Britain

this resulted in a shift in Dutch alliance from France to Great Britain

Prussia also agreed to provide military support giving rise to the “Triple Alliance”

of Britain, Holland and Prussia

SPAIN SOUGHT FRENCH AID IN THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Spain became alarmed by the actions of the British

angrily Spain called on Louis XVI of France for assistance

under the terms of the Family Compact between the two nations

France had already shifted her support to Britain

also, France was coping with the early stages of the French Revolution [1789-1797]

France would not be able to fight for Spain in an armed conflict

without the French, Spain could not realistically securely hold

their massive North and South American territories in the event of war with Britain

UNITED STATES IS PROTECTED FROM EUROPEAN EVENTS

United States, isolated along the eastern seaboard, was protected from European aggression

however, America’s frontier had barely advanced westward from the Appalachian Mountains

toward the Old Northwest region of the Ohio River, Mississippi River and Great Lakes

United States’ northern boundary with Canada had not been defined

in the region of the head waters of the Mississippi River and the Great Lakes

Canadian fur traders who occupied the area inspired Indians to trap for them

and to take American scalps

Pacific Northwest coast was a remote mystery a year’s voyage removed from the United States.

an unmapped and unexplored route over an unknown continent for an unknown distance

lay between the newest states and the Far West

Spain maintained control over the North American West, Far West and Florida

but the Spanish government was weak, overextended and poorly administered

France, formerly a Spanish ally, had shown little interest in North America

since their defeat during the French and Indian War [1754-1763]

Russia claimed the Far West coast but did not appear to be a serious threat

as the capital city of Moscow was half a world away from the Pacific coast

Great Britain was now exerting pressure to dominate the same region

SPAIN DISPATCHES AN EXPEDITION TO EXPLORE THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

After a month of repairs at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound), *Princesa Real* was made ready to sail

but there was no sign of the British arriving to collect Meares’ confiscated *(Princess Royal)*

Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza dispatched Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper

aboard the *Princesa Real* on a two-month exploration of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

which Esteban Jose Martinez believed was the Northwest Passage across North American

Ensign Quimper was accompanied by Gonzalo Lopez de Haro, the first pilot on the *Concepcion*

and Juan Carrasco who served as second pilot

*Princesa Real* sailed from San Lorenzo to explore the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- May 31, 1790

Quimper followed the earlier route to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

established by Jose Maria Narvaez on the *Santa Gertrudis la Magna* [1789]

(this was John Meares original *North West America*)

sailing south from San Lorenzo Quimper conducted trade with the (Vancouver Island) Indians

they reached the Tla-o-qui-aht Indian village of Opitsaht

where Maquinna had exiled himself after the killing of his son Callicum [1789]

Quimper encouraged the Indian chief to return to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed *Princesa Real* into Clayoquot Sound

where he undertook its exploration and charted the sound

Ensign Quimper left Clayoquot Sound and began a careful examination the west side (outside)

of (today’s Vancouver Island)

SPAIN MAKES INQUIRES TO THE UNITED STATES FOR ASSISTANCE

Spain now without allies in Europe asked for America’s support in fighting the British

this provided a good opportunity for America to negotiate with Spain for Florida

and the Western lands

American frontiersmen felt that Eastern United States interests were opposed to supporting them

Northern boundary had not been defined along the head waters of the Mississippi River

and the Great Lakes

Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson’s Democrat-Republican Party (anti-British)

supported the West and Far West in their need for a secure international boundary

Jefferson believed Great Britain would win the Nootka Sound Crisis

Britain would surround America and block the national expansion of the United States

this possible encirclement by the British posed a serious threat

Secretary of Treasury Alexander Hamilton’s Federalist Party (pro-British)

was not interested in expansion or in opening the Mississippi River and Great Lakes

to trade and commerce

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE PREPARES FOR A SECOND EXPLORING EXPEDITION

Mackenzie was too young and too ambitious to retire after his first expedition

but he had only a passing interest in the fur trade -- he turned his attention to further exploration

Mackenzie had met a Hudson’s Bay Company surveyor in Cumberland House -- June 1790

he realized he needed proper equipment and knowledge to use them to determine his location

For a year Alexander Mackenzie labored determinedly to put his Athabasca Department in shape

so he could travel to London to study the new advances in measuring longitude

ENSIGN QUIMPER ENTERS THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Ensign Manuel Quimper continued his slow and careful examination of (today’s Vancouver Island)

he named “Bonilla (High) Point,” the “Sombrio River” and the “Jordan River”

he added several other Spanish names (which were later changed by British)

Quimper, having entered uncharted water, erected a cross on “Gonzalez Point”

and took possession in the name of His Spanish Royal Majesty Carlos IV

Gonzales Point was named in honor of Gonzales Lopez de Haro, first pilot on this expedition

*Princesa Real* proceeded east along the southern tip of (Vancouver Island)

Quimper discovered and named the “Canal de Haro” (today’s Haro Strait)

(today this body of water serves as the boundary between the United States and Canada)

SPANISH LIEUTENANT FIDALGO CLAIMS (TODAY’S ALASKA) FOR SPAIN

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo continued his investigation along the Alaskan coast in the *San Carlos*

while trading with the Indians (in today’s Prince William Sound) he named several locations

including “Port Gravina” (today’s Gravina Point) where he conducted a ceremony

re-asserting Spanish sovereignty over the region

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo continued down Valdez Arm

he discovered “Puerto Valdez” (Port Valdez) -- June 16, 1790

which he named in honor of Admiral Antonio Valdes head of the Spanish Marines

and Minister of the Indies

Fidalgo sent out an expedition guided by two natives north to (today’s Columbia Bay)

they were the first explorers to approach the (Columbia Glacier)

they did not stay long as loud thunder and “great pieces of snow” were being thrown

they concluded the glacier was an active volcano

QUIMPER TRADES WITH THE INDIANS OF (TODAY’S VANCOUVER ISLAND)

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper anchored the *Princesa Real* outside (today’s Sooke Inlet)

which he named “Puerta de Revillagigedo” in honor of the Spanish viceroy -- June 18, 1790

Manuel Quimper observed approximately 500 Indians who were dressed somewhat differently

from Indians living on the western shore of (Vancouver Island)

their cloaks were made of sea otter pelts, seagull and duck feathers

their hats are not of pyramidal form but flat like the Chinese wore

Quimper traded copper sheets for sea otter skins

he reported on the harvesting and trading of camas bulbs

he also witnessed three “burials” using native canoes

QUIMPER CONTINUES HIS INVESTION OF SOUTHERN (VANCOUVER ISLAND)

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper reached (today’s Victoria, British Columbia) where he named

“Puerto de San Juan” (San Juan Bay) and “Rada de Valdes y Bazan” (today’s Royal Roads)

Quimper anchored in (today’s Esquimalt Harbor) -- June 30, 1790

he named the body of water “Puerto de Cordova” after the 46th Viceroy of New Spain

Antonio Maria Bucareli y Ursua Henestrosa Lasso de la Vega Villacis y Cordova

Quimper claimed the area of (present-day Victoria) for Spain -- July 1, 1790

LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO ENTERS COOK INLET

Spain’s Lieutenant Fidalgo sailing the armed launch *San Carlos* sailed south from Port Valdes

and entered Cook Inlet -- during the first part of July 1790

Lieutenant Fidalgo’s expedition to (today’s Alaska) made their first contact with the Russian traders

on the southwestern coast of the (Kenai Peninsula)

which Fidalgo named *Puerto Revillagigedo* -- July 4, 1790

Finding two Russian trading forts at Cook Inlet he continued quickly toward Kodiak Island

ENSIGN QUIMPER EXPLORES (TODAY’S OLYMPIC PENINSULA)

Leaving Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor) and crossing the Strait of Juan de Fuca to the south

Manuel Quimper sighted a long spit of land he named “Bahia de Quimper” -- July 4, 1790

(today’s Dungeness Spit off the coast of Washington along the Strait of Juan de Fuca)

and the bluff behind (Dungeness Spit) “Punta de Quimper” (Quimper Point)

Spanish Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper dropped anchor near (New Dungeness)

there the sight of a strange vessel moving without paddles

aroused native (probably S’Klallam) curiosity

two dugout cedar canoes had been following at a distance

six more put out from shore to view the *Princesa Real*

Quimper tried to offer the Indians gifts, but they were suspicious

he noted they wore copper coins and beads in their ears

acquired through trade with Indians at the entrance of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Quimper mapped two S’Klallam Indian villages and claimed them for Spain -- July 4

SPANISH LIEUTENANT SALVADOR FIDALGO COMES IN CONTACT WITH RUSSIANS

Lieutenant Fidalgo’s expedition sailed the armed launch *San Carlos* south from the (Kenai Peninsula)

they reached the main Russian settlement on Kodiak Island (in today’s Three Saints Bay)

where he entertained a party of Russian traders

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo conducted another ceremony of sovereignty

near the Russian outpost of Aleandrovsk (today’s Nanwalek, Alaska) -- July 5

ENSIGN MANUEL QUIMPER FINDS THE S’KLALLAM INDIANS LESS TIMID THE NEXT DAY

S’Klallam Indians brought fish, crabs, clams and venison out to the ship to trade -- July 5, 1790

Quimper knocked two water casks apart to obtain iron hoops for barter

he acquired fiber mats, furs, elk hide armor and dog-hair blankets

Indians seemed very pleased and guided the *Princesa Real* to the Dungeness River

where the ship’s water supply was replenished

QUIMPER’S SECOND PILOT JAUN CARRASCO EXPLORES FOR TWO WEEKS

Pilot Juan Carrasco in a longboat led an expedition -- beginning July 5, 1790

just beyond the location reached by Manuel Quimper he sighted an opening he thought was a bay Carrasco named but did not enter “Ensenada de Caamano”

in honor of Spanish explorer Jacinto Caamano commander of the *La Princesa*

(in fact this would later be named Admiralty Inlet by Captain George Vancouver [1792]

and is the entrance to today’s Puget Sound)

(During the next two weeks, Juan Carrasco led his expedition around (today’s Protection Island)

Juan Carrasco entered Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery) and named “Quimper Peninsula”

before visiting (Point Wilson)

Pilot Carrasco added several other Spanish names

**(**Captain George Vancouver re-named several of the features identified by Carrasco)

SPAIN’S LIEUTENANT SALVIDOR FIDALGO SAILS SOUTH FROM (KENAI, ALASKA)

Lieutenant Fidalgo sailed the armed launch *San Carlos* from the Kenai Peninsula (of Alaska)

south toward San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) -- July 6, 1790

However, when he attempted to enter the sound he was barred by heavy storms

(Fidalgo led the expedition back to San Blas, New Spain arriving on [November 15, 1790])

BRITISH ROYAL NAVY CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT SAILS THE *ARGONAUT* FROM SAN BLAS

Captain James Colnett, on leave of absence from the British Royal Navy, was given a passport

by Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes allowing him to sail to San Lorenzo

to receive the *Princess Royal* which had been seized by Esteban Jose Martinez [1789]

Colnett was then to leave the coast because it was, as the viceroy proclaimed, Spanish territory

Colnett was also forbidden to trade with the Indians

Captain Colnett and what remained of the *Argonaut’s* crew set out from San Blas

bound for Nootka Sound -- July 9, 1790

QUIMPER EXPLORES THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed from the area of (Dungeness Spit) to the northeast

*Princesa Real* reached the (San Juan Islands)

Quimper named “San Juan Island,” “Lopez Island,” “Fidalgo Island,” “Boca (bay) de Flon”

(Deception Pass) and “Boca de Fidalgo” (Rosario Strait) -- July 1790

he named what he thought was a bay in honor of Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

Quimper reached the of what he named “Gulfo de Gaston” (Bellingham Bay)

during a brief encampment near the mouth of (present day Padden Creek)

several of Quimper’s men reportedly found a group of hostile Lummi natives

who drove Quimper’s men back to their rowboat   
Returning to the southwest Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper identified (Sequim Bay)

he charted and named “Doca (Dock) de Bodega y Quadra” (Port Discovery)

QUIMPER TAKES POSSESSION AT NEW DUNGENESS

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper took formal possession of the region

in the name of His Spanish Majesty Carlos IV -- July 18, 1790

Quimper placed a Holy Cross close to a pine tree on which another cross was cut in the bark

at the foot of the tree the “bottle of possession” was buried

Quimper named “Punta de Santa Cruz” (at the unincorporated town of Dungeness, Washington)

he dubbed the bay “Puerto de Quimper” (Dungeness Bay)

Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed the *Princesa Real* sailed out of Porto de Quimperas he continued his investigation of the south (Washington) side of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

SPANISH ENSIGN QUIMPER CONTINUES HIS SLOW, DETAILED EXPLORATION

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro made a slow careful examination

of the Strait of Juan de Fuca as they paid particular attention to possible harbors and colony sites

they charted and took possession of all they found

*Princesa Real* reached the mouth of the (Elwha River) and continued westward

with the outgoing tide -- July 21, 1790

SPAIN AND ENGLAND ESCALATE THEIR POSITIONS

By now Spain had ordered her fleet of navy ships to mobilize

she had received a promise of fourteen ships of the line from France’s King Louis XVI

as one European monarch came to the aid of another monarch

British Parliament reacted to this French support by voting a war chest of a million British pounds

and dispatching troops to the West Indies where they would be close to Spain’s rich colonies

QUIMPER ENDS HIS EXPLORATION OF THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro aboard the *Princesa Real*

continued their slow and detailed exploration of the inland waters of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Finally, a lightning storm convinced Quimper to end his pleasant voyage of exploration

or they might miss the favorable winds back to San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) and run out of food

Quimper continued sailing westward with the outgoing tide on their way toward San Lorenzo

they sailed past (today’s Port Angeles)

*Princesa Real* anchored for the night near (today’s Clallam Bay) -- July 31, 1790

ALFEREZ MANUEL QUIMPER REACHES NEAH BAY

Continuing to sail with the tides Quimper stopped at “Bahia de Nunez Gaona” (Neah Bay)

which he named after Spanish Admiral Manuel Nunez Gaona

(this name was later removed by the British and the location was renamed Neah Bay)

There he and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro raised a cross and took formal possession

in the name Spain’s King Carlos IV -- Sunday, August 1, 1790

on the Strait of Juan de Fuca about five miles east of Cape Flattery

As the *Princesa Real* continued around the western tip (of Washington State)

Makah Indian Chief Tatoosh hailed the ship (at today’s Pillar Point)

Quimper described being met by Indians in two canoes who directed the Spanish to fresh water

and gave them salmonberries

Quimper sighted and named “La Gran Montagna Carmelita” (Mount Baker)

because the mountain reminded him of the flowing white robes

worn by the Catholics of the Order of the Brothers of Our Lady of Mount Carmel

(Mount Baker was renamed by British Captain George Vancouver [1792])

Quimper and his men successfully conducted trade with the Makah Indians of the region

*Princesa Real* spent eleven days here as Indians swarmed out to barter fish, salmon berries

and salmon weighing one hundred pounds or more

SPANISH SAILOR IS KILLED BY INDIANS

Ensign Quimper was cautious about sending men ashore but the Spanish had washing to do

a creek emptying into the bay seemed a good place to do it

After several sailors had been ashore for about an hour, a commotion occurred

as a soldier hungry for berries entered the forest

while he was off guard, natives stole his cutlass and struck him on the head

they also shot arrows at him but fearing Spanish guns the Indians fled

badly wounded the sailor was found by his companions -- they all returned to the *Princesa Real*

Alferez Manuel Quimper took possession of two canoes left by the attackers

and waited to see what would happen next

Chief Tatoosh, in whose territory the attack had taken place, sent word the next morning

that he had punished the guilty tribesmen

Quimper dispatched the canoes to the chief and gave him presents

Tatoosh traded a quantity of sea otter pelts with Quimper

Spaniards surveyed the harbor, cut fire wood and obtained new masts for their ship

fortunately, the remainder of their visit near Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was uneventful

QUIMPER PROCEEDS TOWARD SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was not well suited for mooring large ships

but it offered Spain a ready base at the northwest tip of the (Olympic Peninsula)

for protecting her political and commercial interests in this region

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed the *Princesa Real* out of Bahia de Nunez Gaona

Makah Indians were sorry to see them go and brought gifts up to the very last day

Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro turned toward San Lorenzo -- early August

they continued their leisurely pace as they traveled north along the outside of (Vancouver Island)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK IS A POOR BUSINESSMAN

Kendrick paid for the refurbishing of the *Lady Washington* with the money he had received

from furs given to him by the Spanish at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) to be sold in China for them

then Kendrick sold the *Lady Washington* to himself in a sham transaction

Pelt market prices were low, Chinese officials were difficult, refitting the ship was expensive

and Captain John Kendrick appears not to have been scrupulously honest

after this visit to Macau there were no returns for Boston’s Barrel, Bulfinch & Company

from the sale of pelts, sandalwood, or the ship

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY RETURNS TO BOSTON

Three years after first sailing from Boston on the *Lady Washington* American Captain Robert Gray

returned home on the *Columbia Rediviva --* August 9, 1790

after exchanging ships with his trading partner John Kendrick

Captain Robert Gray was warmly welcomed on his return

all of Boston turned out in its best attire to welcome the returning ship, officers and crew

Gray was greeted at the dock by Governor of Massachusetts John Hancock Boston Harbor’s fort gave the ship a federal salute of thirteen guns, and **“three huzzas” rose for a “great concourse of citizens assembled on the various wharves”**[[5]](#footnote-5)

Governor Hancock held a reception in the American seafarers’ honor

to which the leading men of Massachusetts came

Gray attended the event in formal attire marching down the middle of the street

followed closely by “Crown Prince” Attoo, his Kanaka (Hawaiian) attendant

who was described as a living flame, clad in a crested feather helmet

and a feather cloak of golden suns set in scarlet

Captain Gray had many a tale to spin for his listeners at the reception

not the least interesting was his eyewitness version of the squabble

between the British and the Spanish at Nootka Sound

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY’S TRIP INCREASES AMERICAN PRESTIGE

*Columbia Rediviva* did not bring a profitable return on the owners’ original $49,000 investment

*Columbia* spent two seasons gathering furs on the coast but the furs had not sold well in Canton

cargo of Chinese teas carried to Boston had been partially damaged

sponsors of the trip, Barrel, Bullfinch and Company had made very little money

Gray blamed his partner John Kendrick for the poor return on investment

Still, Captain Robert Gray’s journey was immensely profitable in terms of American prestige

Gray had sailed 42,000 miles to become first American captain to circumnavigate the globe

and *Columbia Rediviva* was the first American ship to accomplish that feat

in some of the most remote parts of the world

Company partners met in Bulfinch’s library and the partnership reorganized

two of the partners decided to withdraw

but the others considered prospects promising enough to warrant a second venture

*Columbia Rediviva* was overhauled and outfitted for a second trip

Captain Robert Gray was promoted to a full partnership while Captain John Kendrick was not

Captain Gray was given full command of the trading operation

*PRINCESS REAL* REACHES SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND)

Spanish Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper accompanied by first pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro

were unable to enter the port of San Lorenzo for six days due to heavy fog

*Princesa Real* (the former *Princess Royal*)turned toward Monterey, California -- September 1, 1790

she entered that port -- September 12

SPAIN IS IN A WEAK POSITION REGARDING THE THREAT FROM GREAT BRITAIN

Six nations originally competed for the vast region along the Pacific coast

Portugal, France, Russia, Spain, Great Britain and the United States

Portugal and France had been eliminated early on

two countries remained very active in the Pacific coast trade

United States sent one hundred eight trading ships in search of sea otter during this decade

Great Britain sent twenty-two ships during the same years

Portugal and France had only a handful of ships trading off the Pacific coast

Spain, finding itself without allies and in a weak position, decided to negotiate to avoid war

King Carlos IV declared he would make good all losses suffered at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

however, his Spanish Majesty himself would make the decision

regarding the details of any settlement

CAPTAIN GRAY ATTRACTS AMERICAN COMPETITION IN THE SEA TRADE

When Captain Robert Gray returned to Boston on the *Columbia Rediviva*

other merchants became encouraged to send their own ships to trade for furs

Seventy-ton Brigantine *Hope*, an ironically named former slave ship,

was owned by Thomas H. Perkins and James Mages

*Hope* left Boston bound for the Queen Charlotte Islands [renamed Haida Gwaii in 2007]

sailing under twenty-eight-year-old Joseph Ingraham -- September 16, 1790

Ingraham was the former first mate under Captain Robert Gray on the *Columbia Rediviva*

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY PREPARES A SECOND TRIP TO THE PACIFIC COAST

*Columbia Rediviva* was better outfitted for this return to the Pacific coast

Captain Gray was placed in full command with a cargo of trading goods worth $25,000

2,000 bricks, 135 barrels of beef, sixty barrels of pork, 1,500 pounds of gunpowder,

five hogsheads of New England and West Indian rum and quantities of tea, sugar,

chocolate, and miscellaneous items such as copper sheet, **“Barr Iron, Iron Hoops,**

**“Chissells, blue duffil,** (sic) **scarlet coating, buttons by the gross,”[[6]](#footnote-6)**

and other items

In preparation for his sailing, Gray received an official letter from President George Washington to serve as his passport: **“To all Emperors, Kings, Sovereign princes, State and Regents and to their representative officers Civil and military, and to all others whom it may concern:**

**I, George Washington, President of the United States of America, do make known that Robert Gray, Captain of a ship called the *Columbia,*** **of the burden of about 230 tons, is a citizen of the United States, and that the said ship which he commands belongs to the citizens of the United States; and as I wish that the said Robert Gray may prosper in all his lawful affairs, I do request all the before mentioned and each of them separately, when the said Robert Gray shall arrive with his vessel and cargo, that they will be pleased to receive with kindness and treat him in a becoming manner, &c., and thereby I shall consider myself obliged.**

**Sept., 16, 1790, New York City**

**Geo. Washington**

**President**

**Thomas Jefferson**

**Secretary of State[[7]](#footnote-7)**

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY BEGINS HIS SECOND EXPEDITION TO THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

On their first effort American captains John Kendrick and Robert Gray had made very little profit

for their financial backers: Barrel, Bullfinch and Company

however some of the partners believed a profit could be made with a few minor adjustments

their company was reorganized

*Columbia Rediviva* set sail from Boston bound for Clayoquot Sound -- September 28, 1790

NOOTKA SOUND CONVENTION IS SIGNED TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Both Spain and England were confronted with the French Revolution

which was a far more dangerous situation to each nation’s monarchy

than was the Nootka Sound Crisis

in view of the possible revolutionary menace Spain and Great Britain

agreed to sign the purposefully vague Nootka Sound Convention -- October 28, 1790

(this is sometimes called the “Nootka Agreement”)

Nootka Sound Convention held that property owned by the British at Nootka Sound would be returned

Associated Merchants ships *Princess Royal,* *Argonaut* and *North West America* were to be returned

Meares’ claim of other property losses proved to be more difficult to resolve

British held that John Meares had in fact purchased the whole of Nootka Sound from Maquinna

as well as some land to the south

Spain claimed that the only land purchased by Meares was the small parcel

where John Meares had built the small sloop *North West America*

(in fact, no land or buildings had been seized by Spanish Lieutenant Esteban Jose Martinez

during the Nootka Sound incident)

Nootka Sound Convention also held the northwest coast was open to traders of both Britain and Spain

each nation was free to navigate and fish in the Pacific Ocean

and to trade and establish temporary settlements to support fishing on unoccupied land

Complicating the issues surrounding the Nootka Crisis

was the changing role of the Nootka Indians in relation to Britain and Spain

Nootkas had become highly suspicious and hostile toward Spain

following the [1789] killing of Chief Maquinna’s son Callicum

but the Spanish had worked hard to improve the relationship

Both countries agreed negotiators would be sent to Nootka Sound

to resolve the land ownership dispute and other issues

and work out the details of a final settlement

Spain retained control of Nootka Sound until the details of the agreement could be worked out

(this diplomatic process took several years)

Spain continued to garrison her colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel

at (Friendly Cove) on San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

John Meares and Parliament appeared to be unsatisfied with this resolution

MUCH OF THE NOOTKA SOUND CONTROVERSY REMAINS UNRESOLVED

Although restitution of the British Associated Merchants’ ships

*Princess Royal*, *Argonaut* and *North West America*

was already being undertaken by the Spanish government in New Spain (Mexico),

Great Britain continued to make an issue of the affair although the British were not anxious

to unravel the truth regarding John Meares’ land issues at Nootka Sound

or to weigh the merits of the competing claims

Britain wanted to provoke more general issues than the claims of John Meares:

•could claims to sovereignty be established simply on the grounds of discovery

and the act of taking possession, or was occupation a requirement to be a legitimate claim?

•was the Pacific Ocean a closed sea limited to Spanish navigation, or was it an open sea

with reciprocal freedoms for subjects of both powers to fish and trade its unsettled parts?

TWO SHIPS OF COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA’S EXPEDITON RETURN TO SAN BLAS

Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper and Pilot Gonzalo Lopez de Haro with the *Princesa Real*

reached San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) -- November 13, 1790

ending their successful exploration of (Washington’s inland waters -- today’s Salish Sea)

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo arrived back in San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

with the armed launch *San Carlos* -- November 14, 1790

after his successful exploration of the mysterious waters of the north Pacific Ocean (Alaska)

Spanish cartographers (map makers) busied themselves filling in newly discovered details

INFORMATION REGARDING FRANCISCO DE ELIZA’S EXPEDITON IS TROUBLING

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo was surprised to learn

that the *Princesa Real* (Captain and businessman John Meares’ *Princess Royal*)

was still in Spanish possession

he dispatched a message to the Court in Madrid recommending the return of the vessel

to the British at Macau, China

he also sent a report of Quimper’s explorations of the Strait of Juan de Fuca with nine of his charts

Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes was appalled by the lack of scientific interest in the Indians

and the rather laconic descriptions of life and conditions at Nootka Sound in the explorers’ reports

Juan Vicente de Guemes was further distressed when he learned that valuable copper sheet had been given as gifts to the Indians by Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Santa Cruz

these copper sheets were to be used to gauge the potential of the sea otter trade

it was Guemes’ opinion a few trinkets and old scrap metal would do for gifts

Guemes’ complaint only displayed the viceroy’s ignorance regarding the situation

at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) and along the north Pacific coast:

•there was little time to engage in scientific experiments;

•Indians refused to trade for inferior goods when the British and American traders

offered copper, weapons and other desirable items

SPAIN ATTEMPTS TO MAKE AMENDS WITH THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT

Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo ordered Ensign Manuel Quimper

to sail from San Blas to The Philippines and deliver the *Princesa Real* to James Colnett

when he arrived there

(Quimper did not connect with Colnett in The Philippines

Quimper remained in command of *Princess Royal* (*Princess Royal*) until the ship was delivered

to her British Associated Merchants owners at the Sandwich Islands [Hawaii])

SPAIN PROPOSES A BOUNDARY IN THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST TO THE BRITISH

Spain hoped to create a more defensible situation by withdrawing some of her former claim

Spain’s King Carlos IV proposed to Great Britain that the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

could serve as the boundary between Spanish and British territory -- winter 1790-1791

Spain would maintain its claim of all land south of the Strait

Britain could possess all land north of the Strait to 60º north latitude

as the region beyond was claimed by Russia

if Britain accepted the proposal Spain would have to relocate Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca

and Fort San Miguel to a site south the of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Spain prepared to construct a new colony in the Pacific Northwest to defend her territory

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vincent de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo sent orders

to Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza

to prepare another exploring expedition to search for new locations to colonize

and to further explore the region

this time the expedition was to be led by Commandant Eliza

WINTER AT SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND) IS DIFFICULT

Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza and the Spanish faced a harsh winter

in the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound)

both Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo’s *San Carlos*

and Alferez Manuel Quimper on the *Princesa Real* had sailed for San Blas

no other vessel could be spared from the colony to sail to San Blas -- winter 1790-1791

information was slow to arrive in Mexico City regarding the potential of the

Spanish northern territory or about whether the Indians were being attracted to Catholicism

Eliza, the crew of the *Concepcion*, the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia soldiers

and the additional volunteers from Catalonia began to suffer great privation

lack of fresh food resulted in outbreaks of scurvy

stores of biscuits were either rotted from the humidity or were consumed by hordes of rats

during the winter nine men died

Commandant Eliza had to send thirty-two soldiers and sailors to Monterey, California

suffering from a variety of ailments including colds, rheumatic pains and dysentery

In spite of these harsh conditions Eliza collected information during the quiet winter months

(he later was able to present his superiors with a comprehensive view of the country, its inhabitants

and its potential usefulness to Spain

he was impressed by the Indians’ canoes and their maritime skills

he described their methods of fishing and whaling and observed their ceremonies

like many other Spanish observers he had nothing good to say about the climate

or the potential value of the northwest coast

he believed San Lorenzo’s only promise lay with the maritime fur trade

but he noted that sea otters were being rapidly depleted

and that the Indians were losing interest in trade goods)

BRITISH ROYAL NAVY CAPTAIN JAMES COLNETT ARRIVES IN NOOTKA SOUND

British Navy Captain James Colnett reached Nootka Sound aboard the Argonaut

to collect the *Princess Royal --* January 4, 1791

John Mears’ ship that had been seized by the Spanish [1789]

However before Colnett arrived the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*) had sailed for San Blas

under the command of Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper

therefore it could not be returned to Colnett as required by the Nootka Convention

(Colnett spent about three months trading along the Pacific coast acquiring about 1,100 sea otter pelts

when he finished trading he sailed to China by way of the Sandwich Islands)

SPAIN DEALS WITH THE RETURN OF THE ASSOCIATED MERCHANTS’ SHIPS

Governments of Spain and Great Britain agreed that the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*)

would be returned to representatives of its in Macau, China

Commander of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra issued orders from San Blas

to now-Lieutenant Manuel Quimper to take the *Princesa Real* to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

to chart those waters and then sail to the Philippines to turn his vessel over to

Philippines Governor-General Felix Berenguer de Marquina or his representative

who would then have it returned to the British at Macau, China

Alferez Manuel Quimper sailed the ship from San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)[[8]](#footnote-8) -- February 14, 1791

BRITISH TAKE STEPS TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Nootka Sound Crisis made it imperative that someone be sent to the Pacific Northwest

to represent the interests of the British government in resolving the issues that remained in dispute

and to receive the property once owned by Richard Cadman Etches’ Associated Merchants

although the real estate claimed by British captain John Meares remained unresolved

British Royal Navy Captain George Vancouver was selected as that representative

Vancouver had been preparing for an expedition to the South Seas when Captain John Meares

made his appeal to the British Parliament demanding the return of his ships, land and buildings

he allegedly had seized by Spanish Pilot Esteban Jose Martinez [1788]

and damages to Meares for the financial injuries he suffered

Captsin Vancouver was only thirty-four-year-old but he was a seasoned sailor

and an established surveyor and navigator

SPANISH COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA PREPARES AN EXPLORING EXPEDITION

Commandant of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra sent instructions

to Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza

proposing further exploration of the Strait of Juan de Fuca to be led by Eliza himself

Eliza was to report fully on its geography, resources and inhabitants

Commandant Francisco de Eliza decided to use a two-ship fleet for his exploration activities

Lieutenant Lopez Goazalo de Haro’s small packet boat *San Carlos* was Eliza’s ship for this voyage

with Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Jose Antonio Verdia served as first and second pilots

Schooner *Santa Saturnina,* a new thirty-nine foot schooner with seven guns,

served as consort and was be used to explore shallower waters

(this was the third incarnation of the North West America built at Nootka Sound [1788]

as the parts to the ship had been brought from San Blas to be reconstructed

this time she had been named for Eliza’s wife)

*Santa Saturnina* was commanded by twenty-three-year-old Jose Maria Narvaez

Juan Carrasco served as pilot

VANCOUVER WAS ALSO TO EXPLORE AND CLAIM THE PACIFIC COAST FOR BRITAIN

He was to proceed to the Pacific coast of North America for the purpose of making an accurate survey

between 30º north latitude and Cook’s River (60º North)

and to determine the number of settlements along the coast

Captain Vancouver was further instructed to bear in mind the need for **“acquiring accurate information with respect to the nature and extent of any water communication which may tend in any considerable degree to facilitate an intercourse for the purpose of commerce between the North West coast and the countries upon the opposite side of the Continent, which are inhabited or occupied by His Majesty’s subjects.”[[9]](#footnote-9)**

he was specifically instructed to search for the Northwest Passage across the continent

and note: **“The discovery of a near communication between any such sea or strait, and any river running into or from the Lake of the Woods would be particularly useful.”[[10]](#footnote-10)**

that such a river existed was reinforced by fanciful maps drawn by Montreal fur traders

whose information was based on the conjecture and guesses of Indians

Peter Pond had sent such a map to the British government [1785]

but he was **“not to pursue any inlet or river further than it shall appear to be navigable by vessels of such burthen as might safely navigate the Pacific Ocean.”[[11]](#footnote-11)**

lastly, he received directions to **“cooperate and treat in a friendly manner anyone they might meet from ‘any other Power or State’, and should he meet any Spanish subjects he was ‘to offer to him that they should make to each other reciprocally a free and unreserved communication of all Plans and Charts of Discoveries made by them in their respective voyages’.”[[12]](#footnote-12)**

COMMANDER GEORGE VANCOUVER WAS WELL-CHOSEN FOR HIS ASSIGNMENT

George Vancouver was born [June 22, 1757] to John Jasper Vancouver and his wife Bridget

he was the youngest of five children in the well-to-do family

from boyhood he had been trained to think clearly and work hard

his mother died when he was eleven

he completed his formal education at age fifteen and joined the British Royal Navy

he was trained in a harsh school dealing with rough men

with uncharacteristic modesty Vancouver attributed his wisdom and good judgment

to his teacher whom Vancouver admired and respected

Vancouver went to sea with Captain James Cook’s second expedition aboard HMS *Resolution*

he served as a midshipman [1772-1775]

he also accompanied Cook’s third voyage [1776–1780] this time aboard the *Discovery*

Vancouver was with Cook when he met his death in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

when Vancouver returned to England he was promoted to naval lieutenant at age twenty-three

After training with Captain Cook he sailed and observed under the best of England’s commanders

he spent considerable time globe-trotting in the Society Islands, the Marquesas Islands,

New Zealand, New Hybridize and New Caledonia

Vancouver saw plenty of floggings and watched cannibals boil and eat human heads

yet he was not seriously brutalized or coarsened by these sights

VANCOUVER ASSUMED ALL RIGHTS AND PRIVILEDGES OF A BRITISH OFFICER

Vancouver was an English officer with all of the rights and privileges of the position

he considered himself a gentlemen -- that is, superior to most other men

harsh and full of self-pride as was the custom of the navy at that time

Vancouver possessed a quick temper but was honest beyond question

he possessed no use for, or sympathy with, other people’s ideas

opposing views from subordinates were rewarded with time in the ship’s brig

Vancouver always maintained strict military control -- some thought him cold-blooded

he was known to use cruel and unusual punishments for the slightest infractions

he always wore the lash (whip) around his wrist as was the custom

ready to apply it to the bare backs of obstinate sailors

solitary confinement in brig in chains with bread and water were ordinary punishments

he could and once did use the death penalty when he ordered a sailor shot with a pistol ball

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER PREPARES HIS EXPEDITION

Vancouver’s flag ship was the 337-ton sloop-of-war HMS *Discovery* was built [1789]

its ninety-six feet of plank deck was sheeted with copper

she had a keel of seventy-nine feet with a beam of twenty-seven feet four inches

she carried ten four-pounder cannons and ten swivel-guns

she carried a standard crew of one hundred

As Master of the *Discovery* George Vancouver had great confidence in his own judgment and skill

he was an unrelenting and careful officer

he proved to be a most accurate and painstaking observer

(as he examined more of the North American coast line in an open boat than anyone)

Vancouver’s consort ship, *Chatham*, was a newly constructed armed tender with crew of forty-five

she was placed under the command of Naval Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton

Vancouver and Broughton had been shipmates on previous voyages

135-tons burden *Chatham* was eighty feet long with a twenty-two foot beam

she carried four three-pounders and six swivel-guns

her decks also were sheeted with copper

Captain George Vancouver was allowed to choose his own officers and men

he selected the finest one hundred thirty-four sailors the British could offer

like Vancouver all of his men were unmarried although one “Widow’s man” was listed

as was the practice at the time this fictitious sailor was kept on the navy’s books

in order to make payments to the families of dead crew members

to keep widows from being destitute

oldest man on the expedition -- Lieutenant Joseph Whidbey was thirty-nine years old

Whidbey was the best man with instruments on the expedition

a fine mathematician, he had perfected a method of surveying from small boats

his system was to land on conspicuous points and take compass bearings

of other prominent landmarks and, whenever possible,

make observations of the sun at noon to determine his latitude

as the boats cruised between landings the officers sketched and took notes

when they returned to the *Discovery* the data was placed on a smooth map

and added into the charts already drawn

next oldest crewman was thirty-eight-year-old Archibald Menzies the ship’s doctor and surgeon

he was a member of the British Royal Society and was a botanist and naturalist

Menzies had sailed on the *Prince of Wales* with Captain James Colnett [1786]

and had made a large collection of plants during that tour

among his discoveries was a species of bush, arbutus, that grows on the coast

it was named “Arbutus menziesii”

Second Lieutenant Peter Puget was twenty-six or twenty-seven years old

his exact birthday remains unknown

Peter Puget’s father was a wealthy banker who had died when his youngest son was three

Puget became enrolled as a Midshipman in the British Royal Navy at age twelve

he was commissioned an officer at age twenty-three

GEORGE VANCOUVER EXPEDITION SETS SAIL FROM ENGLAND

Captain Vancouver sailed the HMS *Discovery* from Falmouth, England -- April 1, 1791

accompanied by HMS *Chatham* sailed by Lieutenant-Commander William R. Broughton

(Vancouver noted four years later: **“No small portion of mirth passed amongst the seamen, in consequence of our having sailed from old England on the first of April, for the purpose of discovering a north-west passage.”**[[13]](#footnote-13) **)**

Their route took themby way of the Cape of Good Hope around the southern tip to Africa

to Australia, New Zealand, Tahiti and the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) to the Pacific coast

(this journey took through the [winter of 1791-1792]) and was, of course,

summer season for the Southern Hemisphere)

LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MAUNEUL QUIMPER CHARTS THE SANDWICH ISLANDS

As Spanish Lieutenant Quimper conducted his exploration and charting of the Sandwich Islands

he had a tense encounter with British Royal Navy Captain on leave of absence James Colnett

who demanded an explanation from Quimper as to why the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*)

had not yet been returned to the British -- April 1, 1791

Lieutenant Quimper explained his orders were to chart the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

and then take the *Princesa Real* (*Princess Royal*) to the Philippines

to be turned over to another Spanish officer for transport to Macau, China British Royal Navy Captain James Colnett became angry and prepared to seize the ship by force

this quarrel was calmed by John Kendrick, Jr. the son of Captain John Kendrick

who had entered Spanish service and was on board the *Princess Royal*

during the intense discussion Quimper slipped away with the *Princesa Real*

DAVID THOMPSON’S APPRENTICESHIP FOR HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY COMES TO AN END

Hudson’s Bay Company clerk David Thompson had spent two winters [1789-1791]

at Cumberland House on the Saskatchewan River recovering from his severely broken leg

during that time he developed his mathematical, astronomical and surveying skills

guided by Hudson's Bay Company surveyor Philip Turnor

it was at this time that he lost the sight in his right eye as he took sightings of the sun

David Thompson became a Hudson’s Bay Company fur trader

when his apprenticeship ended rather than receiving the fine clothes

that were usually offered by the company to mark the occasion

Thompson requested a set of surveying tools -- the company gave him both

SPANISH LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MANUEL QUIMPER SAILS FOR THE PHILIPPINES

Lieutenant Quimper completed his exploration of the islands of Hawaii, Maui and Oahu

he sailed the *Princesa Real* for the Philippines -- April 19, 1791

(and arrived at Manila, Philippines in [June 4] as ordered where he turned over his ship

to Vicente Llanos y Valdes, a relative of the Minister of the Spanish Navy)

another Spanish captain would take the ship from the Philippines to Macau, China

as had been agreed to by the Spanish and British governments there the ship would be returned

to the Associated Merchants in Macau

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TRAVELS TO LONDON TO GET AN EDUCATION

Athabasca Department was made ready for his departure to learn the skills of a geographer

Mackenzie went with the Spring Brigade carrying out the year’s harvest of furs

down the interminable rivers, across the lakes, over the portages to Montreal -- spring 1791

it was his first visit to civilization in six grueling years

yet he was so driven he did not, he could not, relax

In Montreal he took a ship for London

while in London he poured over everything about the Northwest he could find

guesswork maps, the myths of Jonathan Carver,

and the more factual accounts of captains James Cook and John Meares

he bought instruments and taught himself how to make astronomical observations

and how to calculate the results

like a man possessed, he crammed all of the learning he would need

into the year given to him for that purpose

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK SAILS TO JAPAN

*Lady Washington* had been refitted from her single-masted sloop rigging

to a double-masted brigantine configuration in Macau, China

before all of the pelts could be sold Captain Kendrick had been arrested and ordered out of Macau

Captain John Kendrick sailed out of Macau taking two hundred prime furs with him -- spring 1791

Kendrick ventured to Japan in company with the ship *Grace* under Captain William Douglas

the former captain of the *Iphigenia Nubiana*

these were the first two American captains who entered that forbidden country

Japanese were not interested in sea otter pelts

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION REACHES NEW SPAIN (MEXICO)

Captain Alejandro Malaspina on the *Descubierta* and Captain Jose Bustamante y Guerra

sailing the *Atrevida* arrived in Acapulco, New Spain (Mexico)

There they received new orders from Spanish King Carlos IV

they were to investigate a story told by a mysterious [1588] Spanish traveler,

Lorenzo Ferrer de Maldonado, who supposedly discovered a strait at 60º north latitude

that could be the long undiscovered Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

Malaspina and Guerra set sail at once on a direct course for Yakutat Bay (Alaska) -- May 1, 1791

to investigate alleged discoveries of Captain Maldonado

CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK RETURNS TO THE PACIFIC COAST

*Lady Washington* sailed from Japan to the Northwest coast stopping in the Queen Charlotte Islands

Kendrick visited Barrell Sound (now Houston Stewart Channel) once again

this was where he had clashed with Haida natives [1789] over stolen clothing

natives appeared to have forgotten the incident as trade was conducted with success

But Haida Chief Coyah and his people had not forgotten their ill treatment by Kendrick

Indians suddenly rushed the crew and the men on shore and a battle ensued

raiders overran the decks of the ship and captured the arms chest where weapons were stored

sailors tumbled down the companionways searching for weapons below Indians closed about American Captain John Kendrick

one chief snarled **“Put me in your cannon now”[[14]](#footnote-14)** and lunged at Kendrick with a dagger

Kendrick jumped backward as the blade ripped through his shirt nicking his belly

Kendrick found an iron bar and when Coyah came into sight he leaped on the Haida chief

one of Coyah’s men held a fierce-looking weapon at Kendrick’s face

ready to kill when the order was given

Sailors returned to the deck with firearms -- at the first volley Coyah and his raiders fled the ship

one Haida woman encouraged the attack by urging on the fight

even after her arm had been severed by a cutlass she was the last one to retreat

she jumped into the water and as she swam toward shore a crewman shot her

as canoes and swimmers struggled to reach shore a barrage of grape shot killed forty or more

including Coyah’s wife and two children

Coyah and his two brothers were wounded as was another chief named Schulkinanse

one of Captain Kendrick’s sons also was killed in the melee

FRANCISCO DE ELIZA LEADS A TWO-BOAT EXPEDITION NORTH

Commandant Francisco de Eliza departed from Nootka Sound on the *San Carlos* -- May 4, 1791

with Juan Pantoja and Jose Antonio Verdia as first and second pilots

*San Carlos* carried a twenty-eight foot long longboat with thirteen oars

*Santa Saturnina* (John Meares original *North West America*) accompanied *San Carlos*

this small schooner was under the command Jose Maria Narvaez with Juan Carrasco as pilot

she was thirty-three feet long with eight oars and carried about twenty days’ supply of food

Ten of Pedro d’Alberni’s First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia accompanied the expedition

ELIZA’S TWO-BOAT EXPEDITION IS OFF TO A POOR START

Sailing north from Nootka Sound, *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* encountered strong northerly winds

progress of the *Santa Saturnina* was slowed and Eliza feared it was too late in the season

to reach Bucareli Bay

overly cautious Eliza abandoned plans to explore north of Nootka after only three days

his expedition turned south and headed for Clayoquot Sound

COMMANDANT ELIZA CONDUCTS AN INVESTIGATION OF CLAYOQUOT SOUND

Both *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* entered Clayoquot Sound where they stayed two weeks

Francisco de Eliza investigated the edge of Clayoquot Sound on board the *San Carlos*

Commandant Eliza made friends with Clayoquot Sound’s Chief Wickaninnish

Eliza wrote that he was honored with a dance of over 600 Tal-o-qui-aht young men

he reported that there were five large indigenous settlements along Clayoquot Sound

each with over 1,500 inhabitants -- the largest had over 2,500 people

Eliza named this village “Guicananich” after Wickaninnish

Aboard the *Santa Saturnina* Jose Maria Narvaez with Pilot Juan Carrasco spent a week

exploring the inner channels of Clayoquot Sound

and another week collaborating on a chart of the sound which they called “Puerto Clayucuat”

COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA MOVES FROM CLAYOQUOT SOUND

Eliza sailing south from Clayoquot Sound named “Flores Island”

off the east coast of (today’s Vancouver Island)

in honor of Manuel Antonio Flores 51st Viceroy of New Spain (Mexico)

Commandant Eliza entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- May 14, 1791

Eliza sailed the *San Carlos* eastward to Manuel Quimper’s Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery)

Francisco de Eliza would use this location as his base of operations

Eliza spent nine days investigating Puerto de Quadra

they encountered wild animals big enough to supply seventy men with meat for three days

Eliza said the creature had a hoof like a bull’s, ears like a mule’s,

horns like a deer, and hide so think the Indians made armor from it

(this creature was an Olympic elk)

COMMANDANT ELIZA CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION OF THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Eliza sailed *San Carlos* along the Strait of Juan de Fuca reaching (today’s Esquimalt Harbor) which the Spanish called “Puerto de Cordoba” named after a city in Spain-- May 23, 1791

Commandant Francisco de Eliza conducted a fairly extensive investigation of the area

he described the agricultural potential of the region,

but he, himself, did not examine the nearby sound (today’s Puget Sound)

or circumnavigate (present-day Vancouver Island)

Scurvy was rapidly spreading among the members of his crew

but Eliza was unable to reverse its effects because he lacked the foods necessary

Eliza himself was suffering from the effects of the disease

although he worked on charts of some of the harbors

much of the examination of (today’s Salish Sea) would be given to Jose Maria Narvaez

JOSE MARIA NARVAEZ EXPLORES BARKLEY SOUND

After completing his charts Jose Maria Narvaezsailed the *Santa Saturnina* from Clayoquot Sound

to Barkley Sound -- end of May 1791

he spent several weeks exploring and drafting a chart of the inner channels of Barkley Sound

which he called “Puerto de Boca Carrasco” in honor of Pilot Juan Carrasco

according to Commandant Eliza’s summary report of Narvaez’s survey

Narvaez saw five large settlements with “warlike and daring” inhabitants

on two occasions the *Santa Saturnina* was attacked by groups of about 200 men

but cannon fire from the ship dispersed the threat

When the charting of Barkley Sound was completed Jose Maria Narvaez with Pilot Juan Carrasco

entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca several days behind Commandant Eliza

QUIMPER SAILS THE *PRINCESS REAL* TO THE PHILIPPINES

Spanish Lieutenant Alfrez Manuel Quimper entered Manila Bay, the Philippines -- June 4, 1791

delivering the *Princess Real* (British Associated Merchants’ *Princess Royal*) to be delivered

to Vicente Llanos y Valdes, a relative of the British Minister of the Navy

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY RETURNS TO THE NORTHWEST COAST

Captain Gray after his successful voyage around the world arrived back in the Northwest from Boston

he sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* into Clayoquot Sound -- June 5, 1791

(this was to become the American trading headquarters located about fifty miles

south of Nootka Sound on the west [“outside”] of [Vancouver Island])

Gray, although he was still a private merchant, was sailing under the papers

provided by the United States of America signed by President George Washington

this trip to the Pacific coast had been very difficult as they incurred violent storms off Cape Horn

and scurvy hit the crew

as soon as they arrived at Clayoquot Sound the sick were hustled ashore

they were buried in earth up to their hips

according to sixteen-year-old Fifth Mate John Boit, **“the treatment helped, though perhaps the ‘greens’ the men devoured and the berries they bought from the Indians were even more beneficial.”[[15]](#footnote-15)**

Finding no messages from his trading partner Captain John Kendrick on the *Lady Washington*

Gray could not learn what the situation was at Nootka Sound so he stayed away

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY GENERATES ILL-WILL WITH THE TAL-O-QUI-AHT PEOPLE

For a time trade at Clayoquot Sound went well with the Tla-o-qui-aht natives

then Attoo, the “crown prince” of Hawaii tried to desert to the Indians

Feeling duty-bound to return Attoo to his home, Gray took great pains to get him back

one of the principal Tla-o-qui-aht chiefs was lured aboard the *Columbia Rediviva*,

he was imprisoned and threatened with death unless Attoo was returned

frightened Tla-o-qui-aht people complied

When brought on board the *Columbia,* Attoo was publicly flogged

an unheard of punishment and repulsive in the minds of the Indians

Captain Gray then announced if any more of his men deserted

they must be returned immediately by the natives

otherwise he would flog in his place the first Indian chief he caught

in response to the flogging, Indians quit trading and turned sullen

COMANDANT ELIZA AND NARVAEZ MEET JOIN FORCES AGAIN

*San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* were again reunited -- June 11, 1791

when Jose Maria Narvaez entered Puerto de Cordoba(today’s Esquimalt Harbor)

this safe harbor would temporarily serve as Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s headquarters

expeditions were sent out to investigate the complex inland waters of (today’s Salish Sea)

Commandant Francisco de Eliza sent Ensign Jose Antonio Verdia in a longboat to investigate

northward into Manuel Quimper’s Canal de Lopez de Haro (Haro Strait)

Verdia returned to Puerto de Cordova(today’s Esquimalt Harbor) two days later

and reported armed natives in canoes had attacked them with spears and arrows

COMMANDANT ELISA SENDS A BETTER-ARMED EXPEDITION

After hearing Ensign Jose Antonio Verdia’s report Commandant Eliza

sent *San Carlos’* First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Jose Maria Narvaez

with the *Santa Saturnina* to explore Alferez Manuel Quimper’s Haro Strait -- June 14, 1791

Pantoja and Narvaez were accompanied by Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia in a longboat

Pantoja and Francisco de Eliza’s pilots passed through (Plumper Sound)

they entered Manuel Quimper’s Canal de Lopez de Haro (Haro Strait)

and rapidly passed between (Vancouver Island) and “San Juan Island”

PANTOJA’S INVESTIGATION OF (TODAY’S GULF ISLANDS) CONTINUES

First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Jose Maria Narvaez sailed along Canal de Lopez de Haro

on the *Santa Saturnina* accompanied by Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia

sailing in the longboat -- June 15, 1791

Several openings leading west and two leading east were discovered

Pantoja decided to investigate the larger of the two eastern openings (today called Boundary Pass)

They reach (today’s Pender Island in the Gulf Islands which are Canada’s San Juan Islands)

Pantoja’s expedition sailed east along the southern shore of (Pender Island)

they named “Saturna Island” and entered “Narvaez Bay”

which was named in honor of Joseph Maria Narvaez

First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga accompanied by Jose Maria Narvaez

and pilots Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia discovered a large body of water

Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia entered what they noted

was “a grand and extended” canal in their longboat

this was the open water of the (Strait of Georgia) which they named

“Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario” (Canal of Our Lady of the Rosary)

this was the first time Europeans had seen this body of water

they believed they had found the legendary Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

and that it probably connected, somehow, to Hudson Bay or the Mississippi River

(Eliza’s report stated if a Northwest Passage existed at all it must lie beyond this opening

Narvaez’s rough map of the Strait of Georgia showed a large opening to the east)

That night they anchored at “Patos Island” (meaning “duck” as later named by Galiano)

PANTOJA’S INVESTIGATION OF (TODAY’S SALISH SEA) CONTINUES

First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga accompanied by Jose Maria Narvaez

and pilots Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia sailed from (Patos Island) -- June 16, 1791

They passed by and named “Sucia” Island and mapped (Matia), (Barnes) and (Clark) islands

however, bad weather made sailing very difficult

whirlpools, riptides and unchartered reefs added to their danger

they sailed east to the vicinity of (Lummi Island)

they had reached the northern end of Manuel Quimper’s Boca de Fidalgo (Rosario Strait)

Exhausted and out of food Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga turned *Santa Saturnina* the way they had come

to join Commandant Francisco de Eliza and bring word of the newly discovered

“Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario” (Strait of Georgia)

rain blotted out the sight of land -- contrary winds impeded the expedition’s progress

they were forced to row the longboat against the wind

part of the way Juan Carrasco and Jose Antonio Verdia had to be towed

by men rowing in a smaller boat

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SPENDS THE SUMMER TRADING

Captain Gray remained in Clayoquot Sound for fifteen days but finding business slow

he sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* north from Clayoquot Sound -- June 20, 1791

Gray arrived in the Queen Charlotte Islands where he had successfully traded two years before

Gray traded with the Haida Indians in the Queen Charlotte Islands and on the mainland -- summer

on this visit to the area the Indians were less friendly and the crew often slept fitfully

Captain Robert Gray was one of a number of captains who used force to acquire furs

this trading technique caused bitterness among the peaceful natives

Continuing north Gray plied the waters of Heceta Strait and Dixon’s Entrance searching for otter pelts

RUSSIA APPOINTS A NEW MANAGER FOR THEIR FUR TRADE ON KODIAK ISLAND

Alexander Andreyevich Baranov ran away from home at the age of fifteen

he became a successful merchant in Irkutsk, Siberia

he was lured to Russian-America (Alaska) by the growing maritime fur trade there

he became a successful trader there and established and managed trading posts

in the Kodiak Island region

Alexander Baranov at age forty-seven was named manager of the Russian trading operation

at Kodiak station-- late spring 1791

he was noted to be a huge, bald-headed autocratic throwback to a coarser uncouth feudal age

crude and ill-tempered without refinement of character

he was never completely happy unless he was completely drunk

he was a severe disciplinarian who enslaved and made war on the natives

Baranov achieved successes through violence and deceit

and maintained his position by intrigue, brutality, debauchery and robbery

he also was energetic and resourceful

he often refused to obey orders he thought were contrary to best interest of the company

Alexander Andreyevich Baranov ruled the Russian fur trading empire for over thirty years

SPANISH SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION REACHES YAKUTAT BAY

Alejandro Malaspina sailing the *Descubierta* and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra on the *Atrevida*

sighted land near (today’s Cape Edgecumbe) -- June 23, 1791

Four days later they anchored at (Port Mulgrave) in Yakutat Bay -- June 27

they investigated the area around 60º north latitude for a month

While the corvettes *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* remained anchored

two longboats were sent to explore channels searching for the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

they threaded their way among increasingly frequent ice flows

a glacier discovered between Yakutat Bay and Icy Bay was named in honor of Malaspina

(today’s Hubbard Glacier) from which large pieces were breaking off

Malaspina named this “Behia del Desengano” (Disappointment Bay)

because no passage could be found

Captain Alejandro Malaspina and Captain Jose Bustamante y Guerra

undertook a good deal of scientific work including debunking idea of a Strait of Anian

Both Spanish captains made contact with the Tlingit natives

Spanish scholars on the expedition made a study of the natives recording information

on social mores, language, economy, warfare methods and burial practices

accompanying artists Tomas de Suria and Jose Cardero, produced portraits of tribal members

botanist Luis Nee accompanying the expedition collected and described numerous new plants

Malaspina and Guerra saw no sign of Lorenzo Ferrer de Maldonado’s supposed [1588] strait

Malaspina ceased his searchknowing that British Captain James Cook

had previously surveyed the coast west of Prince William Sound and discovered no passage

COMMANDANT FRANCISCO DE ELIZA MOVES HIS BASE OF OPERATIONS

After First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga returned and reported his findings

Commandant Eliza decided it would be necessary to send a more extensive expedition

to explore Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

Commandant Eliza moved his entire base of operations from Puerto de Cordoba(Esquimalt Harbor)

to Puerto de Quadra (present-day Port Discovery, Washington)

on the south side of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

COMMANDANT ELIZA REMAINS AT HIS PUERTO DE QUADRA BASE OF OPERATIONS

Commandant Francisco de Eliza considered taking the *San Carlos* exploring

but his pilots convinced him his larger ship would find the narrow channels hazardous

in addition Eliza fell sick

Commandant Eliza remained at Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery) while an expedition was sent out

to more carefully explore Rosario Strait and the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario

(Strait of Georgia)

ELIZA PREPARES A MUCH LARGER EXPEDITION TO INVESTAGE THE (SALISH SEA)

Commandant Francisco de Eliza instructed Jose Maria Narvaez to take the *Santa Saturnina*

with *Santa Saturnina’s* Pilot Juan Carrasco serving as second in command

Jose Maria Narvaez sailed the *Santa Saturnina* out of Port Discovery north

passing through Boca de Fidalgo (Rosario Strait) -- July 1, 1791

Narvaez surveyed “Islas de Guemes” (Guemes Island), “San Vincent,” (Cypress Island),

and “Pacheco” (Lummi Island) then explored “Seno Padillo” (Padilla Bay),

and “Seno Gaston” Bellingham Bay), he anchored in “Puerto Socorro” (Chuckanut Bay)

Narvaez turned the *Santa Saturnina* north into Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

he anchored in “Puerto del Garzon” (Birch Bay) and “Punta de San Jose” (Drayton Harbor)

then sailed west across (Boundary Bay) to round (Point Roberts)

which he thought was an island and named the feature “Isla de Zepeda”

Pilot Juan Carrasco thought that an inland sea extended far to the northeast

(he later made an inaccurate map showing this large inlet

called “Boca de Floridablanca” [also Canal de Floridablanca]

which included [Boundary Bay] and extended north to about [Burrard Inlet])

after rounding Isla de Zepeda, Narvaez sailed north for several miles

as the *Santa Saturnina*’s crew investigated the (Strait of Georgia)

they noted copious amounts of fresh water

they correctly deduced that the mouth of a large river lay nearby

however, they were unable to find the mouth of the (Fraser River)

they mistook the land between the mouths of the rivers as low-lying islands

Narvaez anchored off (Point Gray), which he also took to be an island and named “Isla de Langara”

while at anchor the ship was visited by a number of Musqueam Indian men in canoes

who traded food, water and firewood for pieces of copper and iron

Spaniards noted their language was quite different from that of the Nootka Indians

Musqueam Indians indicated the (Strait of Georgia) continued north for a great distance

one of Narvaez’ crewmen bought a young native boy who told the explorers

that many Indians regularly came to on horseback, from a “flat country” in the northeast

to trade iron, copper and blue beads for fish

Narvaez did not visit the Musqueam village, but anchored two miles offshore

as they collected water from a large river (probably the north arm of the Fraser River)

Narvaez sailed some distance into (Burrard Inlet -- today the harbor of Vancouver, B.C.)

(Pilot Juan Carrasco’s map showed not only the Musqueam village at (Point Grey)

but another settlement at “Punta de la Bodega” (Point Atkinson)

and yet another at the entrance to “Bocas del Carmelo” (Howe Sound)

(near present-day Horseshoe Bay)

Jose Maria Narvaez sailed *Santa Saturnina* north along (today’s Sunshine Coast of British Columbia)

along the way anchoring off (Mission Point) and again off (Thormanby Island)

they noted various inlets along with the presence of whales, seals and fish as large as tuna

that were encountered in the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

traveling as far north as “Isle de Tejada” named in honor of Spanish Admiral Felix de Tejada

(present day Texada Island) before turning to the east coast of (Vancouver Island)

Narvaez turned south reaching (today’s Denman Island) and (Hornby Island)

seeing a large number of whales in the area Narvaez named “Islas de las Ballenas”

(Islands of the Whales -- today’s Ballenas Island)

(Nanamino Harbor) was discovered and named “Bocas de Winthuysen”

continuing south they passed “Valdes Island” and “Porlier Pass”

before sailing by “Galiano Island”

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOSEPH INGRAHAM COMPETES WITH CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY

Twenty-eight-year-old American Joseph Ingraham had previously sailed on the *Columbia Rediviva*

as Captain Robert Gray’s first mate

Ingraham, now master of the tiny seventy-ton Brigantine *Hope,*

arrived on the Northwest coast -- July 2, 1791

he spent two months in the Queen Charlotte Islands gathering furs

Captain Ingraham had become a canny trader

finding the Indians well supplied with cloth,

he sewed brass buttons on his trading cloth and sold every stitch

when Gray’s free-handed bargaining of chisels depreciated their value,

Ingraham converted his iron into seven-pound collars and somehow made them fashionable

these sold at three skins per collar

in forty-nine days, Captain Ingraham collected fourteen hundred sea otter pelts

Cruising about, Captain Robert Gray fell in with his former first mate, Joseph Ingraham

who had been employed by a rival Boston company

JOSE MARIA NARVAEZ’S EXPEDITION RETURNS TO COMMANDANT ELIZA

After three weeks of exploration of (today’s Salish Sea)

Jose Maria Narvaez returned the *Santa Saturnina* to Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery)

on the south (Washington) side of the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- July 22, 1791

(the exact route taken by Narvaez remains unclear)

At the start of his voyage, Narvaez had passed by a bay discovered by Pilot Juan Carrasco [1790]

that he named “Ensenada de Caamano” but had not entered

(this was today’s Admiralty Inlet -- the entrance to Puget Sound)

Narvaez planned to explore this opening during his return trip but he ran out of food

he sailed directly to Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s *San Carlos* in Puerto de Quadra

ELIZA FAILS TO GIVE SPAIN A DOMINATE CLAIM TO THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Jose Maria Narvaez could have set out once again after resupplying with food

to explore (today’s Admiralty Inlet which opens into Puget Sound)

but was not allowed to do so by Commandant Francisco de Eliza

although Jose Maria Narvaez had been unable to explore

all of the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Georgia Strait)

Commandant Eliza was impressed by Narvaez’s report on the size and nature of the Strait

Commandant Eliza knew this exploration was important

but he and many of his sailors were sick with scurvy

Eliza also was anxious to return to Nootka Sound to begin preparations for (winter)

and to send a report back to the viceroy in Mexico City

indicating the discovery of Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

additional excursions into (today’s Salish Sea) were abandoned to return to Nootka Sound

both Eliza and Narvaez thought Spain should send another expedition

to look at Pilot Juan Carrasco’s Ensenada de Caamano (Admiralty Inlet)

Eliza thus missed the opportunity to discover and explore the interior gulfs, bays and harbors

strengthening Spain’s claim to (today’s Washington State)

Commandant Eliza completed a report for the Spanish government based on Narvaez’s reconnaissance

numerous whales had been seen in the (Strait of Georgia)

but only a few in the Strait of Juan de Fuca, thus Eliza correctly speculated

that the (Strait of Georgia) had a second connection to the ocean

Eliza also came to suspect, again correctly, that Nootka Sound was not on the mainland,

but rather was on an island

(Some historians have criticized Francisco de Eliza for not accomplishing more on this expedition,

but the Indians were occasionally hostile and his crew was weakened with scurvy

more importantly he could not take too many risks as he knew he had to return to Nootka Sound

and prepare the settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca for the winter)

*SAN CARLOS* AND *SANTA SATURNINA* LEAVE PUERTO DE QUANDRA (PORT DISCOVERY)

Commandant Francisco de Eliza was badly stricken by illness

during the return voyage to Nootka Sound he transferred Jose Maria Narvaez to the *San Carlos*

to conduct most of the exploration

command of the *Santa Saturnina* was given to Pilot Juan Carrasco

Eliza’s expedition left Puerto de Quadra (Port Discovery) -- July 26, 1791

SPANISH SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS FOR NOOTKA SOUND

After a month of investigating (Alaska’s) Prince William Sound

both Spanish corvettes turned south as Spanish

captains Alejandro Malaspina and Jose Bustamante y Guerra

steered the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* toward (Vancouver Island) -- July 27, 1791

Bucareli Bay to the south was investigated en route to Nootka Sound

COMMANDANT ELIZA’S EXPEDITION DISCOVERS (TODAY’S PORT ANGELES)

Commandant Francisco de Eliza and his crew were increasingly suffering from scurvy

as no supplies of food to reverse the ravages of the disease could be found

Jose Maria Narvaez sailed *San Carlos* back toward Nootka Sound

accompanied by Pilot Juan Carrasco on the *Santa Saturnina*

While slowly sailing westerly out of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Eliza’s expedition entered a beautiful deep harbor -- August 2, 1791

Eliza gave the name “Puerto de Nuestra Senora de Los Angeles” (Port Angeles)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK RETURNS TO NOOTKA SOUND

Captain Kendrick sailed the *Lady Washington* from the Queen Charlotte Islands

traveling south along the outside of (today’s Vancouver Island)

conducting trade as he journeyed toward Nootka Sound -- August 1791

ownership of Britain’s Nootka Sound (Spain’s San Lorenzo) had not been completely resolved

Defying the Spanish at Fort San Miguel located at Friendly Cove at the entrance to Nootka Sound

Kendrick sailed past the Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca to continue on to

(today’s Marvinas Bay) -- his old anchorage [1789] a few miles above the settlement

CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK PURCHASES REAL ESTATE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Besides dealing in furs American Captain John Kendrick also tried his hand at real estate

he purchased several large tracts of land amounting to eighteen square miles near Nootka Sound

from several local Indian chiefs -- **August 5, 1789**

one land deed can still be seen in United States State Department that reads as follows: **“In consideration of six muskets, a boat sail, a quantity of gunpowder and an American flag (they being articles of which we, at present, stand in need of, and are of great value), we do bargain, grant and sell unto John Kendrick of Boston, a certain harbor in said Ahasset, in which the brig *Lady Washington* lay at anchor on the 5th day of August, 1791, latitude 49º50’, with all lands, mines, minerals, rivers, bays, harbors, sounds, creeks, and all islands, with all the produce of land and sea, being a territory the distance of eighteen miles square, to have and to hold, &c, &c.**

**Signed by Maquinna, Wickaninnish, Narry-Youk and Terrasone”**[[16]](#footnote-16)

SPANISH OFFICIAL DEMANDS CAPTAIN KENDRICK MAKE AN APPEARANCE

Spanish Lieutenant Ramon Saavedra was temporarily in charge of the Spanish colony and fort

while Commandant Francisco de Eliza was investigating the inland waters (of the Salish Sea)

Saavedra sent word to Kendrick that he must properly report to the Spanish authorities

Captain John Kendrick promised to make an official call as requested

but instead Kendrick quietly slipped out of Nootka Sound bound for Clayoquot Sound

Kendrick had excellent reasons for wishing to avoid the Spanish as he owed them money

for furs given to him two years before [1789] to sell for the Spanish in China

this money was to have been deposited with authorities in the Philippines

but Kendrick had used it to re-rig the *Lady Washington* from a sloop to a brig

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOSEPH INGRAHAM SAILS THE *HOPE* TO CHINA

Captain Ingraham sailed the *Hope* away from the Pacific coast bound for China -- August 1791

(Ingraham was unable to sell his furs at a profit in China

Chinese officials having learned of a dispute between the Russians

and traders selling Russian furs in China

had banned the sale of furs as they announced that all furs somehow came from Russia)

ELIZA AND HIS EXPEDITION SAIL OUT OF THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Alferez Manuel Quimper’s Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was reached

by the *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* -- August 11, 1791

members of Eliza’s expedition found that Makah Indians had raised their price for furs

above the previous year’s price

*PRINCESA REAL* IS RETURNED TO THE ASSOCIATED MERCHANTS

*Princesa Real* (John Meares’ former *Princess Royal*) was sailed by the Spanish navy to Macau, China

where the ship was presented to representatives of Associated Merchants

owned by Richard Cadman Etches -- August 12, 1791

however, the ship was in such poor condition on arrival that British agents refused to accept it

eventually it was agreed the British would accept a small payment in cash for the ship

Soon after the port of Macau was hit by a hurricane and the ill-fated ship was badly damaged

*Princesa Real (Princess Royal*) was sold for salvage

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS INTO NOOTKA SOUND

While Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza was absent

from Puerto de la Santa Cruz de Nuca (Friendly Cove) on Nootka Sound,

Spain’s most impressive scientific expedition arrived -- August 12, 1791

Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra spent a month at Nootka Sound

*Descubierta* and *Atrevida* took on water and wood

while the expedition’s scientists repaired their tools and equipment

Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel were provided with useful goods

including medicines, food, various tools and utensils and a Reaumur scale thermometer

(the freezing and boiling points of water are set to zero and eighty degrees respectively)

Spanish government was eager for the Nootka natives to formally agree

that the land on which the Spanish outpost and colony stood had been acquired freely and legally

such an agreement would strengthen Spain’s claim to Nootka Sound

and would be invaluable in the upcoming negotiations with the British representative

gaining the trust of Nootka chief Maquinna would be particularly significant

as he was one of the most powerful chiefs of the region

in spite of Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s previous efforts

Nootka Indians had remained highly suspicious and hostile toward the Spanish

after the [1788] killing of Maquinna’s son Callicum

Captain Alejandro Malaspina and his officers dedicated themselves to relieving racial tensions

generous gifts to Maquinna from the well-supplied Spanish ships

strengthened the friendship between the Spanish and the Nootkas

after weeks of negotiations Maquinna asserted that only the Spanish

had rightful title to land ownership at Nootka Sound

During these negotiations the Spanish scientists of the expedition carried on detailed investigations

they spent several weeks in making scientific observations of the Nootka people

life of the Indians at Nootka Sound was described by Jose Mariano Mozion: **“The vices of these savages are very few when compared to ours. One does not see here greed for another man's wealth, because articles of prime necessity are very few and all are common. Hunger obliges no one to rob on the highways, or to resort to piracy.... Everyone can partake indiscriminately of the fish or seafood he needs, and with the greatest liberty, in the house of the tais (chief.)”**[[17]](#footnote-17)

Astronomical observations were made to fix the location of Nootka Sound

and to more accurately calibrate the expedition’s chronometers

For several weeks Nootka Sound was surveyed and mapped

with an accuracy far greater than previously

two longboats were sent to explore the interior channels

(this resulted in one of nine charts which would be given to Captain Vancouver

and carried to England by Captain William Broughton)

Spanish Lieutenant Josef de Espinosa led an investigation of the unexplored channels “Espinosa Arm” was named for this officer

“Bajo Arriza” (today’s Bajo Reef) was a hazardous sunken reef explored by Malaspina

as was “Bajo Senalar” (Bajo Point) [August and September 1791]

Spanish maps were linked to the investigations of British Captain James Cook [1776-1779]

allowing Spanish and British charts to be calibrated

botanical studies were carried out including an attempt to make a type of beer

out of conifer needles that, it was hoped, would be able to combat scurvy

FRANCISCO DE ELIZA AND JUAN CARRAASO SEPARATE

Three days after leaving Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

Spanish ships *San Carlos* and *Santa Saturnina* separated -- evening August 14, 1791

Pilot Juan Carrasco was unable or unwilling to sail against the wind to Nootka Sound

instead he sailed the *Santa Saturnina* south to Monterey, California

*San Carlos* continued on toward Nootka Sound

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY TRADES IN THE QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS

*Columbia Rediviva* continued to cruise north along the east side of the Queen Charlotte Islands

where he visited a number of harbors and channels

Captain Gray entered a cove to fish near (Point Higgins) on (Revillagigedo Island)

while there three men, Joshua Caswell, Joseph Barnes and John Folger,

took a jolly boat ashore to investigate and were massacred by Indians -- August 22, 1791

only the body of Caswell was recovered

Robert Gray named the place “Massacre Cove” and the headland “Murderers’ Cape”

AMERICAN CAPTAINS MEET

After sailing from Massacre Cove Captain Robert Gray reached Clayoquot Sound -- August 29, 1791

there he found a strange brig rode in the bay and a strange log house stood on the shore

it was, in fact, the *Lady Washington* transformed from a sloop into a brig

on board, watching the approach of the *Columbia* was his partner Captain John Kendrick

Captain Kendrick came aboard the *Columbia Rediviva*

this meeting with Captain Gray proved to be a relatively unpleasant reunion

as the altered status of the two trading partners needed to be addressed

Robert Gray was now a full partner in the sponsoring company but John Kendrick was not

*SAN CARLOS* ARRIVES AT NOOTKA SOUND

Jose Maria Narvaez sailed into Nootka Sound delivering the ill Commandant Francisco de Eliza

back to the little settlement of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel

(at Friendly Cove) -- August 29, 1791

As commander of the expedition Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Francisco de Eliza

eventually received most of the credit for the discoveries made and places named

during his 1791 investigations

however, Jose Maria Narvaez commanded the Santa Saturnina

and led the actual voyages of discovery

his pilots, First Pilot Juan Pantoja y Arriaga and Second Pilot Jose Antonio Verdia

on *San Carlos,* and Juan Carrasco on *Santa Saturnina* carried out a great deal of work

WORK OF COMMANDANT FRANCISCO ELIZA’S EXPEDITION IS INCOMPLETE

Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s expedition provided a great deal of information

regarding (today’s Salish Sea) -- but some of the geography was inaccurate

Jose Maria Narvaez produced a large chart of the discoveries of his expedition

base in part on Pilot Juan Carrasco’s inaccurate map of the (Strait of Georgia)

that showed a particularly large opening to the east (of today’s Vancouver, B.C.)

Eliza’s report stated that if the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage) existed at all,

it must lie beyond this opening

the Spanish named the (nonexistent) inlet “Canal Floridablanca”

Eliza declared an investigation of this region must be a priority

even the remotest possibility of finding the Strait of Anian

somewhere among the inlets of the (Strait of Georgia) rekindled the hope

(eventually a further investigation was undertaken

by Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes y Flores Bazan [1792]

who discovered this was, in fact, the mouth of the Fraser River

The *Santa Saturnina* had been too far offshore to see the low lying land)

*SANTA SATURNINA* REACHES MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

After separating from Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s *San Carlos*

Pilot Juan Carrasco reached Monterey Bay, California -- September 15, 1791

where he gathered supplies for the return to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

MALASPINA AND GUERRA SEE THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Captains Alejandro Malaspina on the *Descubierta* and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra on the *Atrevida*

sailed out of Nootka Sound after staying almost a month

at the Spanish colony on Friendly Cove -- mid-September 1791

Malaspina and Guerra anchored overnight near the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

this would be both officers only look at the most famous passage at that time

Malaspina regretted having to leave without investigating the waterway

but he had run out of time and was obliged to rush to continue his world-wide investigation

Malaspina did leave a few members of his expedition and some instruments

to assist any future expedition in completing an examination of the inland waters

ROBERT GRAY ESTABLISHES HIS WINTER HEADQUARTERS AT CLAYOQUOT SOUND

Captain Gray’s men began building a tiny American defense works

to serve as their winter quarters in Clayoquot Sound -- September 21, 1791

it was located in a cove on the eastern side of “Meares Island”

where the geography could provide a natural defense against attacks

Gray named the cove “Adventure Cove”

he set his men to work chopping out a clearing on its shores

TWO LEADING SPANISH CAPTAINS MEET IN MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Leading officers of two Spanish exploring expeditions met in Monterey, California

Spanish hero Captain Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra

sailing from Friendly Cove in Nootka Sound on their world-wide scientific investigation

arrived in Monterey Bay on the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* -- September 23, 1791

having just completed a fruitless search for the Northwest Passage [in Alaska[)

there they met Pilot Juan Carrasco with the *Santa Saturnina* on his way to San Blas, New Spain

to report the findings of Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s expedition

Juan Carrasco informed Malaspina, a powerful figure of the Spanish navy, of the recent discovery

by Jose Maria Narvaez of the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

Malaspina was thus the first officer beyond Commandant Eliza’s crew to learn of the discovery

Malaspina immediately recognized the strategic importance of further exploration

Spain’s hope of discovering the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage) were still politically important

Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario’s many promising channels leading east and north

represented one of the last realistic possibilities

*LADY WASHINGTON* IS LOADED WITH PELTS

Both “Bostons” as American traders were referred to by the Indians

loaded more than 1,000 sea otter skins on the *Lady Washington* and she was made ready to sail

Captain John Kendrick departed for Canton, China -- September 25, 1791

leaving Fort Washington abandoned to the Indians and Captain Robert Gray

comfortably in Adventure Cove

AMERICAN CAPTAIN GRAY PREPARES TO SPEND THE (WINTER) AT ADVENTURE COVE

Gray built a log fort eighteen feet wide by thirty-six feet long for protection

“Fort Defiance,” as Gray pointedly named his construction effort, was a two-story house

which included bunks, a table, a chimney at one end and workroom at the other end

Gray had brought 5,470 bricks from Boston

its main building had two mounted cannons

one inside aimed through a porthole and the other was mounted outside the house

musket loop holes for defending against any native attacks were placed into the walls

other buildings that were constructed included a blacksmith shop, two sawpits for cutting logs,

cabins and a boat builder’s shed

TRADING WAS SLOW SO TWO SHIPBUILDING PROJECTS WERE UNDERTAKEN

Two ship construction projects were undertaken in Clayoquot Sound

by American Captain Robert Gray during his stay there:

•work began on overhauling and re-rigging the *Columbia Rediviva;*

•like British captain John Meares before [1788] Captain Gray set up shipway

construction was begun on a forty-five-ton sloop whose frame he carried from Boston

keel was laid for the sloop -- October 3, 1791

*Adventure* was named in honor of Adventure Cove where she was build

Captain Robert Gray overreacted to his situation as he mercilessly he drove the crewmen

to construct Fort Defiance, repair the *Columbia,* and build the new sloop

so he could leave Clayoquot Sound as quickly as possible

AMERICANS AT FORT DEFIANCE WERE CONCERNED ABOUT THE INDIANS

Once Fort Defiance was complete, four cannons, forty muskets and various other weapons

were transferred from the *Columbia* *Rediviva*

Second Mate Robert Haswell was placed in charge of ten men who occupied the fort

About 2,000 native fighting Tla-o-qui-aht men with over 200 guns and plenty of ammunition

lived in the area but the natives appeared to be very friendly

native chiefs from the Clayoquot Sound area frequently visited the *Columbia Rediviva*

however, American relations with the natives had not always been on the most cordial terms

several minor incidents of theft by the natives were recorded

Captain Robert Gray visited the village near Adventure Cove several times

he treated the sick villagers there

but an anxious moment was reported by Second Mate Robert Haswell -- October 7, 1791

**“…in the evening about 11 o’clock, it being foggy as ever, I was suddenly awakened by the report of a musket, and the cry that the cove was full of Indian canoes. With the alarming news I sprang out of bed (for I dwelt on shore), armed myself and my small party, consisting of 7 persons, and marched down the beach, resolving to oppose their landing, and if we were disappointed in this, we could easily retreat to our post. But, wonderful to tell, these mighty war-equipped savages turned out to be none other than some rocks, which the tide ebbing low had left dry. These seen through the fog might easily, by the apprehension of the watch, be conjectured to be canoes.”[[18]](#footnote-18)**

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS FROM MONTEREY BAY, CALIFORNIA

Spanish captains Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra

sailed the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* out of Monterey Bay

bound for San Blas, New Spain -- October 25, 1791

to arrange for a further investigation of Jose Maria Narvaez’s

Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

PILOT JUAN CARRASCO BRINGS THE *SANTA SATURNINA* BACK TO SAN BLAS, NEW SPAIN

After his encounter with Malaspina in Monterey, Carrasco sailed the *Santa Saturnina* to San Blas

where he arrived -- November 9, 1791

(Juan Carrasco continued to serve the Spanish Navy until at least [1803]

as one of the pilots of the San Blas naval department)

SPANISH CAPTAINS REACH SAN BLAS NAVAL BASE IN (NEW SPAIN)

Captains Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra sailed the *Descubierta* and *Atrevida*

into the port of San Blas -- November 23, 1791

thus completing the northern portion of their scientific expedition

While in San Blas Malaspina learned of two 45-ton goletas (schooners) being constructed

by order of Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

for an investigation of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Malaspina arranged to have two of his officers, Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes,

take command of the two ships for the purpose of fully exploring the (Strait of Georgia)

*COLUMBIA REDIVIVA* SAILORS ENJOY FESTIVITIES AT ADVENTURE COVE

Native chiefs from the area frequently visited the *Columbia Rediviva*

several minor incidents of theft by the natives were recorded but the Indians remained amiable

Captain Robert Gray’s crewmen amazed the Indians by bedecking the fort, shops and ship

with evergreen boughs on Christmas Day

twenty geese were roasted on spits before a huge fire,

local native dignitaries and their ladies were invited aboard the *Columbia* for the feast

Chief Wickaninnish of the Tla-o-qui-aht people repaid the compliment by inviting some of the whites

to a name-giving dance during which the chief gave his name to his son and assumed a new one

In spite of the festivities, the natives had not forgotten the public flogging of Kanaka (Hawaiian) Attoo

and Gray’s threat of flogging a chief if any crewmen deserted [June 1791

INDIANS PLOT TO OVERWHELM THE AMERICANS

Tla-o-qui-aht Indians hoped to wipe out Captain Gray’s Fort Defiance, capture the *Columbia Rediviva*

and destroy the entire expedition with a minimum of loss to themselves

One day various Indians were noticed talking too long and too earnestly to Kanaka crewman Attoo

plot to capture the ship was discovered when Attoo confessed to Captain Gray

Indians had promised to make him a big chief

if he smuggled them musket balls and ammunition

and, when a signal was given, wet down the whites’ gunpowder

*Columbia Rediviva* would then be attacked

Indians planned to come through the woods and board the ship from a high bank

an easy task as the ship had recently been moored alongside a cliff

and her guns unshipped preparatory to her being hauled ashore and refitted

Forewarned Captain Gray realized all of the heavy artillery was on shore

Second Mate Robert Haswell ordered the swivel guns loaded at once

and put Fort Defiance in a good state of defense

Captain Gray had no difficulty frustrating the attack

he set sail soon after the discovery was made

*Columbia Rediviva* moved away from the bank

In the still of the night a war whoop was heard in the forest

hundreds of natives had assembled, but seeing the ship moved from shore

they knew they could not triumph and faded into the wilderness

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SEEKS REVENGE

American Captain Robert Gray, who had a violent temper, sailed down Clayoquot Sound

to the Indian village of “Opitsitah” (today’s Opitsaht)

Gray he sent Fifth Mate John Boit with three boats to destroy the village

as punishment for the Indian attempt to capture his ship

Boit, the keeper of the ship’s log, reported: **“It was a command I was no ways tenacious of, and am grieved to think Capt. Gray shou’d let his passions go so far. This village was about half a mile in diameter, and contained upwards of 200 Houses, generally well built for Indians; every door that you enter’d was in resemblance to an human and Beasts head, the passage being through the mouth, besides which there was much more rude carved work about the dwellings some of which was by no means inelegant. This fine village, the work of Ages, was in a short time totally destroy’d.”**[[19]](#footnote-19)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK ARRIVES IN MACAU, CHINA

Completing his trading efforts for the year Captain Kendrick sailed from Clayoquot’s Fort Washington

*Lady Washington* arrived in Macau, China -- December 1791

there he found Chinese merchants were unwilling to purchase his furs

because of the difficulties Russian traders had suffered

SPANISH GARRISONED AT FRIENDLY COVE REMAINS UNEASY

Fortunately the winter at Nootka Sound was not as harsh as that of the previous year

several more ships and people had arrived at Fort San Miguel

and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca (Friendly Cove)

food supplies sent from San Blas were of better quality

improved storage facilities provided better protection from humidity and rats

Indians were now frequent visitors

Even so, Spanish inhabitants under the leadership of Commandant Francisco de Eliza

spent an uneasy winter in Nootka Sound in their colony and fort -- 1791-1792

Eliza knew the British government was sending an envoy to the Pacific Northwest

to receive formal restitution of English possessions seized by Martinez Jose Esteban [1789]

officials in Mexico City had no idea when the British expedition would arrive

or what the British agenda would be

IN SPITE OF THE NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS NOOTKA REMAINED A BUSY PLACE

Preparations for face-to-face talks between a British and Spanish negotiator were underway

to resolve the details of the Nootka Crisis left unaddressed by the Nootka Sound Convention

it was uncertain if these negotiations between Great Britain and Spain would result

in Spain’s colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove

on Nootka Sound would be ceded to the British or not

Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel on Nootka Sound’s Friendly Cove

grew to fifty buildings with a barracks, blacksmith shop and shelters for sheep and cattle

estimated population of two hundred Spanish troops and Peruvian Indians, all males,

were attended by six Catholic missionary priests

Two-story Spanish headquarters and visitor’s quarters at Friendly Cove was visited

by at least three hundred ships and traders from several nations between [1789] and [1810]

eleven British ships stopped as did eight American ships, five Spanish ships,

two Portuguese ships and one French ship in1792 alone

Although still in dispute, Nootka Sound was visited by traders of several nations

eleven English ships, eight American ships, five Spanish ships, two Portuguese ships

and one French ship all stopped by during 1792

both Great Britain and Spain redoubled their effort to push their claims of discovery

CAPTAIN MALISPINA TAKES OVER THE SPANISH VICEROY’S EXPEDITION

Spanish captain and popular hero Alejandro Malaspina completed the Pacific portion

of his around the world scientific expedition

Malaspina indicated in his lengthy report that a thorough survey of the Northwest coast

was long overdue

Spanish Viceroy Revillagigedo selected Francisco Antonio Mourelle was to lead the voyage

but illness prevented him from carrying out the task

Two 45-ton goletas (schooners) were being constructed in San Blas

by Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

Alejandro Malaspina, acting on the authority of the Spanish Crown, took control of these ships

thus removing the viceroy from any authority over the expedition

Malaspina ordered two of his officers, Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes, to follow-up

on Jose Maria Narvaez’s discovery of Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia)

Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano took command of the *Sutil* and the expedition

Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes y Flores Bazan y Peon sailed the *Mexicana*

(he was generally referred to as Cayetano Valdes)

Captain Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra sailed *Descubierta* and *Atrevida* to Acapulco

accompanied by *Sutil* and *Mexicana* commanded by Galiano and Valdes

with a combined total of thirty-nine men

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION ARRIVES IN ACAPULCO, NEW SPAIN

Captain Alejandro Malaspina and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra arrived in Acapulco from San Blas

to arrange for further exploration of the recently investigated

Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario (Strait of Georgia) reported to him by Juan Carrasco

*Sutil* officered by Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Lieutenant Cayetano Galiano’s *Mexicana*

were fitted out under the direction of Captain Malaspina

SPANISH EXPEDITION IS SENT TO INVESTIGATE THE (STRAIT OF GEORGIA)

Two 45-ton goletas **(**schooners) set sail from Acapulco, New Spain -- March 8, 1792

as instructed by Captain Alejandro Malaspina

*Sutil* under Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano, commander of the expedition

*Mexicana* under Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes

This would be a four month effort to further investigate Jose Maria Narvaez’s [1791] discovery

of the Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario(Strait of Georgia)

as part of Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s expedition

SPANISH SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION CONTINUES ITS VOYAGE AROUND THE WORLD

After placing two of his officers in command of the expedition to investigate the (Strait of Georgia)

Captain Alejandro Malaspina’s *Descubierta* and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra’s *Atrevida*

sailed out of Acapulco to the Philippines

to continue their around the world scientific expedition for Spain

VICEROY DE GUEMES ORDERS A SECOND COLONY IN THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Although the scientific investigation conducted by Captain Alejandro Malaspina

and Jose de Bustamante y Guerra was directed by the Spanish government in Madrid,

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

learned of the explorations of Malaspina in the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Viceroy Count Revillagigedo gave orders to Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

to sail the covertte *Princesa* to Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

on the south shore of the Strait of Juan de Fuca and occupy it

in case Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel

were lost to the British thorough negotiations

DAVID THOMPSON BECOMES AN ACCOMPLISHED SURVEYOR

Hudson’s Bay Company gave David Thompson the assignment of mapping a route

from Cumberland House on the Saskatchewan River to Lake Athabasca

along today’s Alberta-Saskatchewan border -- 1792

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVED OFF THE SANDWICH ISLANDS COAST

HMS *Discovery* under the command of now British Captain George Vancouver

reached the coast of the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) accompanied by HMS *Chatham*

under British Lieutenant-Commander William R. Broughton -- March 15, 1792[[20]](#footnote-20)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* had sailed from Falmouth, England [1791] with two ships and 150 men

This expedition was well-outfitted and equipped with the finest scientific instruments available

from Australia and New Zealand Vancouver’s expedition had sailed

around the Cape of Good Hope, explored the South Pacific and wintered

in the Sandwich Islands

Captain Vancouver’s survey of the inland waters of (today’s Washington and British Columbia

now known as the Salish Sea lasted for three years: 1792, [1793] and [1794]

JACINTO CAAMANO IS ASSIGNED TO FIND THE FABLED STRAIT OF ANIAN

Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

ordered a final effort to find the fabled Northwest Passage

Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano, the brother-in-law of Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza,

Jacinto Caamano sailed the *Aranzazu* from San Blas, New Spain -- March 20, 1792

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY LAUNCHES THE TINY SLOOP *ADVENTURE*

Captain Gray and the crew of the *Columbia Rediviva* had spent the winter at Gray’s Fort Defiance

on Adventure Cove in Clayoquot Sound -- [1791]-1792

Gray was completely unaware of the Nootka Sound Crisis or the anticipated negotiations

Captain Gray launched a small sloop of forty-four tons burden -- March 22, 1792

she was christened the *Adventure* to honor Adventure Cove where she was constructed

Gray’s first mate, Robert Haswell, was placed in charge of the sloop

SPANISH GOVERNMENT NAMES ITS NEGOTIATOR TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA CRISIS

Overcome by events initiated by the government of Great Britain, instructions were sent

to Commandant of San Blas Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra from the Court of Spain

he was to proceed to Mexico City for consultations and new orders -- March 1792

Commandant Quadra was given new orders by the government in Madrid

he was to replace Francisco de Eliza as commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca

in addition Commandant Quadra would serve as Spain’s negotiator in the effort to resolve

land ownership dispute and other issues not addressed by the [1790] Nootka Sound Convention

Commandant Quadra was to sail north and to wait at Friendly Cove in Nootka Sound

for the arrival of the British negotiator

Spain and Commandant Quadra would be bargaining from a position of weakness

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK REMAINS IN MACAU, CHINA

Captain Kendrick eventually found a Chinese merchant to purchase his furs -- March 1792

however, problems with weather kept the *Lady Washington* in the port city

After leaving Macau Kendrick went to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) -- spring 1792

(he sailed from there back and forth to Clayoquot Sound several times until [October 1794]

during one of his excursions he had a brief reunion with his son John Kendrick, Jr.

who commanded the Spanish ship *Aranzazu* at the time)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SETS OUT ON A TRADING EXPEDITION

Captain Gray placed the newly-constructed sloop *Adventure*

under the command of Robert Haswell formerly Gray’s second mate on *Columbia Rediviva*

Robert Haswell left Adventure Cove on Clayoquot Sound taking the tiny *Adventure* north

on a four-month cruise to the Queen Charlotte Islands in search of sea otter -- April 2, 1792

RobertHaswell described the sea otter: **“…this animal when young is of a dirty white with long course hair which being hauled out leaves a short chestnut coloured fur its colours change through its natural graduation of life as it grows older the fur grows thicker blacker and longer with less hair till it arrives at its maturity having the belly and head at this time of a yellowish white after this as it still continues to grow older the longer hairs or fur are tipt** (sic) **with white until it becomes of a beautiful silver grey… this animal in shape much resembles the seal it has a very good set of teeth which are remarkably white and much valued by the natives the largest skin of this animal that I saw measured six feet two inches from the end of the nose to the tip of the tail….”**[[21]](#footnote-21)

Captain Gray set out from Fort Defiance sailing south in search of trade opportunities -- April 2, 1792

he made a brief visit to the Strait of Juan de Fuca before continuing south

COMMANDANT QUADRA SAILS FROM SAN BLAS TO NOOTKA SOUND

Commandant and Spanish negotiator Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

thought arriving in Nootka Sound aboard a frigate was not adequate for his assignment

he added another frigate, a schooner and two goletas (small schooners)

Quadra wanted a fleet as a show of strength and he arranged for it to his satisfaction

Commandant Quadra departed San Blas on the *Activa* accompanied by his fleet -- April 11, 1792

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY PASSES BY THE GREAT RIVER OF THE WEST

Sailing south Gray passed the discolored water of what he called “Deception Bay” [1788]

where he noticed that evidence of a large river was present

this was Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta’s elusive Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora

(Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady and Rio San Roc [River San Rogue] [1775])

unknown to all captains the treacherous and shifting sand at the mouth of the Columbia River

presented a challenge to any ship that attempted to enter the river

rather than exploring Gray was anxious to trade which was, after all, his purpose

Captain Gray continued south almost to California Captain

before he turned the *Columbia Rediviva* to the north looking for rivers and bays to enter for trade

SETTLEMENT AT SAN LORENZO (NOOTKA SOUND) RECEIVES A SPANISH VISITOR

Spanish Frigate *Aranzazu* under command of Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano arrived

at Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- mid-April 1792

bringing necessary supplies including livestock for the settlement

additional materials had been taken from English Captain James Colnett’s

confiscated vessel *Argonaut* including sections of a schooner ready for assembling

that was carried in the *Argonaut’s* hold

Here Jacinto Caamano was to begin his effort to explore the North Pacific waters

for the fabled Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE PACIFIC COAST

HMS *Discovery* and HMS *Chatham* under Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton

arrived off the coast of California -- April 15, 1792 (April 16 in Vancouver’s journal)

Captain Vancouver’s two-ship expedition sailed north from Cape Mendocino, California

while en route they checked latitudes and noted previously unrecorded details of the coastline

but Vancouver believed Captain James Cook had made a thorough study of the Pacific coast

(Vancouver had accompanied Cook on the [1778-1781] expedition)

thus Vancouver and Broughton did little exploring north to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

where their investigation was to begin

PRESIDENT GEORGE WASHINGTON SETS UNITED STATES FOREIGN POLICY

President Washington and Secretary of State Jefferson believed Great Britain would march south

from Canada and attack New Spain (Mexico) through the Western territory claimed by the U.S.

and capture all of Spain’s western territory

however, President George Washington was leery of any foreign entanglement

he believed the young United States of America was too weak and unstable

to fight another war -- especially with a major European power

he insisted the president alone, without the guidance of congress, could set foreign policy

President Washington responded to the rising threats from Europe by insisting that the United States

would observe a strict neutrality [in the affairs of Europe] so long as circumstances and events

permitted the United States to do so -- Declaration of Neutrality -- April22. 1793

Neither Jefferson nor Hamilton and their followers agreed with President Washington’s policy

Jefferson’s anti-British Democrat-Republican expansionists were not happy

with lack of support for American settlers facing the dangers of living on the frontier

and the opportunity to remove Britain from America’s northern regions

Hamilton’s pro-British Federalists were not happy with neutrality toward Spain

especially when Florida remained Spanish territory on America’s southern boundary

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER LEADS GREAT BRITAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION

George Vancouver was elevated to British Royal Navy Captain -- 1792

with all of the rights and privileges of the position

he was harsh and full of self pride as was the custom of the Royal Navy at that time

he considered himself a gentleman -- that is, superior to most other men

he possessed a quick temper but his honesty was beyond question

Vancouver possessed no use for, or sympathy with, other people’s ideas

views from crewmen opposed to his own were rewarded with time in the ship’s brig

he was equally intolerant of the often bizarre theories of European geographers

Vancouver always maintained strict military control

he was a rigid disciplinarian and a demanding officer -- some thought him cold-blooded

he imposed cruel and unusual punishments for the slightest infractions

solitary confinement in the brig in chains with bread and water was an ordinary punishment

as was then the custom of British captains he always wore the lash (whip) around his wrist

he was always ready to apply it to the bare backs of obstinate sailors

he could, and once did, use the death penalty

when he ordered a sailor be shot with a pistol ball

Vancouver neither sought nor received the affection of his men -- but he was respected

DR. ARCHIBALD MENZIES ACCOMPANIES VANCOUVER ON THE *DISCOVERY*

Dr. Archibald Menzies, the ship’s surgeon and naturalist, had been to the Pacific Northwest before

he had sailed with British Royal Navy Captain James Colnett on the *Prince of Wales* [1788]

Menzies’ friend and patron, Sir Joseph Banks of the London Royal Society, had arranged for him

to make this voyage to collect among other objects seeds and plants and dried specimens

for London’s Kew Garden -- the royal botanical establishment in England

Captain Vancouver was not in favor of this effort as he thought it a distraction

Sir Joseph Banks warned Menzies he might expect trouble

(before the voyage was complete, Vancouver had placed Menzies under arrest

for “insolence and contempt” because they could not agree on a matter

relating to the glass frame where Menzies kept his growing plants

on the quarter deck of the HMS *Discovery*)

GEORGE VANCOUVER ALSO REPRESENTS GREAT BRITAIN IN NEGOTIATIONS

Captain Vancouver was also given the diplomatic task of meeting with the Spanish negotiator

to represent the interests of the British government and King

and to receive the buildings and parcels of land which had been occupied

by the subjects of his Britannic Majesty in [April 1789] in Nootka Sound

and other Pacific coast ports

Vancouver expected to secure Great Britain’s rights to the entire Pacific coast

from San Francisco to the Russian settlements in Russian-America (Alaska)

despite the fact he knew the Spanish had been active in the region since [1768]

England, in part, relied on Sir Francis Drake’s [1579] claiming of Port New Albion

(whose location was believed to be off the northern coast of California

or more recently is thought to be at today’s Nehalem Bay on the northern Oregon coast)

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra represented the Spanish government and King

he was to resolve the Nootka Sound Crisis and protect Spanish interests

Quadra was, at a minimum, to turn over the British property confiscated at Nootka Sound

by Spanish Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza [1789]

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER MISSES THE GREAT (COLUMBIA) RIVER

*Discovery* and *Chatham* reached the latitude previously noted by Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta

as the mouth of a great river which he named Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora

(Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady and Rio San Roc[River Rogue 1775])

British Captain John Meares named the same location Deception Bay [1788]

Vancouver missed the (Columbia River) -- April 26, 1792 (Vancouver’s Friday April 27)

although all the signs of a great river were to be seen: drifting logs, discolored water, feeding gulls,

crosscurrents -- all were disregarded by Vancouver as the British captain wrote in his journal

(misdated April 27, 1792): **“The sea has now changed from its natural, to river coloured water, the probable consequence of some streams falling into the bay, or into the ocean to the north of it, through the low land. ...Not considering this opening worthy of more attention, I continued our pursuit to the N.W. being desirous to embrace the advantages of the prevailing breeze....”**[[22]](#footnote-22)

Vancouver was convinced a river did not exist at that location

or Captain Cook would have discovered it

Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton on armed tender *Chatham*

was in agreement with Vancouver when he later noted: **“The breakers extending across** [the apparent opening] **gave us reason to consider** [it] **inaccessible, and unworthy of any loss of time. The *Discovery* made signal we were standing into danger and we hauled out; the situation is off** [British Captain John Meares] **Cape Disappointment from whence a very extensive shoal** (shallow) **stretches out and there was every appearance of an opening actually seen, but it was passed without appreciating the importance of the place.”**[[23]](#footnote-23)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER NAMES POINT GRENVILLE

Vancouver passed “Point Grenville”[[24]](#footnote-24) (along the Olympic Peninsula north of today’s Grays Harbor)

this was the first name given by Vancouver (in today’s Washington) -- morning April 27, 1792

*Discovery* and *Chatham* continued toward “Destruction Island” where Vancouver anchored

three miles south of Destruction Island and five miles off the Washington coast

there Captain Vancouver noted a: **“conspicuous point of land composed of a cluster of hummocks** (small hills)**, moderately high and projecting into the sea.”** (April 28, 1792 -- one day off) [[25]](#footnote-25)

They arrived at “Cape Flattery,” the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca, in a storm

Vancouver anchored five miles off the Washington coast

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY AGAIN MISSES THE GREAT (COLUMBIA) RIVER

Sailing north from California, Captain Gray again passed by Deception Bay

but heavy seas made the current was too strong to enter -- April 27, 1792

Gray decided to further explore this area at a later date when the weather cleared

he continued northward toward the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Gray anchored the *Columbia Rediviva* off Captain James Cook’s Cape Flattery

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY MEETS CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER

Soon after weighing anchor off Cape Flattery the lookout on the Captain Vancouver’s *Discovery*

reported a sail -- 4:00 a.m. April 28, 1792

this was first ship they had encountered since leaving the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

(Vancouver misdated the event in his journal as April 29)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* moved on toward the north

by noon they were two miles off Cape Flattery

Following the British vessels Captain Gray hoisted the American flag above the *Columbia Rediviva*

and fired a gun to leeward to hail the British ships

Captain Gray hove-to and waited for a boat to arrive from the *Discovery*

AN HISTORIC MEETING TAKES PLACE OFF CAPE FLATTERY

Captain George Vancouver sent Lieutenant Peter Puget and botanist Dr. Archibald Menzies

to confer with American Captain Robert Gray of the *Columbia Rediviva*

Vancouver’s men explained their expedition had no intention of trading

but only wanted information to assist in their exploration of the region

In response to a series of rather patronizing questions from Vancouver’s men

Captain Gray gave a summary of his ship’s log for the past several months

he stated he had passed what seemed to be a powerful river at 46º 10’ north latitude

which he tried in vain to enter for nine days

but was repelled by the strength of the current and high seas

Gray also informed Lieutenant Puget and botanist Dr. Menzies

that he had not sailed the *Lady Washington* to the east of what is now Vancouver Island

as was claimed by Captain John Meares and shown on two of Meares’ maps

Gray noted he had sailed into the Strait of Juan de Fuca nearly fifty miles

but he had no definite knowledge about where it ended

because he did not know of Spain’s efforts in the Strait

he mistakenly said the region around the strait was untouched

Captain Robert Gray explained he was on his way back to the river to try again

Lieutenant Puget and Dr. Menzies departed from the *Columbia Rediviva* to make their report

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER RECEIVES CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY’S INFORMATION

Lieutenant Puget and Dr. Menzies reported to Captain George Vancouver -- April 28, 1792

(Vancouver previously had been informed by Captain John Meares in London

that Captain Robert Gray had sailed through the Strait of Juan de Fuca

this story was supposed to have been told by Captain Gray

to a British agent in China who then told Meares in China

Meares told the story to Vancouver when they both were in England)

Captain Vancouver was delighted to hear from Captain Gray that the story was untrue

Vancouver concluded Americans had probably as yet not penetrated the Strait of Juan de Fuca

thus eliminating one potential rival in claiming the inland waters

(in fact, it was probably American Captain John Kendrick who had entered the strait)

News of a possible river at 46º 10’ was brushed aside

when Vancouver had previously visited that region with Captain Cook

Cook himself had seen the shoals and discoloration of waters described by Gray

but that was explained by the great captain as the result of fresh water springs

Cook noted that great rivers usually pile up great sand bars across their mouths

to Vancouver, the unexplored Strait of Juan de Fuca,

with its potential passageway through the continent was far more exciting

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION INTO THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Soon after meeting with American Captain Robert Gray, Vancouver sailed north

*Discovery* and *Chatham* reached Cape Flattery where they arrived in a storm

they continued north toward the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- noon April 28, 1792

No spiral rock or pinnacle as noted by the fabled Spanish explorer Juan de Fuca [1588] was sighted

and shown on a sketch of the Strait of Juan de Fuca drawn on Charles Duncan’s [1787] map

until *Discovery* rounded Tatoosh Island when Dr. Menzies and Third Lieutenant Joseph Baker

caught a glimpse of a rock they thought suited Juan de Fuca’s description

Vancouver named a rock off Tatoosh Island “Rock Duncan” (now Duncan Rock)

Lieutenant-Commander William Robert Broughton entered the Strait and noted: (misdated April 29) **“evening brought us to anchor… about eight miles within the entrance on the southern shore of the supposed Straits of De Fuca.”**[[26]](#footnote-26)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed into the Strait of Juan de Fuca passing Neah Bay

which Vancouver believed was too insignificant to be useful in refitting ships

he proceeded with his plan to explore the Strait of Juan de Fuca

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION ENJOYS GOOD WEATHER

George Vancouver on *Discovery* was enchanted by a lovely spring day

in the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- April 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday April 30)

he wrote in his journal: “**…a gentle breeze sprang up from the northwest, attended with clear and pleasant weather, which presented to our view this renowned inlet…. We weighed anchor with a favorable wind and steered to the east along the southern shore…** [The region was] **composed of low shady cliffs, falling perpendicularly on beaches of sand or stones. From the top of these eminences, the land appeared to take a further gentle ascent and was entirely covered with trees chiefly of the pine tribe, until the forest reached a range of high craggy mountains…their summits covered with snow….”**[[27]](#footnote-27)

Dr. Menzies lost no time in going to work identifying and classifying native plants

Vancouver cruised eastward along the southern shore of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

he noted in his journal: **“As the day advanced, the wind, which as well as the weather was delightfully pleasant, accelerated our progress along the shore. About this time a very high conspicuous craggy mountain presented itself towering above the clouds; as low down as they allowed it to be visible it was covered with snow.”**[[28]](#footnote-28)

Vancouver named “Mount Baker” in honor of Lieutenant Joseph Baker of *Discovery* -- April 29

“**The lofty mountains discovered in the afternoon by the third lieutenant, and in compliment to him by me Mount Baker, rose a very conspicuous object….”**[[29]](#footnote-29)

“**The land which interrupted the horizon between the N.W. and the northern quarters, seemed...to be much broken; from whence its eastern extent round to the S.E. was bounded by a ridge of snowy mountains, appearing to lie nearly in the north and south direction, on which mount Baker rose conspicuously; remarkable for its height, and the snowy mountains that stretch from its base to the north and south. Between us and this snowy range, the land, which on the sea shore terminated...in low perpendicular cliffs, or on beaches of sand or stone, rose here in a very gentle ascent, and was covered with a variety of stately forest trees. These, however, did not conceal the whole face of the country in one uninterrupted wilderness, but pleasantly clothed its eminences and checquered** (sic) **the vallies** (sic)**; presenting, in many directions, extensive spaces that wore the appearance of having been cleared by art.... As we passed along the shore near one of these charming spots, the tracks of deer, or some other such animal, were very numerous, and flattered us with the hope of not wanting refreshments of that nature, whilst we remained in this quarter.”**[[30]](#footnote-30)

Vancouver appeared to have a difficult time containing his excitement as recorded in his journal:

**“Every new appearance, as we proceeded, furnished new conjectures; the whole was not visibly connected; it might form a cluster of islands separated by large arms of the sea or be united by land not sufficiently high to be yet discernible. About five in the afternoon a long, low, sandy point of land was observed projecting from the craggy shores into the sea, behind which was seen the appearance of a well-sheltered bay…. having turned up a little way into the bay, we anchored…** [off] **the low, sandy point of land, which from its great resemblance to in the British Channel, I called new Dungeness….”**[[31]](#footnote-31)

Captain George Vancouver continued on to (later named Dungeness Spit) where he spent two days

COMMANDANT-NEGOTIATOR QUADRA ARRIVES AT NOOTKA SOUND

*Activa* anchored in Nootka Sound with Commandant Quadra aboard -- afternoon April 29, 1792

accompanied by his fleet of supporting ships to await the arrival of the British negotiator

Spain’s original Pacific Northwest colony of Fort San Miguel and Santa Cruz de Nuca

at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound could be lost if negotiations did not go well

Commandant Quadra relieved Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza

Fort San Miguel and Santa Cruz de Nuca’s barracks, hospital and flourishing gardens

had been the sole European outpost between California and Russian-Alaska for three years

Commandant Eliza had put the colony in good condition

he was anxious to take up a less isolated post or to return to Spain

his wife and children had petitioned the Spanish Ministry of Marine for his return

but his skills were needed in New Spain

COMMANDANT QUADRA SUCCESSFULLY LEADS THE SPANISH COLONY

Congenial commandant from Lima, Peru with his even-tempered style of governance

earned the respect and admiration of all of those with whom he came into contact

captains and officers of all nationalities calling at Nootka Sound were invited to Quadra’s

many-course banquets served on silver plates accompanied by fine wines and brandies

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra’s tolerance and interest

in the customs of the Nootka Indians gained their lasting affection

Maquinna was often an overnight guest at the Commandant’s residence

Commandant Quadra expanded the Spanish hold over the region:

as he organized Major Lieutenant Fidalgo’s extensive exploration of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

and its inlets (in what are now (British Columbia and Alaska)

in a search for the fabled Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

these explorations resulted in the most complete maps of the coastline

(British Captain George Vancouver made use of them and kept many Spanish names)

Commandant Quadra had taken command of Nootka Sound to represent Spain in the negotiations

with the British representative to resolve the details of the ([790] Nootka Agreement

Quadra allocated only a small portion of Friendly Cove for the British negotiator

Quadra felt this was justified by the vague terms of the Nootka Agreement

and from testimony he gathered from traders and Indians

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RELISHES INVESTIGATION OF INLAND WATERS

Happy prospects of a successful assignment are recorded April 30, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 1): **“Our May Day was ushered in by a morning of the most delightfully, pleasant weather…. The *Chatham’s* cutter, with the *Discovery’s* yawl and cutter, were ordered to be armed and supplied with a day’s provision, with which we set off too examine the two apparent openings nearest to us. We found the surface of the sea almost covered with aquatic birds of various kinds, but all so extremely shy that our sportsmen were unable to reach them with their guns…. We made the best of our way for land appearing like an island** (Protection Island)**… and ascending its eminence, which was nearly a perpendicular cliff, our attention was immediately called to a landscape almost as enchantingly beautiful as the most elegantly finished pleasure grounds in Europe. From the height we were now upon, our conjectures of this land being an island situated before the entrance of an opening in the mainland was confirmed.”**[[32]](#footnote-32)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ENJOYED THE COUNTRYSIDE HE WAS INVETIGATING

“**A light, pleasant breeze springing up, we weighed on Wednesday, the 2nd,** (Vancouver’s journal continues to be one day off) **and steered for the port we had discovered the preceding day…. The delightful serenity of the weather greatly aided the beautiful scenery that was now presented; the surface of the sea was perfectly smooth and the country before us exhibited everything that bounteous nature could be expected to draw into one point of view. As we had no reason to imagine that this country had ever been indebted for any of its decorations to the hand of man, I could not possibly believe that any uncultivated county had ever been discovered exhibiting so rich a picture….”**[[33]](#footnote-33)

Vancouver also noted in his journal: **“A picture so pleasing could not fail to call to our remembrance certain delightful and beloved situations in old England. Thus we proceeded without meeting any obstruction to our progress, which, though not rapid, brought us before noon abreast of the stream that discharges its waters from the western shore near five miles within the entrance of the harbours; which I distinguished by the name Port Discovery after the ship. There we moored in 34 fathoms, muddy bottom, about a quarter of a mile from the shore.”**[[34]](#footnote-34)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION ANCHORS IN PORT DISCOVERY

Vancouver named “Port Discovery” (today’s Discovery Bay) in honor of his ship -- May 1, 1792

(located between later named Sequim and Port Townsend, Washington)

it had previously been named Puerto de Quadra by Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza [1791])

Port Discovery was a well-protected natural harbor on the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Vancouver’s expedition remained anchored several days at “Point Wilson”

located at the end of the Quimper Peninsula near the entrance to Port Discovery

Vancouver named this geographic feature in honor of a colleague, Captain George Wilson

while at Point Wilson the crews of the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

made repairs and took on supplies of wood and water

*Discovery* remained as stationary as possible at night

to allow for minute observations from point to point during the day

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY TRAILS BEHIND CAPTAIN VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION

Captain Gray on the *Columbia Rediviva* was curious about the British and their purpose

he had been, more or less, following the Vancouver expedition

he followed Vancouver’s expedition north as they sailed passed Tatoosh Island

here the Indians came out and traded a quantity of furs with the Americans

Gray saw the British ships lying eight miles inside the Strait of Juan de Fuca -- night May 5, 1792

*Columbia Rediviva* continued to sail and trade about the mouth of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY LEAVES THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Captain Vancouver’s *Discovery* and Lieutenant-Commander William R. Broughton’s *Chatham*

remained anchored in Port Discovery (Discovery Bay)

American Captain Robert Gray sailed *Columbia Rediviva* westward out of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

turning south down the (Washington) coast

he stopped briefly near the mouth of the (Quillayute River) -- May 6, 1792

just below an Indian village where he traded copper for furs with the local Indians

because of unsettled weather Captain Gray decided sail away from the Quillayute village

he set a course south to reexamine (Cape Disappointment) and the mysterious great river

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS THE FIRST BOAT EXPEDITION HIMSELF

With the work of refitting the *Discovery* and *Chatham* progressing routinely,

Vancouver decided to set out on what would officially be the first boat expedition

Both ships remained in Port Discovery (today’s Discovery Bay) under William Broughton

work continued on refitting which included loading shingles for ballast

in the *Discovery’s* main and fore holds to correct her trim (balance in the water)

shore parties were busy at their appointed tasks

everyone enjoyed a visit from the natives who brought fish and various items to trade

Captain Vancouver himself led the boat expedition which was planned to take five days

giving time for the refitting of the ships to be completed -- May 6, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 7)

three artists traveling with the expedition, Lieutenant Zachary Mudge, J. Sykes, and T. Heddington

sketched scenes and events in the Puget Sound area

Master Joseph Whidbey**,** the officer on *Discovery* responsible for navigation*,*

also accompanied the first expedition

little seems to have escaped his attention when he was on boat expeditions

ship’s surgeon and naturalist Dr. Archibald Menzies took the opportunity

to expand his botanical pursuits

this part of the coast was revealing new species of plants at nearly every glance

he was in (the State of Washington) in May and (June) when flowers were at their height

Provisions for five days were loaded aboard three boats:

•Lieutenant Peter Puget took command of the *Discovery’s* launch;

•Lieutenant James Johnstone took charge of the *Chatham’s* cutter;

• George Vancouver led the men of *Discovery’s* pinnace -- the smallest boat of the three

Vancouver’s boat expedition set out from Port Discovery in a thick fog -- 5:00 a.m. May 6, 1792

to explore the openings they had seen to the south when they entered Port Discovery

rowing close to shore against a strong ebb tide for about nine miles

they rounded Point Wilson (the site of today’s Fort Worden near Port Townsend)

Vancouver named the features he encountered for his friends, patrons, crewmembers

and even his ships -- and placed them on his maps of the region

Through the lingering mists they could see they were entering a spacious inlet trending to the south

here Vancouver landed and wait for the weather to clear

to pass the time they tried fishing with a seine net -- without success

Some of the members of the boat expedition walked south along the beach for about two miles

they crossed Quimper Peninsula at **“**Point Hudson”[[35]](#footnote-35) and entered an extensive bay

located at the northeast corner of the (Olympic Peninsula)

as the fog lifted they were able to obtain a clear view of their surroundings and take their bearings

Vancouver was able to come remarkably close in determining his latitude

but, as was his pattern, he placed the much more difficult to chart longitude too far east

Vancouver named the inlet “Port Townshend” honoring British General Sir Charles Townshend

(later the “h” was later dropped -- city of Port Townsend (founded [1851]

and now the county seat of Jefferson County is located at the mouth of the bay

and adopted the name of the bay for its own)

Dr. Menzies took a stroll while dinner was being prepared

he came to some fields in bloom and noted the plant life

it was at this point that Vancouver’s party first sighted “Mount Rainier”

which Captain Vancouver named in honor of British Admiral Peter Rainier

(local Indians had called the mountain Tahoma for thousands of years)

After dinner Vancouver decided to dispatch the boats on separate surveying expeditions

he selected a low point of land to the southeast as the point for their rendezvous

(this was in reality two islands narrowly joined at their upper and lower ends respectively)

Lieutenant James Johnstone took the cutter to explore the southern shore

Lieutenant Peter Puget in the launch sounded the middle of the channel for depth

Vancouver and some of his men walked the shore of Port Townsend

until they were blocked by trees growing to the water’s edge

they boarded the pinnace and rowed to the head of the bay to where they found it ended

in a muddy flat covered with vegetation -- here they discovered a deserted native village

Vancouver’s party turned toward the rendezvous point and met Peter Puget en route

Vancouver and Puget passed an entrance into a deep lagoon which was blocked by a strip of sand

(this was the entrance of (Kilisut Harbor)[[36]](#footnote-36) separating (Indian Island) from (Marrowstone Island)

it appeared to them that the land behind their meeting place was an island

Vancouver, Puget and their men reached the rendezvous point after 8:00 p.m. May 6

but there was no sign of Johnstone and his party -- they set up camp to await his arrival

Lieutenant Johnstone had entered the lagoon between the islands of the rendezvous point

he thought it would be an easy matter to rejoin the other boats

but he was surprised when he found the southern end closed by shallow water

he was forced to row all the way back out

Vancouver named the place of rendezvous “Marrowstone Point” for hard clay soil there

*COLUMBIA REDIVIVA* SAILS SOUTH AND FINDS A HARBOR

Sailing south from Cape Flattery American Captain Robert Gray

sighted another promising but difficult to reach inlet at 46º 58’ north latitude

this harbor was protected by sand bars over which a strong current flowed -- May 7, 1792

Captain Gray encountered breakers across the entrance to the harbor

but he was determined to investigate

he posted a lookout in the masthead to search for shoals

stubbornly, he sent a cutter through crashing breakers and over dangerous shoals

ahead of the *Columbia Rediviva* to look for a possible passage and take soundings of the depth

Captain Robert Gray’s log noted -- May 7: **“Being within six miles of the land, saw an entrance in the same, which had a very good appearance of a harbor.… We soon saw from our masthead passage in between the sand-bars. At half past three, bore away, and ran in north-east by east, having from four to eight fathoms, sandy bottom; and, as we drew in nearer between the bars, had from ten to thirteen fathoms, having a very strong tide of ebb to stem.… At five p.m. came to in five fathoms water, sandy bottom, in a safe harbor, well sheltered from the sea by long sand-bars and spits.”[[37]](#footnote-37)**

Columbia Rediviva sailed through the surf and successfully crossed into the shelter of the harbor

many natives (probably Chehalis Indians) approached the ship

Gray’s crewmen were familiar with the Makah Indians of Nootka Sound

but they did not recognize the language spoken by these people

Despite the language barrier, the Bostons, as American traders were known to the natives,

soon entered into a brisk trade with the Indians

Fifth Mate John Boit reported the details: **“Without doubt we are the first civilized people that ever visited this port, and these poor fellows viewed us and the ship with the greatest astonishment.”**[[38]](#footnote-38)

Gray bought fish and furs cheaply from the Indians for blankets and iron

but he was concerned about exploring a river that was seen in the distance

as his men would be exposed to danger

Gray named the inlet “Bullfinch Harbor” in honor of Charles Bullfinch

one of the partners in Barrel, Bullfinch and Company, the owners of the Columbia Rediviva

(Spanish lieutenants Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Cayetano Valdes named the harbor

Puerto de Gray -- 1792 [today’s Grays Harbor])

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION CONTINUES THEIR INVESTIGATION

At Marrowstone Point Vancouver wrote in his ship’s log of the bay stretching south: **“It proved to be a very safe and more capacious harbor than Port Discovery; and rendered more pleasant by the high land being at a greater distance from the water-side”** (wrongly dated May 8)[[39]](#footnote-39)

however, Vancouver’s camp at Marrowstone Point became increasingly concerned

regarding fate of Lieutenant James Johnstone and the crew of the cutter

Both the pinnace and the launch were underway to begin a search -- 8:00 a.m. May 7, 1792

they landed to obtain water near the entrance they had passed the day before and were overjoyed

to hear the report of a swivel gun in the distance -- they fired a shot in answer

men with the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at Port Discovery heard the sound of gunfire

that was exchanged between the cutter and launch -- *Chatham* fired a swivel round in answer

Weather continued to be pleasant

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton remaining with the ships

was able to begin his detailed survey of Port Discovery

shore parties continued as before with gathering wood and water

refitting continued on board the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

Lieutenant James Johnstone and his party met Vancouver after an arduous row about an hour later

Johnstone explained to Vancouver that they had entered the inlet and had continued to its end

with the hope that they would be able to return to the rendezvous point

when they arrived at the head of the inlet they were dismayed to find the water so shallow

that it was impossible to proceed into the wide bay across the bar

there was no alternative but to return back the way they had entered

Dr. Archibald Menzies and Lieutenant Peter Puget in a burst of good humor

recorded the name of this inlet as “Johnstone’s Decoy”

Reunited Captain George Vancouver’s three boats continued their investigation

on the eastern shore of Kilisut Harbor they made a grisly discovery

Dr. Menzies found two human heads impaled on two poles set in the ground

hair and flesh still clinging to the bone showed they had been placed there recently

savagery of this exhibition filled them with revulsion

this served as a reminder of the need for constant vigilance when among the coastal natives

near this location they also made another unusual discovery on the long spit of sand

at the entrance to Johnston’s Decoy

Menzies recorded finding a series of nine or ten poles about a hundred yards apart

standing in a row nearly equidistant from one another,

each pole was in two pieces neatly joined to achieve a total length of about ninety feet

each pole was securely planted in the ground and ended in a three-pronged top piece

Dr. Menzies could see no purpose for any of this

(it was only later they learned the Indians stretched nets between the poles

these were invisible to birds flying in from the sea at night

food and clothing, difficult or impossible to gather otherwise, was easily acquired

this was a tribute to the natives’ ingenuity)

Peter Puget with the launch filled the expedition’s water kegs from a small run of fresh water

that proved to be brackish -- a walk of a mile into the forest was required to find a purer source

adding to their labor they had the misfortune of running aground on a sand bank on a falling tide

while the crew of the launch attempted to free themselves the pinnace and cutter

continued the survey along the continental shore and dined again on Marrowstone Point

where Peter Puget and the launch joined them around 2:00 p.m.

Captain Vancouver again decided to split up the boat expedition from Marrowstone Point

he selected as their rendezvous point a low, distant bluff

Lieutenant Puget and the launch was sent to sound the mid-channel

Puget’s travels took him into the middle of(today’s Admiralty Inlet)

Lieutenant Johnstone was sent with the cutter to examine the western shore

opposite Marrowstone Point (today’s Whidbey Island)

Vancouver’s party with the pinnace continued along the continental shore

Vancouver’ course took him south along the eastern edge of Marrowstone Island

Weather made a sudden change for the worse later in the afternoon

as the evening darkened it began to rain heavily with a thick fog settling in

it was only by firing muskets that the boat expeditions could keep in touch with one another

as they struggled toward the rendezvous point

Puget, in the middle of the channel, noted that even though a strong northwest wind favored them

the ebbing (receding) tide against them was so strong that they were unable to make headway

Johnstone in the cutter experienced the same weather but he met Vancouver’s party -- 7:00 p.m.

Wind died down during the night but the rain increased -- 11:00 p.m.

Vancouver and Johnstone decided to abandon their attempt to reach the distant meeting place

they headed for the western shore to camp for the night but they could not find a suitable site

finally after great difficulty they found a campsite on “Oak Bay”

they started a fire and set up tents after 1:00 a.m. May 8, 1792

tents pitched ashore were only for the use of the officers and midshipmen

men in the boats had no covering during the night other than the sails from the boats

and the clothes they wore as they huddled about the fire

(it was not until the following year that provision was made for the boat’s crews)

Vancouver’s entire party was drenched to the skin and they had no idea where they were

but they were safe and together

no commander of any nautical surveying expedition had spent, or would ever spend,

as much time as Captain Vancouver in directly conducting the actual work of the survey

he shared in the hardships of his men with exemplary endurance

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION SPENDS A THIRD DAY EXPLORING

During the previous wild night, the arms (weapons) chest and all the muskets were soaked with water

there was grave concern they might find themselves approached by hostile natives

with no means of protection

rainy, foggy weather confined Vancouver’s party to this spot for the entire day

during this time they put their weapons in order

Vancouver’s boat expedition investigated the area

to ascertain their situation -- daylight May 8, 1792 (Vancouver’s Wednesday May 9)

as intervals of clear weather permitted, parties walked along the shore

they were pleasantly surprised at their good fortune -- they had pitched their tents on a sandy beach

that formed the entrance to the southern end of Johnstone’s Decoy

they enjoyed wild gooseberries and raspberries from the surrounding forest

of various pines, maple and oak trees

at low water the beach provided a goodly supply of small clams,

but they had no luck in fishing with their small seine (net)

On one of their excursions they noticed a number of oak trees among the pines

Dr. Menzies acquired some specimens for his plant frame on the *Discovery*

Vancouver named their campsite at the southern end of Marrowstone Island “Oak Cove”

Peter Puget with the launch joined Vancouver and Johnstone in their Oak Cove camp

Puget recorded finding the remains of a number of deserted native fires and huts

which appeared to have been occupied not long before, but there was no sign of the inhabitants

in writing his journal Puget often consulted with Menzies to identify the flora and fauna

thanks to this collaboration there are many references in his record of plants and animals

that he would have otherwise been unable to identify

Puget’s journal for this day(May 9 -- consistently misdated) records the sighting of **“…the White Headed and Brown Eagle, Crows, Ravens, Curlew and Oceanic Birds”**[[40]](#footnote-40)

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA COMES UNDER ATTACK IN BULLFINCH (GRAYS) HARBOR

Astounded by their first sight of a white man’s ship local natives flocked about in their canoes

Gray and his men were obliged to exercise constant watchfulness to avert an attack

on the beach there was tremendous excitement among the natives that evening

who were probably performing a war dance

Columbia Rediviva’s crew became concerned as a canoe approached -- evening of May 8, 1792

a loud shout was heard from the Indians -- all hands on the *Columbia* immediately took up arms

several war canoes passed near the ship but were dispersed by firing muskets over their heads

however these natives appeared to be ignorant of firearms

a large canoe with at least twenty warriors paddling under a bright moon

reached to within half a pistol shot of the *Columbia Rediviva* -- midnight

Gray ordered a nine-pounder loaded with loose iron to fire point-blank at the nearest canoe

this was accompanied by ten muskets loaded with buckshot

as fifth mate John Boit reported: **“We dashed her all to pieces and no doubt killed every soul in her. The rest soon made a retreat. I do not think that they had any conception of the power of artillery. But they was** (sic) **too near us for to admit…any hesitation how to proceed.”**[[41]](#footnote-41)

At that the other canoes retreated

INDIANS COME BACK TO TRADE WITH CAPTAIN GRAY

Amazingly enough, the Indians in Bullfinch Harbor resumed trading without apparent rancor

as Indians bartered salmon, many beaver skins and some otter -- May 9, 1792

American crewmen explained the wonders of cannons to the natives

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION SPEND ITS FOURTH DAY EXPLORING

Morning dawned fair as they made an early start -- May 9, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday May 10)

Vancouver selected as their destination a high dome of land (today’s Hood Head)

that had the appearance of an island to their south

After crossing “Oak Bay,” to the western side of Whidbey Island

Vancouver’s boat expedition met with a number of natives fishing along the shore

who followed the boats when they landed for breakfast and to dry their clothes

about eighteen Indians came ashore close by and placed their bows and quivers on a tree stump

they sat down very peacefully on the beach beyond the line marked out by Vancouver

to divide the two parties

eagerly they accepted the trinkets, medals, beads and knives but they had nothing to trade

Menzies and Vancouver remarked in their journals that these natives,

although of similar appearance and manner to those in the Strait of Juan de Fuca,

they spoke a different dialect

when Vancouver’s party left the breakfast place and crossed the cove

they noticed a native village at its end to which their guests retired after they parted

Vancouver landed at noon to determine their latitude and longitude

when they continued south they saw the inlet they were following branched

by the point of land chosen on the previous day as their intended place of rendezvous

as conditions had worsened this location was named “Foulweather Bluff” (Hansville)

Vancouver continued his policy of keeping the continental shore to his starboard (right)

he sent the boats ahead toward the rendezvous point while he and Puget walked along the shore

they discovered that what they had taken as a small, round island

was connected to the mainland by a low spit of land, beyond which the inlet continued

in a more southerly direction about ¾ of a mile wide

it appeared the inlet terminated just beyond the round island

and that they would be in the vicinity of the previous rendezvous point by afternoon

Lieutenant James Johnstone was dispatched in the cutter to sound mid-channel

while Puget and the launch was sent to examine the eastern shore directly across the bay

Vancouver’s chart showed the launch entered (Port Gamble)

although this was not noted in the journals

in spite of a strong southerly wind, they were able to make some progress up the arm

thanks to a stronger flood (incoming) tide, which carried them to a pleasant spot

on the eastern side where they pitched the tents for the night -- 8:00 p.m. May 9

Lieutenant Peter Puget’s journal contains many items of interest

he provided his first detailed description of the natives they had encountered at “Indian Arm”

he noted that seventeen natives had appeared and that **“Their Foreheads appeared to be Deformed or out of Shape comparatively Speaking with those of Europeans. The Head has something of a Conical Shape - They wear the Hair Long with Quantities of Red Ochre intermixtd** (sic) **with whale Oil or some other Greasy Substance that has a Similar disagreeable Smell - Only One Man had a thick Beard, the others, wore a Small Tuft of Hair on the Point of the Chin & on the Upper Lip like Mustachios - on other parts of the Body they suffered Nature to have its Course, which were as well supplied as in the Common Run of men, except the Breasts, which were all totally destitute of Hair .”** (misdated May 10)[[42]](#footnote-42)

VANCOUVER’S FIFTH DAY OF EXPLORATION

Vancouver’s boat expedition set out again in the morning -- May 10, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 11)

as the day progressed the weather regained its previous serenity

Vancouver’s boats moved south down the inlet

They crossed the inlet after breakfast and confirmed there were no openings along its eastern side

they landed at “Hazel Point” on the western shore to take an observation for latitude at noon

by Vancouver’s calculation they were due south of their anchorage in Port Discovery

here the channel divided into two branches

one nearly due north and the other to the southwest

keeping with the practice of maintaining the continent on their starboard

they examined the northern arm for about seven miles before it terminated in a wide, deep basin

(today’s Dabob Bay was named by the Wilkes Expedition [1841])

here Dr. Menzies found a profusion of a new species of evergreen huckleberry

he spent the afternoon making sketches as he sailed along with Vancouver in the pinnace

Vancouver worked his way back down the arm

camp was made for the night on (Quatsap Point) -- May 10

COLUMBIA REDIVIVA SAILS OUT OF BULLFINCH HARBOR

Three days were spent in profitable trade but Captain Robert Gray was anxious to cross the sand bar

and set out in search of the great river

he sailed the Columbia Rediviva from Bullfinch (Grays) Harbor -- May 10, 1792

in spite of hostility by the natives three days had been spent in profitable trade

Gray made note in his ship’s log: **“At half past seven** [p.m.]**, we were out clear of the bars and directed our course to the southwestward, along shore.”**[[43]](#footnote-43)

Captain Robert Gray sailed the Columbia Rediviva into the night to reach the location he thought

was the mouth of the elusive river he sought

in the darkness Captain Gray missed the entrance to (Willapa Bay)

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES AT CAPE DISAPPOINTMENT

After sailing south all night from Bullfinch (Grays) Harbor, the Columbia Rediviva sailors “**saw the entrance of our desired port bearing east-south-east, distance six leagues** (about eighteen miles)**; in**

**steering sail, and hauled our wind in shore.”[[44]](#footnote-44) --** 4:00 A.M. May 11, 1792

Captain Gray and the crew had reached the vicinity of the mouth of (today’s Columbia River)

Columbia Rediviva was not the first to visit what appeared to be the mouth of the great river:

•natives had been living along the river for thousands of years;

•Europeans had been sailing the Pacific Northwest Coast for perhaps more than 200 years;

•Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta had named the area Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora

“Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady” and “Rio San Roc” (Rogue) [1775];

•British Captain John Meares renamed this location “Cape Disappointment” [1788];

•British Royal Navy Captain George Vancouver recognized but ignored

the signs of a great river

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY DISCOVERS A GREAT RIVER

Morning dawned bright and clear providing light, favorable breezes and gentle seas -- May 11, 1792

Captain Robert Gray sited the entrance to the great river he believed was near

Captain Gray found a clear channel with sufficient depth between sand bars

seventeen-year-old Fifth Mate John Boit noted in the ship’s log: **“At eight a.m., being a little to windward of the entrance of the Harbor, bore away, and run in east-north-east between the breakers, having from five to seven fathoms** [one fathom is six feet deep] **of water.”[[45]](#footnote-45)**

Captain Gray ordered thepinnace (small boat) lowered

which skimmed into the narrow entrance between submerged sand banks

Fifth Mate John Boit noted: **“saw an appearance of a spacious harbour abreast the Ship, haul’d our wind for it, observ’d two sand bars making off, with a passage between them to a fine river. Out pinnace and sent her in ahead and followed with the Ship under short sail, carried in from ½ three to 7 fm.** (fathoms of water) **and when over the bar had 10fm. water, quite fresh. The River extended to the NE. as far as eye cou’d reach, and water fit to drink as far down as the *Bars,* at the entrance.”[[46]](#footnote-46)**

*COLUMBIA REDIVIVA* SAILS UP THE GREAT RIVER

Fifth Mate John Boit continued: **“When we were over the bar, we found this to be a large river** [the Columbia River] **of fresh water, up which we steered**. **Many canoes came along-side. At one, p.m., came to with the small bower** [bow anchor], **in ten fathoms, black and white sand** [about ½ mile offshore west of today’s Astoria-Megler Bridge]**. The entrance between the bars bore west-south-west, distant ten miles; the north side of the river a half mile distant from the ship** [then in Baker Bay]**; the south side of the same two and a half miles’ distance** [from today’s Astoria, Oregon]**;”[[47]](#footnote-47)**

Captain Gray and the crew of the Columbia Rediviva were the first non-Indians to enter the river

that the Chinook Indians called Wimahl (“Big River”)

Captain Gray *s*ailed fifteen miles upriver as John Boit reported: **“The beach was lin’d with Natives, who ran along shore following the Ship. Soon after above 20 Canoes came off, and brought a good lot of Furs and Salmon, which last they sold two for a board Nail. The furs we likewise bought cheap, for Copper and Cloth. They appear’d to view the Ship with greatest astonishment and no doubt we was** (sic) **the first civilized people that they ever saw….”**[[48]](#footnote-48)

Columbia anchored near the old and important Chinook village of Qwatsamts -- May 11, 1792

that consisted of thirty large cedar plank longhouses arranged in three rows

(located at today’s Point Ellice at the Washington State end of the Astoria-Megler Bridge)

Fifth Mate John Boit concluded**: “Vast numbers of natives came along-side; people employed in pumping the salt water out of our water-casks, in order to fill with fresh, while the ship floated in. So ends.”[[49]](#footnote-49)**

When the natives were asked what the name of their village, the traders heard something

that sounded like “Chinook” which became the name of the village, the point it was located on,

the inhabitants and ultimately all the people of the lower (Columbia) River

natural abundance of the region, including five types of salmon, Wapato, camas and other bulbs,

berries and many other plant and animal resources

provided for a complex social and material culture and made the lower (Columbia) River

one of the most heavily populated and richest areas in all of North America

Gray remained in the lower portion of the great river days trading with the Chinook people

who lived along its banks -- especially for sea otter furs which white traders coveted

villages consisting of large rectangular longhouses constructed of huge cedar planks

studded both banks of the river for many miles

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION ENTERS ITS SIXTH DAY OF INVESTIGATION

Cold air had settled in that night and the temperature at dawn was 42°

but still not low enough to kill the mosquitoes and flies that had tormented them through the night

this was reason enough for an early start down the inlet about a mile in width

that now trended south by east -- May 11, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 12)

western side of the inlet was along the edge of a ridge of high, snow-capped mountains

that rose over 5,000 feet (the Olympic Mountains) trapping the cold air that served to augment

the force of the winds which along with the tides greatly slowed their progress

As the morning advanced the weather became most pleasant

aided by a gentle breeze the boat expedition was able to move steadily along

to a point where they landed to take the noon sighting for latitude and longitude

lunch was probably eaten at the mouth of (Lilliwaup Creek)

three natives in a canoe joined them and bartered a few trinkets for the usual beads and medals

they indicated more of their companions were located toward the apparent end of the inlet

Vancouver’s men proceeded to follow their guides to where they found a few miserable huts

that served as their habitation along the (Skokomish River) which emptied into (Annas Bay)

this river provided one the finest runs of fresh water they had yet encountered

Opposite Anna’s Bay another group of about fifty natives was located on (Ayres Point)

among this group they saw natives from the party they had met at Indian Arm

one of whom was easily identified by his severe disfigurement from smallpox

Menzies made the interesting note that among the artifacts the natives possessed

were some Chinese coins made of iron with a square hole in the center

this was a sure indication of trade with the natives of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Vancouver’s boat expedition had stretched their supplies beyond what they had anticipated necessary

and because the sportsmen in their group had been unsuccessful in their hunting efforts

supplies were at a dangerous low

Vancouver decided to conclude this survey and turn back to Port Discovery

it appeared the end of the inlet extended a short distance past where they had met the natives

Vancouver dispatched Lieutenant James Johnstone in the cutter to go around Ayres Point

with instructions that if it were not closed he was to proceed to its end

otherwise he was to return to the expedition

Johnstone was back in a very short time as unfortunately in the darkening evening

he did not see that the inlet extended for another nine miles through a narrow opening

less that a quarter mile wide (at Sister’s Point) and actually ended (near today’s Belfair)

Preparations were made to return to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

on their way a suitable stopping place was found for the night -- May 11-12

they pitched their tents on the eastern side of the inlet about two miles north of Indian Arm

they were rewarded for the efforts with pleasant weather and no interference from the natives

This long narrow inlet explored by Vancouver’s boat party was given the name “Hood Channel”

in honor of British Admiral Lord Samuel Hood (today’s Hood Canal)

who served with the British navy during the American Revolution

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION ENTERS ITS SEVENTH DAY

Already two day overdue in returning to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

Vancouver’s boat expedition set out at first light -- May 12, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday May 13)

all three boats retraced their route out of this long, narrow arm of the sea

they planned to make no stops except for meals

For the first time in the survey they encountered a stiff northerly breeze right in their teeth

which greatly hindered any progress and kept the boats’ crews at the oars until after 9:00 p.m.

they had endured more than fifteen hours of steady pulling without a break

As evening advanced Vancouver commanding the pinnace traveled faster than the heavier launch

Puget was concerned his boat would become separated from the other two in the gathering darkness

happily Puget found the other boats around 10:00 p.m.

camp had been set up on a low sandy spit of land possibly at (Misery Point)

opposite to the entrance to (Dabob Bay)

it was with some anxiety that they watched the tide rise nearly floating them off their campsite

finally the water stopped rising within a few feet of the tents

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION INVESTIGATES FOR AN EIGHTH DAY

Morning dawned calm and pleasant -- May 13, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday May 14)

but soon after Vancouver’s men left their campsite conditions underwent a dramatic change

dark and gloomy mists swept over them accompanied by baffling winds

*Discovery* and *Chatham* anchored at Port Discovery only a few miles to the north

they missed most of the foul weather experienced by Vancouver’s expedition in the morning

and did not suffer with the heavy rain until later that afternoon

ships’ sailmakers remained busy adding cross bands to the foresail

others in the crew prepared and painted both ships

*Discovery’s* carpenters who had been sent to work on the *Chatham* returned after finishing the job

Vancouver’s men arrived at “Foulweather Bluff” and landed off “Skunk Bay” -- 3:00 p.m.

Dr. Menzies noted how the bay got its name: “**In going into the Harbour one of the Gentlemen shot a small animal which diffusd** (sic) **through the air a most disagreeable & offensive smell, I was anxious to take it on board for examination & made it fast to the bow of the Cutter, but the stink it emitted was so intolerable that I was obligd** (sic) **to relinquish my prize. I took it to be the Skunk or Polecat.”**[[50]](#footnote-50)

Foulweather Bluff lived up to its name with a heavy deluge of rain that confined them to their campsite

Vancouver intended to investigate the area south of the point the next day

if the weather permitted -- continuing heavy rains ended the hope

SPANISH LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Spanish ships *Sutil* and *Mexicana* arrived at Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel -- May 13, 1792

during the voyage *Mexicana* had lost her masts in a storm

and was towed into Nootka Sound by *Sutil*

Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes

remained in Friendly Cove at Nootka Sound for about a month

during that time their ships were repaired and resupplied

both *Mexicana* main mast and foremast were replaced

Galiano met with Chief Maquinna who remembered the Spanish officer

as a member of Alejandro Malaspina’s [1791] expedition

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY CONTINUES UP THE GREAT RIVER

Columbia Rediviva, as noted in the ship’s journal, faced fresh gales and cloudy weather

many natives were alongside the ship to trade -- May 14, 1792

Captain Gray weighed anchor and sailed twelve to fifteen miles upriver -- about noon

he followed a narrow channel along the north bank of the river

which became increasingly hazardous due to sand bars

this channel eventually became so narrow that it was almost impossible to remain in it

as there were only three to eighteen fathoms water

Columbia Rediviva became grounded on the sandy river bottom -- 4:30 p.m.

but in a short time the rising tide lifted the ship free

Columbia backed off, stern foremost, into three fathoms of water

Gray sent the jollyboat (smallest type of boat carried on ships) ahead to scout the channel

when the crew returned they reported the channel on the north side was not navigable ahead

Columbia Rediviva was moored to the north bank as the weather turned rainy

Columbia was often thronged with local natives who never before had seen a sailing ship

Captain Gray sent ashore Fifth Mate John Boit who reported on people he encountered: **“The Indians are very numerous, and appear’d very civil (not even offering to steal). During our short stay we collected 150 Otter, 300 Beaver, and twice the Number of other land furs. The river abounds with excellent Salmon, and most other River fish, and the Woods with plenty of Moose and Dear** (sic), **the skins of which was** (sic) **brought us in great plenty, and the Banks produces a ground Nut, which is an excellent substitute for either bread or Potatoes. We found plenty of Oak, Ash, and Walnut trees, and clear ground in plenty, which with little labour might be made fit to raise such seeds as is necessary to the sustenance of inhabitants.”[[51]](#footnote-51)**

Gray shifted location up the river several times reaching (Grays Point)

he noted the mouth of (Grays River) before reaching (Harrington Point)

which was a far up the (Columbia River) as he sailed

sea otter was the main goal of the expedition and none were being delivered by the Indians

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Rain continued accompanied by a thick fog began the ninth day of Vancouver’s investigation

frustrating plans of further examination -- May 14, 1792 (Vancouver’s May Tuesday 15)

after taking stock of their dwindling supplies Vancouver decided to make a run for Port Discovery

Vancouver’s boat expedition set out from Foulweather Bluff at noon

aided by a strong southeast wind and an equally strong ebb tide they made good time

they kept close to the shore which was often obstructed by the incessant rain

Vancouver’s first boat expedition arrived safely back in Port Discovery -- mid-afternoon

crews of the boat expedition were hungry and drenched to the skin

they had traveled some 195 miles and charted 170 miles of coastline

from Port Discovery to (Admiralty Inlet) and Hood Canal and back to Foulweather Bluff

Those who had remained with the ships in Port Discovery had been in great apprehension

since [May 7] when they heard the exchange of swivel fire between the pinnace and launch

while they waited for Johnstone’s party in the cutter off Marrowstone Island

to arrive at the rendezvous point

Vancouver’s failure to return on the designated day

had added to fears for the safety of the boat expedition in this unknown land

(homecomings like this were repeated many times as the voyage progressed

often with the same concerns due to the boats’ extended absence)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER BEGINS PREPARATIONS TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Master Joseph Whidbey with Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton’s assistance

had completed the survey of the anchorage to which Vancouver gave the name of Port Discovery

much to the annoyance of Dr. Menzies who recorded in his journal that since the Spanish

were the first explorers to visit this place it should retain its original name

of Porto de Quimper (Port Quimper) given by Manuel Quimper [1790]

Preparations to get underway began at first light -- May 15, 1792 (Vancouver’s Wednesday May 16)

brewer’s kettles used to make spruce beer to ward off scurvy were returned from shore

weather was calm but rain continued to fall though not hard enough to prevent the necessary work

sailmakers finished making a new fore topgallant sail

natives continued to visit the ships though not in such great numbers

this enabled Dr. Menzies to study them further

he expressed the thought that they spoke the Nootkan language

he believed this location was the extreme edge of their range

and that their permanent dwellings were closer to the outer sea coast

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY MOVES BACK DOWN THE GREAT RIVER

Morning dawned with light air and pleasant weather -- May 15, 1792

many natives from different villages came alongside the Columbia Rediviva

John Boit also noted: **“The Canoes that came from down river brought no Otter Skins… [and so] we contented ourselves in our present situation which was a very pleasant one.”[[52]](#footnote-52)**

Captain Gray sent the cutter (small sailing boat) ahead with its crew

they found the main channel was located on the south side of the river

with a sandbar in between the two channels

Gray unmoored and sailed downriver to a better anchoring location (at Grays Point) -- 10:00 a.m.

As noted in the ships log Robert Gray and John Boit took the jollyboat ashore at (Grays Point):

**“to view the Country and take possession”**[[53]](#footnote-53)

(historians noted the phrase **“and take possession”** was inserted later and is in a different ink)

*COLUMBIA REDIVIVA* CONTINUES BACK DOWN THE GREAT RIVER

American Captain Gray then in (Grays Bay) ordered the anchor raised -- 4:00 a.m. May 16, 1792

because of lack of wind the *Columbia* was towed three miles by the cutter

jollyboat soundings of the channel found six fathoms of water covered the sandy river bottom

*Columbia* was greeted by a fresh breeze and sailed with the ebb-tide -- 10:00 a.m.

to a place about two miles west of the Chinook village of Qwatsamts

Back at (Point Ellice) in Baker Bay at the mouth of the (Columbia River)

where Captain Gray had made his first anchorage in the Columbia River

Gray renamed Captain John Meares’ Cape Disappointment to the north

“Point Hancock” in honor of revolutionary leader and Boston mayor John Hancock

(eventually Cape Disappointment will retain its name)

Gray renamed Captain Bruno de Heceta’s Cape Frondoso to the south

“Point Adams” for revolutionary hero John Adams

Captain Robert Gray camped and traded with the Indians

Fifth Mate John Boit wrote in the ship’s log: **“This River in my opinion, wou’d be a fine place for to sett** (sic) **up a Factory** [trading post]**. The Indians are very numerous, and appear’d very civill.** (sic) **during our short stay we collected 150 Otter, 300 Beaver, and twice the Number of other land furs. the river abounds with excellent Salmon, and most other River fish, and the Woods with plenty of Moose and Deer,** (sic) **the skins of which was** (sic) **brought us in great plenty, and the Banks produces a ground Nut, which is an excellent substitute for either bread or Potatoes, We found plenty of Oak, Ash, and Walnut trees, and clear ground in plenty, which with little labour might be made fit to raise such seeds as in nessescary** (sic) **for the sustenance of inhabitants,….”**[[54]](#footnote-54)

Captain Robert Gray made a chart of the river and the bay in the area but he did not name either

(British Royal Navy Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton named Grays Bay [fall of 1792]

eventually the larger of the two rivers flowing into (Grays Bay),

which the Indians called Ebokwol and Moolhool and became known as Grays River)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER CONTINUES PREPARATIONS TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Tents, the observatory and its instruments were returned to the ships

in preparation for sailing -- May 16, 1792 (Vancouver’s May Thursday 17)

Dr. Menzies spent the cloudy and wet day carrying several varieties of plants unknown to him

aboard ship to be placed in the plant frame on the quarter deck of the *Discovery­­*

much to Captain Vancouver’s irritation

some of these plants became associated with his name:

•madrona tree *(arbustus menziesii)* which Menzies called the Oriental strawberry tree,

•large rhododendron (*Menziesia ciliicalyx* -- Washington’s state flower);

•evergreen huckleberry (Menziesia ferruginea)

Dr. Menzies also collected and identified salal, sand verbena, pearly everlasting, vine maple,

wild onion, manzanita (evergreen shrubs or small trees), Oregon grape, western birch, calypso,

prince’s pine, fairy bells, meadow chickweed, dogwood, hazel, dogtooth lily, devil’s club,

wild hyacinth, penstemon (flowering plants),wild strawberry, syringa, spiraea, white poplar,

trembling poplar, Douglas fir, wintergreen, crabapple, red-flowering currant, mountain ash,

garry oak, *Sedum roseum,* thimbleberry, goldenrod, yew, giant cedar, hemlock spruce**,**

wild cranberry, two types of whortleberry and three types of huckleberry

*Discovery* and *Chatham* were unmoored as preparations were completed -- afternoon May 16

charting of the coasts of Washington and British Columbia now could begin in earnest

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION MOVES OUT OF PORT DISCOVERY

*Discovery* and *Chatham* weighed anchor -- daylight May 17, 1792 (Vancouver’s Friday May 18)

with the help of their small boats towing them they left Port Discovery

occasionally tacking with the light variable breeze from the southeast

Their course took them through the channel to the east of “Protection Island”

(between today’s Sequim and Port Townsend)

Vancouver went ashore to obtain latitude bearings at noon

and to look at the surrounding waters from another point of view

Dr. Archibald Menzies jumped at the change to get ashore again where he was delighted to find,

much to his surprise, Prickly Pear Cactus growing in the sandy soil in a stunted form

After his return to the *Discovery* Captain Vancouver decided to divide his resources

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton and *Chatham* would explore north into the San Juan Islands

following the course of several Spanish captains

Vancouver and the *Discovery* would investigate the water south of (Admiralty Inlet)

where no Spanish captain had as yet visited

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY BEGINS PREPARATIONS TO EXIT THE GREAT RIVER

After two days of trading with the Indians at the mouth of the great river

Captain Gray prepared his ship to exit the river

Captain Robert Gray named the river “Columbia’s River” in honor of his ship -- May 18, 1792

(he used the possessive form perhaps to honor both his ship and his country)

Captain Gray drew a rough sketch of the entrance of the river (which will later be copied)

Captain Robert Gray did not claim the river or take possession -- he was a trader; not an explorer

however, by entering the river before any other European

Gray not only determined the river’s name but gave the United States its strongest claim

to the Northwest Coast of North America

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON BEGIN THEIR SEPARATE INVESTIGATIONS

Thick fog held Vancouver’s expedition in Port Discovery (Discovery Bay) until around 8:30 a.m.

when a northwest wind dispersed the fog -- May 18, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 19)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* set separate courses amid cheers and best wishes from both ships -- noon

Broughton was instructed to explore one of two large openings leading to the San Juan Islands

he was to take the *Chatham* into thenorthwest opening to the islands

when he had completed his survey he was to return down the large opening to the southeast

where the *Discovery* would be conducting its investigation

Vancouver set the first inlet southeast of Foulweather Bluff as the rendezvous point

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER WILLIAM R. BROUGHTON SAILS NORTHWEST

When *Chatham* left the *Discovery --* May 18, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 19)

she was about one-half mile northeast of Point Wilson sailing with a westerly wind -- 4:00 p.m.

Leaving Port Discovery Broughton sailed into the maze of channels in the San Juan Islands

following the route previously used by Spanish captains

*Chatham* traveled the Strait of Juan de Fuca past (Smith Island) and (Minor Island)

Broughton continued on a course that took them into the southern entrance to San Juan Channel

that separates San Juan Island from the rest of the archipelago

Broughton sent the cutter ahead to sound for depth as they sailed beside a rock island (Harbor Rock)

located at the entrance to (Massacre Bay in West Sound on Orcas Island)

at the northern end of the channel leading into (Griffin Bay) near San Juan Island

which *Chatham* entered -- May 18, 1792

Broughton crossed (Griffin Bay) and entered (Upright Channel)

they sailed northwest into the broader San Juan Channel

which ran between San Juan Island and (Shaw Island)

*Chatham* was moved to the entrance to “Harney Channel”

Lieutenant Johnstone decided to send out two boats to examine openings off the main channel

an Indian village was discovered whose inhabitants offered venison for trade

Facing a strong ebb tide Broughton anchored the *Chatham* around 8:30 p.m.

it was not clear from Broughton’s record exactly where the *Chatham* anchored

but Johnstone’s rough chart showed an anchor symbol off (Turn Island near Friday Harbor)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER HAS DIFFICULTY AS HE SETS OUT TO EXPLORE

Captain Vancouver sailed to the southeast out of Port Discovery

aided by the flood tide -- May 18, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 19)

when *Discovery’s* sail was hoisted it was discovered the yardarm was rotted

it was immediately replaced with the main topsail yard so the ship could sail continue southeast

Captain Vancouver entered what he named **“**Admiralty Inlet”

(at today’s Hainsville -- this is the entrance to today’s Puget Sound)

Vancouver gave the water passage the name in honor of the British Board of Admiralty

looking up the bay Vancouver’s crewmen had a clear view of Mount Rainier

another snow-capped mountain south of Mount Rainer could be seen from the mast

(this was Mount Saint Helens)

During the day the weather continued warm and the winds remained calm

*Discovery* sailed between (Foulweather Bluff) and (Double Bluffs)

and entered the northern end (of what we know as Puget Sound)

Lieutenant Peter Puget expressed some concern that without a boat ahead to sound for depth

they were traveling too fast in the flood tide

although they frequently took soundings from the ship and had not found the bottom

with fifty and sixty fathoms of line

*Discovery* traveled down the east side of “Bainbridge Island”

entering “Elliott Bay” (today’s port of Seattle)

they sailed past a low point of ground on which a small Indian village was located

near the southeastern tip -- afternoon May 18

they saw canoes drawn up on the beach

at what Vancouver called “Village Point” (today’s Schmitz Park in West Seattle)

but the *Discovery* was not visited by natives

Vancouver could see two branches of Admiralty Inlet

with one branch running southwest and another southeast

Captain Vancouver made the decision to anchor on the west side of “Blake Island”

but as they approached their intended anchorage they found it impossible to reach bottom

with sixty fathoms of line

it was necessary for them to retrace their route and come to another anchorage

to the south of the native village at Village Point in (Elliott Bay)

there they safely anchored -- about 7:00 p.m. May 18, 1792

this location made it easy to bring wood and water on board the *Discovery*

describing his anchorage in Elliot Bay, Vancouver wrote (incorrectly dated May 19): **“Our situation being somewhat incommoded by the meeting of the different tides, we moved nearer in, and anchored in the same depth, and on the same bottom as before, conveniently to the shore. Our eastern view now bounded by the range of snow mountains from Mount Baker bearing by compass north to Mount Rainier…. The ridge of mountains on which Mount Olympus is situated, whose rugged summits were seen towering over the eastern side, bounded to a considerable extent our western horizon.”[[55]](#footnote-55)**

Vancouver’s general impression of the land was extremely positive**: “The serenity of the climate, the innumerable pleasing landscapes, and the abundant fertility that unassisted nature puts forth, require only to be enriched by the industry of man with villages, mansions, cottages, and other buildings to render it the most lovely country that can be imagined, whilst the labor of the inhabitants would be amply rewarded in the bounties which nature seems ready to bestow on cultivation.”[[56]](#footnote-56)**

Crewmen busied themselves on shore brewing spruce beer

while carpenters prepared to replace the rotted topsail yardarm using spares cut on shore

’tween deck was washed with vinegar

with so many of the crew away on shore the *Discovery* was given a good airing out

Two natives in a canoe visited the ship but could not be enticed to come aboard

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Dr. Archibald Menzies with a small party landed at the nearby village

there they watched the natives preparing clams and fish for the winter

Vancouver noted the village appeared to be a temporary site

eighty to one hundred men, women and children were busily engaged

in rooting out bulbs and wild onions which they dried and made into a paste

Before nightfall Captain Vancouver made a quick excursion to the cove they had seen

he found rocks blocked the entrance barring their entry (to Blakely Harbor)

Vancouver returned to his ship and made plans to dispatch his second boat expedition

to survey the branch of Admiralty Inlet leading southwest from their anchorage

BROUGHTON ON THE *CHATHAM* INVESTIGATES THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton dispatched the *Chatham’s* cutter in clear weather

to explore (Upright Channel) -- May 18, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 19)

six miles were investigated before the cutter returned to the anchorage

no end to the channel could be found

After breakfast Broughton decided to send two boats under the direction of James Johnstone

to examine the extensive arm that led to the northwest

Lieutenant Johnstone with the launch and cutter went up San Juan Channel

*Chatham* weighed anchor and sailed as they followed the earlier route of the cutter

into (Upright Channel) through the narrow passage between (Canoe Island) and (Flat Point)

to their next anchorage off (Flat Point) on Lopez Island await the return of Johnstone’s party

they tried the seine with limited success

Lieutenant Johnstone’s boats arrived at the anchorage -- 8:00 p.m.

Johnstone brought word that the large arm they had been following (San Juan Channel)

communicated with another extensive branch of the sea by two arms,

they had observed (Spieden Channel) opened into Haro Strait

which branched in a northwest direction

and (President Channel) ran to the northeast between (Waldron Island) and Orcas Island

LIEUTENANT PETER PUGET LEADS A BOAT EXPEDITION

Lieutenant Puget led an expedition to explore the sound which bears his name

Puget took the *Discovery’s* launch and Master Joseph Whidbey accompanied in the large cutter

they set out with sixteen men from the vicinity of Admiralty Inlet’s Village Point

to investigate the tortuous channels -- 4:00 a.m. May 19, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 20)

their work progressed at various locations day in and day out rain, wind and shine

Dr. Archibald Menzies joined the party hoping to expand his botanical collection

Puget kept a rough log on his exploration in his journal

**“Early in the Morning we left the Ships with the two Boats well Armed. The Launch carried two Swivels besides wall pieces Musquetoons & Musquetts & provided with a Weeks Provisions we began the Examination of the Inlet.”**[[57]](#footnote-57)(dated May 20 -- one day off like Vancouver)

Rowing against the ebbing (receding) tide Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey moved south

at a little less than one mile an hour following the narrow arm of (Colvos Passage)

which lies between (later named Vashon Island) and the (Kitsap Peninsula)

they came upon two Indians who deserted their canoe and fled inland

Puget and Whidbey continued on to (Olalla)and put ashore here for breakfast

Puget reported: **“The land there is in general Low & rising gradually a little Distance from the Beach to the Hills of a Moderate Height & is everywhere covered with wood consisting chiefly of tall Straight Pine Trees.** [Actually these were Douglas fir trees hundreds of years old -- scientific name: *Psuedotsuga menziesil* in honor of Dr. Menzies] **About Nine we left the Breakfast Place with a fine fair Wind & Tide and proceeded on a further investigation of the Inlet.”**[[58]](#footnote-58)

Continuing south along (Colvos Passage) to the east they reached an opening about noon

some nine miles from their starting point which led to the conjecture

that the land they had been following to their left side was an island (Vashon Island)

Puget’s boat expedition continued on for about an hour and entered

(Dalco Passage which separates Vashon Island and Point Defiance)

Puget’s men became the first white men to see (Commencement Bay -- today’s Tacoma)

which was in those days a mud flat estuary for the (Puyallup River) and (Hylebos Creek) Puget noted **“About 4 Miles from the Breakfast Place the Eastern Shore which had hitherto been compact branched off to the Eastward & afforded us a view of an excessive high Snowy Mountain** [Mount Rainier]**, which though frequently seen before I have omitted noting it.”**[[59]](#footnote-59)

As the tide turned they rounded (Point Defiance) and passed through “The Narrows”

where Puget indicated: **“A Most Rapid Tide from the Northwest hurried us so fast past the Shore that we could scarce land. At a Distance of about six leagues from the Breakfast Place the Continent took a Sudden turn to the Westward.”**[[60]](#footnote-60)

unable to row against the strong flood tide sweeping around (Fox Island)

Puget and his men put ashore at (Point Fosdick)and lunched -- about 2:00 p.m. May 19

After lunch Puget’s men were buffeted by a strong tide

they could progress only about a mile to the west where they found a small cove

Puget named this inlet **“**Indian Cove” (today’s Wollochet Bay) which they explored

at the head of the cove was a small group of natives who had set up a temporary camp

to dry fish and clams

they traded buttons and trinkets with the Indians for dried clams and fish

these natives showed no signs of fear or surprise at their new visitors

Puget gave his impression of the natives: **“In their Persons these People are slenderly made. They wear their Hair long which is quite Black and exceeding Dirty. Both Nose and Ears are perforated to which were affixed Copper Ornaments & Beads. The whole Party was Naked.”**[[61]](#footnote-61)

Leaving Indian Cove and turning south the progress of Puget’s boat expedition was slowed

by the strong current separating the (Kitsap Peninsula) from (Fox Island)

they reached the western end of narrow (Hale Passage) where they stopped to eat -- 8:00 p.m.

Camp for the night was made near (Green Point) in (Carr Inlet)

setting up the tents drew a number of natives who watched in amazement

as the dwellings suddenly appeared as if from nowhere

BROUGHTON SENDS OUT BOAT EXPEDITIONS

*Chatham* remained at anchor off (Flat Point) on Lopez Island -- May 19, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 20)

Broughton had his boats busy surveying the maze of channels -- early in the morning

Lieutenant James Johnstone went back to sketch the entrance to San Juan Channel

When the tide slackened Broughton attempted to move the *Chatham* forward -- 8:00 a.m.

she was towed to the northeast with the ship’s launch

*Chatham’s* position was opposite the entrance to (Harney Channel) -- noon

Lopez Island could be seen to the south

Broughton discovered a native village whose inhabitants offered venison for trade

(Harney Channel) split into three channels which could be seen from the *Chatham*:

•northeast was possibly (Peavine Pass) between (Blakeley Island) and (Obstruction Island)

or perhaps (Obstruction Pass) separating (Obstruction Island) from Orcas Island

Johnstone examined (Harney Channel) to the west which divided into two more channels:

•(West Sound) to the north leading to (Massacre Bay) on Orcas Island

•(Wasp Passage) to the west leading to (Crane Island)

Johnstone returned from sketching San Juan Channel in the cutter to where the *Chatham* was anchored

James Hanson, *Chatham’s* Second Lieutenant took the launch southeast into (Upright Channel)

which he followed for about eight miles between Lopez Island and (Blakeley Island)

finding no apparent termination Hanson returned to the ship

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER EXPLORES AROUND (VASHON ISLAND)

Repairs and maintenance continued on board the *Discovery* at Village Point

Captain George Vancouver took a boat expedition

to examined the passage east of (Vashon Island) **--** May 19, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday May 20)

Vancouver thought he had found the entrance to a small cove with an island

(Vancouver was wrong; this was the opening to Port Orchard Bay)

*COLUMBIA REDIVIVA* SAILS OUT OF COLUMBIA’S RIVER

After nine days in the Columbia River Captain Gray attempted to leave -- 5:00 a.m., May 20, 1792

lack of wind and a strong tide slowed the ship’s progress

it took four hours to re-cross the sandbar of the Columbia River and enter the Pacific Ocean

Captain Gray noted: **“May 20. This day left Columbia’s River and stood clear of the bars and bore off to the northward. The men at Columbia’s River are strait-limbed, fine-looking fellows, and the women are very pretty.”**[[62]](#footnote-62)

Fifth Mate John Boit further noted: **“We lay in this place till the 20th May, during which time we put the ship in good order and filled up all the water casks alongside, it** [the water] **being very good. These natives talked the same language as those farther south, but we could not learn it. Observed that the canoes that came down river brought no otter skins, and I believe the otter constantly keep in salt water. They, however, always came well stocked with land furs and capital salmon. The tide set down the whole time and was rapid. Whole trees sometimes come down with the stream. The Indians informed us there were fifty villages on the banks of this river.”**[[63]](#footnote-63)

PETER PUGET LEADS A SECOND DAY OF EXPLORING

Once again the weather changed during the night

Puget’s men woke up at dawn to rain in their (Green Point) camp

nonetheless they set out early in the morning May 20, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday May 21)

into (Carr Inlet) at the northern end of (Fox Island)

traveling to the north the tide prevented them from making much progress before breakfast

They enjoyed breakfast on a small island whose major inhabitants were huge flocks of crows

Puget named “Crow Island**”** (today’s Cutts Island)

Puget and his men continued to the end of (Carr Inlet) and explored (Henderson Bay) to its termination

which was in sight before noon (at today’s Wauna, Washington)

this was found to be a swampy tide flat too shallow for the boats

Returning south Puget’s men saw a small native village on the western shore of Crow Island

they were met by a canoe whose occupants appeared extremely shy and distrustful

as the natives indicated they wanted the visitors to leave

Puget’s men tried various schemes to induce the natives to move closer to the boats

it was with a great deal of difficulty that the Indians were finally persuaded to accept a few gifts

after receiving a number of items they returned quickly to their village

Puget’s boats had been moving steadily along the western shore of (Carr Inlet)

weather became sultry with temperatures reaching into the nineties

about four miles from the small native village the party came into a small cove

there a stream of fresh water was located at head of the cove

Puget’s party intended to lunch on a cliff about sixteen feet above where the boats had anchored

some the crew planned to seine for salmon to restock their food at the mouth of a creek

while preparations were being made to eat

suddenly they were surprised to see about twenty armed natives in six canoes led by “One Eye”

who hadfollowed Puget into the cove and landed close to where the explorers proposed to dine some two dozen Indians came directly ashore, beached their canoes and strung their bows

Puget later wrote: **“Had a Single Arrow been discharged either at us or the Boat I certainly would have had the Person Shot, let the Consequence be what it would.”**[[64]](#footnote-64)

Puget drew a line on the beach to separate the two groups

with watchful eyes the British sailors proceeded with their dinner plans

on the cliff overlooking the members of their party who remained with the boats

another canoe of armed natives now joined the first arrivals

all of the Indians held an earnest consultation in their canoes

from their gestures it became clear they intended to attack

when one group in a canoe tried to outflank Puget’s men in the boats

they were warned off by shouts and these Indians chose to retreat

however they soon returned with bows and arrows ready

they jumped up the bank in a menacing manner

Puget’s party and the men in the boats were armed and made it clear

they were prepared to resist any further hostile moves by the natives

one Indian moved right up to Puget and it was necessary that a musket muzzle

be placed against the native’s chest to persuade him to give up any plan of attack

after this threat the natives retreated to the beach

Puget’s men on the bank finished their dinner with a watchful eye on their visitors

natives continued to make signs that they intended further annoyances

which prompted Puget to order that a swivel be fired from the launch

this, however, had no result as the natives showed neither surprise nor fear

at the sound or the effect of the shot

finally, as the equipment from shore was being returned to the boats

Puget ordered the swivel gun loaded with grape shot and fired across the water

there was no immediate effect as the Indians derisively exclaimed “pop”

without showing any concern

eventually, the Indians relented and unstrung their bows and began trading

they gave up all pretense of a war-like manner and offered their bows and arrows for sale

which was taken as certain indication of their now peaceable intentions

Puget named the inlet “Alarm Cove” (today’s Van Geldern Cove)

When Puget’s party set out to the East they were followed by the Indians now hoping to trade

natives offered everything they had in peaceful barter

but seeing the boats heading out of the channel they returned to their village

Puget’s expedition rowed southeast along (Carr Inlet) into (Pitt Passage)

between the (Kitsap Peninsula) and Puget’s “Pidgeon (sic) Island” (McNeil Island)

Heavy rain squalls driven by a strong southerly wind swept down on the men that afternoon

Puget beached the boats, sought shelter and pitched their tents earlier than usual

on the west point of (Pitt Passage at Driftwood Annie’s Point)

across from where they had slept the previous night at (Green Point)

their narrow escape from the natives had left an indelible impression on all of the men

never again during their time on the lower coast did they allow themselves to be taken surprise

*CHATHAM INVESTIGATES AROUND BLAKELEY ISLAND*

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton’s party escaped the early morning rain experienced by Puget

*Chatham* was under way -- 8:00 a.m. May 20, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday May 21)

with the boats ahead towing her through narrow (Peavine Pass)

which they thought would carry them into Rosario Strait -- the main channel of the gulf

boats continued to tow the vessel through the narrowest part

and with the help of a strong ebb tide they cleared the channel

and sailed against a light northeast breeze under cloudy skies

they entered Rosario Strait and saw islands and channels in all directions

Lieutenant Johnstone landed on (Blakeley Island) to take the noon reading of latitude and longitude

he examined the northern end of Rosario Strait

to the north and Northeast he could look into the wide expanse of the Strait of Georgia

to (Sinclair Island), “Cypress Island” and Lummi Island[[65]](#footnote-65) and their connecting channels

While sailing through Rosario Strait the wind suddenly stopped as they cleared the passage

tide carried the *Chatham* north and set her close to the (Blakeley Island) shore

boats did their best to pull her off but the tow rope broke

before they could lay out another line the ship swung inshore and gently touched on the rocks

another mooring cable was taken out on the launch but the current floated the ship off

*Chatham* swung back to the south before the boats could tow her into deeper water

while the ship drifted, the crew tried sounding to determine the depth

however the lead became entangled and it was lost along with the line

with no wind and the tide continuing to move them quickly toward the land

*Chatham* anchored off (Blakeley Island) -- 1:00 p.m.

Johnstone took the cutter to examine the Rosario Strait to the east

while the rest of the crew tried the seine net without success until sunset

Johnstone and the cutter returned back to the *Chatham* after dark

he reported having found that the easternmost opening (Bellingham Channel)

led back into Rosario Strait with a number of islands off to the east

and a very broad opening (Strait of Georgia) to the northwest

SPANIARDS VISIT THE VILLAGE OF NOOTKA CHIEF QUICOMACSIA

*Sutil* under Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano, commander of the expedition

and *Mexicana* under Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes reach (Vancouver Island)

While visiting Chief Quicomacsia in his village of Maluinas (today’s Malvinas on Vancouver Island) Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano noted the chief had changed his name -- May 20, 1792

after the marriage of his daughter to the chief of another tribe

Quicomacsia claimed this marriage gave him status above that of Maquinna

he said he was highest ranking chief of the Nootka people

however, Galiano believed Maquinna was considered the sovereign in the area by most Indians

PETER PUGET LEADS A THIRD DAY OF EXPLORING

Puget’s party was unmolested by the natives during the night

camp at (Pitt Passage) was broken -- daybreak May 21, 1892 (Vancouver’s Tuesday May 22)

Puget’s boats made slow progress against the ebb tide down (Pitt Passage) where they made the turn

into (Balch Passage) between (Pidgeon [sic] Island today’s McNeil Island) and (Anderson Island)

this water passage branched to the east and extended as far as they could see

Puget’s men stopped at noon on the northern tip of Puget’s “Long Island” (Ketron Island)

they put ashore so Master Joseph Whidbey could break out the sextant

to take an accurate noon sun shot necessary to precisely determine their latitude

They had not proceeded far to the southeast from Long Island when in the space of fifteen minutes

the sky blackened and a squall came on with thunder, lightning and heavy rain,

which forced them to bear across the channel to take refuge in a cove

near the entrance to (Oro Bay) on (Anderson Island) -- about 3:00 p.m.

they hoped that after dinner they could proceed, but the continuing foulness of the weather

forced them to set up camp and look for an early start (in the morning)

In the evening three canoes arrived from the south bringing vegetables and some bearskins for sale

these natives indicated that across the inlet was a large river where many salmon could be caught

*CHATHAM* EXPLORES ROSARIO STRAIT

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton, now in Rosario Strait, experienced variable weather

early in the morning May 21, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday May 22)

by 8:00 a.m. it was calm as they weighed anchor and were towed to the east

*Chatham* made her way out of Rosario Strait

They experienced a fresh northwest breeze accompanied by a strong flood tide against them

little progress could be made that afternoon

they finally came to anchor in “Strawberry Bay” on Cypress Island

from here the passage to the south appeared entirely open as far as the Strait of Juan de Fuca

*Chatham* lost an anchor in the bay

Lieutenant James Johnstone attempted to examine an inlet with several islands which lay to the south

but the rapid flood tide prevented him -- this was probably (Thatcher Pass) leading to Lopez Island

Johnstone surmised (probably incorrectly) this inlet was the same as had been previously examined

by Second Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham’s* launch

When the tide changed the weather became stormy -- around 7:00 p.m.

heavy rain accompanied by a great deal of thunder arrived from the southeast

*DISCOVERY* REMAINS ANCHORED AT VILLAGE POINT

Work on the ship progressed under rainy weather that did not interfere with the necessary tasks

carpenters continued to make new yardarms and the sail makers repaired the jib

and fore topmast sails -- May 21, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday May 22)

Natives visited the ship in growing numbers but only a few of the braver men came onboard

women, children and most of the men were content with paddling around the vessel

these Indians had only bows and arrows to trade

Vancouver would have welcomed venison or fish which seemed to be in short supply

in the region or else as he noted in his journal: **“**...**the natives had early discovered that we were more curious than hungry, …”**

As even more Indians visited the ship Vancouver detected a change in their canoes

those natives living at Village Point and their friends from the other side of the inlet

had canoes fashioned in the style of the Indians at Nootka Sound

while the canoes of the more distant visitors were cut off square at each end

like those he had seen to the south at Cape Orford off the coast (of Oregon)

although these were longer and considerably larger

NOW-LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MANUEL QUIMPER SAILS FOR SAN BLAS

(After he had delivered the *Princess Real* (British Associated Merchants’ *Princess Royal*)

to the British [June 1791] Lieutenant Quimper had remained at Manila Bay in the Philippines)

Lieutenant Quimper was given command of the frigate *San Jose de las Animas*

he sailed out of Manila Bay bound for San Blas accompanied by the schooner *Valdes*

under the command of Lieutenant Cosme Bertadano

these two ships became separated by a hurricane and *Valdes* returned to the Philippines

Quimper continued on to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) but his ship was so badly damaged

he did not arrive until six months after setting out

BROUGHTON BEGAN THE RETURN TRIP TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Rainy weather that had dampened both Vancouver and Puget also continued in the San Juan Islands

and kept Broughton at his anchorage until 6:00 a.m. May 22, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 23)

When with a breeze arrived *Chatham* worked her way out of Strawberry Bay

to windward down Rosario Strait

as they moved Southward they noticed several islands to the north

with another channel opening in that direction (Spanish Commandant Francisco de Eliza’s

Canal de Guemes later named by Vancouver “Bellingham Channel” which separates

Cypress Island and Guemes Island)

they passed to the northeast of (Sandy Island) on their way into an extensive opening

as a flood tide carried them rapidly into the opening through a great deal of rough water

that gave the appearance of shallow water

they viewed into (Deception Pass) as they crossed to the north shore of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

*Chatham’s* position was south of “Partridge Bank” -- noon

where the nearest land was “Point Partridge” on Whidbey Island

Wind shifted to the northwest -- 4:00 p.m.

with the change in the tide they anchored -- 6:00 p.m. they came to an anchor

at the foot of a remarkable white cliff (Double Bluff)

at the entrance to (Useless Bay) on (Whidbey Island)

PETER PUGET LEADS A FOURTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Lieutenant Puget’s men woke to a dense cold fog which detained the party in (Oro Bay)

thus it was not until after breakfast that they were able to get underway

this was an unusually late start -- 8:00 a.m. May 22, 1792 (Vancouver’s Wednesday May 23)

They rowed south across the sound to follow the shore into the (Nisqually River) delta

where they had been told that fish was plentiful

but when they arrived they found the water too shallow for their boats

and a falling tide increased the risk of becoming stranded

Puget followed the shore to the northwest into the (Nisqually Reach) which widened slightly

Puget noted: **“We were joined by some Canoes with various Articles for traffic such as Bows Arrows & their behavior was the Opposite to what we had experienced from the Indians in Alarm Cove. These came alongside the Boats with the greatest Confidence & behaved themselves with much propriety a Commerce was therefore established for their Different Articles.”**[[66]](#footnote-66)

Puget’s men headed northwest past (Anderson Island) and (Drayton Passage) that opened to the north

they reached (Johnson Point) and saw the opening to (Dana Passage) to the east

once again the weather changed and a gathering rain storm forced them to stop barely in time

where Puget named “Wednesday Island” (Herron Island -- although it was, in fact Tuesday)

unable to proceed they pitched their tents **“…to avoid a threatening Squall from the SE. About two it came on with Thunder, Lightening & a heavy Gust which continued without Intermission all the Afternoon. The Rain fell in perfect torrents.”**[[67]](#footnote-67)

WEATHER IMPROVES FOR THE CREWMEN ON VANCIUVER’S *DISCOVERY*

Anchored at Village Point the morning began with a great deal of rain, thunder and lightening

but as the day progressed the weather became pleasant -- May 22, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 23)

Some of the midshipmen walked the beach and noticed an opening to the west of their anchorage

after returning to the *Discovery* ship’s clerk and surveyor Henry Masterman Orchard

notified Vancouver that the area was actually an entrance to a large natural harbor

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES THE OPENING TO RICH PASSAGE

Vancouver’s anchorage at Village Point escaped the rain encountered by Puget in the south sound

light breezes and clear weather prevailed around (Blake Island)

during the morning -- May 23, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday May 24)

Captain Vancouver, Lieutenant Baker and several midshipmen took the *Discovery’s* pinnace

on the fourth boat expedition to examine the opening reported the previous evening

this opening received the name “Port Orchard Bay”

after ship’s clerk Henry Masterman Orchard who first drew Vancouver’s attention to it

two interlocking points about a quarter mile apart formed a channel free from rocks

past the narrow entrance at (Point White) on (Bainbridge Island) which divided

Port Orchard Bay to the northwest and (Sinclair Inlet) to the south

(today’s Puget Sound Naval Shipyard at Bremerton)

Vancouver’s journey up “Port Orchard Inlet” took them only as far as necessary

to show them the northern end was apparently closed

Vancouver missed the branch to the west that forms (Liberty Bay)

and the northern branch that forms the entrance to (Agate Passage) leading into (Port Madison)

This expedition took all day -- May 23, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 24)

when they returned to their ship, Vancouver noted the Indians were preparing to move their village

he marveled at their process as the mats covering their houses were rolled up

and together with their stock of food and weapons were loaded

along with their families and wool dogs into a single canoe

Vancouver reported that when shorn the fleece of the dogs were much like the sheep

in England with a mixture of coarse wool and long hairs most suitable for weaving

PETER PUGET LEADS A FIFTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Torrential rains had ceased by morning -- May 23, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday May 24)

Puget’s party broke camp on Wednesday (Herron) Island and proceed up the arm

north and northwest to the end of (Case Inlet) where they found a low marshy flat

here they breakfasted at the mouth of a small creek and tried the seine

but managed to catch only one small salmon trout (steelhead)

After breakfast they noticed a narrow opening on the western shore that led off to the south

they rowed in that direction as the heavy rain returned

they eventually continued down the (Case Inlet) which was only one quarter to one half mile wide

until they reached (Rocky Bay) and then (Vaughn Bay)

Continuing south down (Case Inlet) Puget reached the northern tip of (Harstine Island)

and entered (Pickering Passage) a narrow passageway between the mainland and (Harstine Island)

Puget’s men saw (Squaxin Passage between Squaxin and Steamboat islands)

they felt this passage would carry them into the main branch they had been tracing

Camp was made on west shore of (Pickering Passage) across from the northwest tip of (Squaxin Island)

from their stopping place they looked to the southeast down (Peale Passage)

between (Squaxin Island) and (Harstine Island) -- 6:00 p.m.

*CHATHAM* CONTINUES ON ITS WAY TO RENDEZVOUS WITH *DISCOVERY*

William Broughton with the *Chatham* crossed (Useless Bay) and worked his way up Admiralty Inlet

to the rendezvous with Captain George Vancouver

Contrary winds and tide forced him to anchor on the eastern shore

*Chatham* set sail again with the change of tide -- noon

with the aid of fine breeze they entered (Possession Sound) -- another arm extending north

where they anchored on the eastern shore of (Bainbridge Island at Apple Cove Point)

(across from today’s Edmonds) -- 6:30 p.m. May 23, 1792

PETER PUGET LEADS A SIXTH DAY OF EXPLORING

One of Lieutenant Puget’s first acts in the morning -- May 24, 1792 (Vancouver’s Friday May 25)

was to take an inventory of supplies -- he determined they were running low

what remained would last only five more days at best

however, Puget had noticed the variety of foods eaten by Indians

in making his decision regarding to return to the *Discovery* he noted

he had **“a good Quantity of Clams, which with Nettle tops, Fat hen & Gooseberry tops”**[[68]](#footnote-68)

these would provide enough food to continue

also, the men were not adverse to dining on crows if the need arose

it was resolved to stretch their stores and in spite of unsettled weather with frequent heavy rain,

to do their utmost to conclude the survey so that another boat expedition to this area

would not be necessary

Setting out from (Harstine Island) toward the south

Puget’s boat expedition followed the shoreline of (Squaxin Island) south

they entered (Totten Inlet) and investigated as far as “Oyster Bay” at the end of the inlet

which they found covered with small oysters

Puget backtracked out of (Totten Inlet) and entered (Squaxin Passage)

between (Squaxin Island) and the (Kitsap Peninsula)

where camp was made “in a very pleasant situation”

their mission had been extended three days longer than anticipated

*CHATHAM* AND *DISCOVERY* REDEZVOUS

*Chatham* left her anchorage at (Apple Cove Point on Bainbridge Island)

with the first light -- May 24, 1792 (Vancouver’s Friday May 25)

she continued south with light breezes from the south and anchored off a sandy point -- 8:00 a.m.

during the morning calm weather detained them

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton crossed (Elliott Bay -- the entrance to the port of Seattle today)

to where he saw the *Discovery* on the western shore at Village Point (today’s West Seattle)

he soon arrived and prepared to give his report to Captain Vancouver

VANCOUVER ISSUES INSTRUCTIONS FOR LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON

Vancouver instructed Lieutenant-Commander Broughton that as soon as Lieutenant Puget returned

Broughton was to take Master Joseph Whidbey in one of the boats

to examine the opening seen to the north-northwest of the anchorage

they were to locate a suitable new anchorage for the *Chatham*

and move the ship to that spot where *Discovery* might find her

*Discovery* shifted her berth to facilitate bringing on board water and wood -- 9:00 a.m. May 25

while the various parties continued work on shore, brewing, getting water and gathering wood

and the carpenters were employed fitting a new topgallant mast and yardarm

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES TO THE SOUTH OF VILLAGE POINT

Vancouver accompanied by Lieutenant Joseph Baker set out in the pinnace early in the morning

to explore the main channel to the east of Puget’s route -- May 25, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 26)

Lieutenant James Johnstone joined the expedition with the *Chatham’s* cutter

Vancouver’s route took them through (East Passage at today’s White Center)

about twelve miles from where they started the inlet took a turn to the southwest

after traveling another six miles Captain Vancouver and his men stopped for breakfast

in the vicinity of (today’s Browns Point) -- May 25, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 26)

several natives, who behaved in a very civil manner, joined them

trading their bows and arrows and spears for hawk’s bells, buttons and beads

Leaving their breakfast spot the party rounded (Brown’s Point)

and entered (Commencement Bay -- now the site of Tacoma)

Vancouver wrote in his ship’s log: **“Having passed round the point, we found the inlet to terminate here in an extensive, circular, compact bay whose waters washed the base of Mount Rainier . . . The forest trees, and the several shades of verdure** (green) **that covered the hills gradually decreased in point of beauty until they became invisible . . . the whole producing a most grand, picturesque effect.” --** May 26, 1792(one day off)

entering (Dalco Passage) to the west Vancouver could see the channel divided

one branch running to the north (Clovos Passage) returned the ship

other passage to the south previously had been investigated by Puget’s boat expedition

this meant the land they had followed on their port (left) side this morning was an island

Vancouver named “Vashon Island” in honor of his friend

British Captain, later Admiral, James Vashon

crossing (Commencement Bay) the tide rapidly carried them through a narrow channel

(The Narrows) where they notices three inlets to their west

(Hale Passage, Carr Inlet, and Balch Passage)

traveling another nine mines camp was made on northeastern tip of Long Island[[69]](#footnote-69) that evening

that night they saw two vessels under sail which at first were taken to be native canoes

but even with a telescope positive identification was not possible

they fired a couple of muskets to draw the attention of the ships but there was no response

this was Peter Puget’s expedition returning to the *Discovery*

PETER PUGET LEADS A SEVENTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Setting out from the shore of (Squaxin Passage) -- May 25, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 26)

Puget’s expedition once again enjoyed pleasant weather

They rowed into a small inlet that trended southward from their camping place

near the end of the inlet they discovered a summer Indian village of about sixty Squaxin people

living in an open shed on the west shore

women were drying clams and fish and weaving baskets

men were fishing and hollowing out dugout canoes

Puget’s expedition was treated in a most friendly manner by the natives

who traded a number of skins of various animals

from their reception Puget call the place “Friendly Inlet” (today’s Eld Inlet)

British sailors found these natives to be very interesting

except for their habit of smearing themselves with dogfish oil

Puget wrote: **“Though it was perfect Curiosity which had induced us to land, yet that was the sooner satisfied by the horrid Stench which came from all parts of these Habitations.”**[[70]](#footnote-70)

Peter Puget and his expedition set out again accompanied by several Squaxin natives from the village

who paddled their canoes as Puget’s men rowed around (Cooper Point) and into (Budd Inlet)

where they landed on the west shore and had breakfast -- May 25, 1792

Setting out once again up (Budd Inlet) the Indians following in their canoes signaled it led nowhere

after a quarter of an hour’s further row they reached its termination in a wide muddy flat

(Budd Inlet today ends at the site of Olympia)

That afternoon Lieutenant Peter Puget reported: **“I therefore determined to return immediately to the Ships that no time be lost in the Examination of that Branch.”**[[71]](#footnote-71)

they came out into (Dana Passage) and followed it into (Henderson Inlet) during the late morning

and stopped to dine on (Johnson Point) -- noon May 25

Puget’s men returned to (Case Inlet’s) southern end where they had been two days before -- 1:00 p.m.

once again they passed the extensive flats on the southern shore of the (Nisqually Reach)

and made the great turn around (Anderson Island)

returning down the main arm toward the *Discovery*

they made rapid progress along the inlet aided by a strong southerly wind and an ebb tide

They passed Long Island where they had previously dined [on May 21, Vancouver’s May 22]

one of the men looking to the south saw signs of a fire inside the northern tip of Long Island

which they took to be the evening camp of natives

(Puget did not realized that this was Vancouver’s party, which was in the area

after tracing the extent of the channel that ran off to the eastward of the first channel

that Puget and Whidbey had entered)

SECOND BOAT EXPEDITION RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Lieutenant Peter Puget decided to run for the ship sailing as quickly as possible

this second boat expedition, making a steady five knots,

arrived where they had left the *Discovery* at anchor

shortly after 1:00 a.m. May 26, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday May 27)

*Discovery* was nowhere to be seen

Puget fired the swivel gun to obtain a response from *Discovery* showing its position

in a few moments a comforting report in response was heard

it was determined that the ship had moved her position inshore and closer to the end of the point

an hour later Puget’s men arrived back on board the *Discovery* tired and hungry

but with a feeling of great satisfaction on the completion of their survey -- 2:00 a.m.

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION OF SOUTH PUGET SOUND

Vancouver’s party embarked from Long Island[[72]](#footnote-72) -- 4:00 a.m. May 26, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 27)

they traveled in the pinnace to the southwest into the (Nisqually Flats)

where they stopped for lunch at (Johnson Point)

Leaving (Johnson Point) they noticed the entrance to (Case Inlet) to the north

and (Dana Passage) to the southwest which they entered

Vancouver and his men traveled (Dana Passage) they came to the entrance

of (Eld Inlet) and (Budd Inlet)

to the north they saw the entrances to (Peale Passage) beside (Harstine Island)

and (Squaxin Passage)

Vancouver made camp that night the head of (Eld Inlet)

.

VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES THE SOUTH SOUND

Leaving camp Vancouver found the end of (Eld Inlet) to be low swampy ground

where a few Indian huts were located -- May 27, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday May 28)

Vancouver stopped for breakfast before 9:00 a.m. where they had camped the night before

at head of (Eld Inlet)

Vancouver entered (Budd Inlet) which also ended in a muddy flat -- here they stopped for lunch

Vancouver’s party made camp that night in a cove at (Johnson Point) about 9:00 p.m.

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON SEARCHES FOR A NEW ANCHORAGE

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton left Village Point -- May 27, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday May 28)

accompanied by Master Joseph Whidbey in the *Chatham’s* launch

with Second Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham’s* cutter

they were to carry out Vancouver’s instructions that when Puget’s party returned

they would examine (Puget Sound) to the north to where it divided at (Whidbey Island)

and move the *Chatham* to a suitable anchorage to the north

Broughton, Whidbey and Hanson examined the continental shoreline

passing (West Point located in today’s Discovery Park in Seattle)

and continued on to (Point Edwards -- today’s Edmonds)

they entered (Possession Sound) and reached (Gedney Island)

(at the west entrance to [Port Gardner Bay] off today’s Everett)

*DISCOVERY* REMAINS ANCHORED AT VILLAGE POINT

*Discovery* remained at anchor as various expeditions investigated the region

Dr. Menzies took the opportunity to go ashore -- May 27, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday May 28)

to study the plant life and habits of the natives

he observed the women of the tribe industrially digging for bulbs

Menzies identified these as “False Onion”

Menzies collected barnacles for food

and pointedly remarked on the general idleness of the native men

weather continues generally unsettled with intermittent periods of rain

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Vancouver’s party set out from (Johnson Point) at daybreak -- May 28, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 29)

they stopped for breakfast at (North Point) -- noon

Setting out once again an ebb tide aided their progress as they hurried northward

dinner was taken on (Gibson Point) at the entrance to (Carr Inlet)

Vancouver and his men continued northward through (Colvos Passage) toward the ship

Vancouver arrived safely at the *Discovery --* 9:00 p.m. May 28

this boat expedition was, in fact, a waste of four days of surveying

as most of that region previously had been explored by Peter Puget and his boat expedition

Vancouver gave the name “Restoration Point” to his informally named Village Point

there the *Discovery* was anchored in honor of the restoration of England’s King Charles II

when the English, Scottish and Irish monarchies were all restored [May 28, 1660]

this event was celebrated with a salute of seventeen guns (of course one day early)

In recognition of First Lieutenant Peter Puget’s efforts,

Vancouver attached his name to the area he had explored

Vancouver wrote in his log books: **“Thus by our joint efforts we had completely explored every turning of this extensive inlet; and to commemorate Mr. Puget’s exertions, the south extremity I named Pugets** (sic) **Sound.”[[73]](#footnote-73)**

WILLIAM BROUGHTON CONTINUES THE SEARCH FOR A NEW ANCHORAGE

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton sent Master Joseph Whidbey in the *Chatham’s* launch

and Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham’s* cutter to explore

along the eastern shore of (Port Gardner) -- May 28, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday May 29)

they had instructions to follow Puget Sound north along the eastern shore

to a point where it should divide into two or more channels

Whidbey and Hansontook the right-hand passage between Camano Island and the mainland

(Vancouver later named this body of water “Port Susan”

in honor of the wife of his friend Admiral Sir Alan Gardner)

Whidbey and Hanson discovered Port Susan was closed at the far end by a wide sandy flat

they were not able to proceed any farther because of the shallows

but they could see where (South Pass) and (West Pass) entered (Skagit Bay)

Whidbey and Hanson established camp on the east side of (Gedney Island) that evening

SALVADOR FIDALGO ARRIVES AT BAHIA DE NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo under orders from Viceroy of New Spain Juan Vicente de Guemes

guided the covertte *Princesa* intoBahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- May 28, 1792

to establish a second colony -- this settlement would be south of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

and would be the first European colony in (today’s Washington State)

Accompanying Major Lieutenant Fidalgo were Spaniards Antonio Serantes, second in command,

Hipolito Tono, Chaplain Jose Alejandro Lopez de Nava and Surgeon Juan de Dios Morelos

thirteen soldiers of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia to protect the colony

and seventy Peruvian and Mexican crewmembers

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SAILS THE *DISCOVERY* NORTH TO CONTINE HIS INVESTIGTION

Captain George Vancouver decided it was time to go north

to rendezvous with *Chatham* -- May 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s Wednesday May 30)

With a pleasant southerly breeze *Discovery* departed under topsails, topgallant sails and foresail

for the opening followed by Broughton -- 8:30 a.m. May 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 30)

the slight breeze changed to the southeast with a change in the tide at noon

return of the ebb tide in the afternoon slowed Vancouver’s progress

and a strong rip tide developed which rendered the ship almost unmanageable

with the boats ahead towing the *Discovery*, they had made about three miles in the evening,

there was no sight of the *Chatham*

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton had anchored closer (to what is now Everett)

Discovery reached “Point Elliot”(near today’s Mukilteo)

for a time neither of the two vessels knew the other’s location

Captain Vancouver ordered a swivel gun to be fired

Chatham immediately responded by firing her swivel gun to denote her position

which was determined to be behind a point on Vancouver’s starboard shore

in the gathering dusk Vancouver saw the *Chatham* bearing a light at her mast head

to which the *Discovery* directed, and after much hard work with the boats towing

anchored with the small brower (bow anchor) -- 11:00 p.m. May 29, 1792

*Discovery* and *Chatham* were anchored at Point Elliott (today’s Mukilteo)

on which natives had left a number of wool dogs whose nocturnal howling disturbed their rest

JOSEPH WHIDBEY AND JAMES HANSON CONTINUE THEIR INVESTIGATION

After breaking the Gedney Island camp -- May 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s Wednesday May 30)

Master Joseph Whidbey the *Chatham’s* launch

accompanied by Second Lieutenant James Hanson in the *Chatham’s* cutter

passed the *Chatham* sailing off the east end of Gedney Island

Whidbey and Hanson continued to explore although that was contrary to their orders

Whidbey believed his boats had been seen by the *Chatham*

Whidbey and Hanson entered (Saratoga Passage) between (Whidbey Island) and Camano Island

about four miles up the passage Whidbey noted a village on the (Whidbey Island) side

with numerous native inhabitants

Vancouver had ordered Whidbey to avoid landing near large numbers of people

Whidbey crossed to the (Camano Island) side

but nevertheless was met by several hundred people who greeted them in a friendly manner

some families were in canoes and others were walking on the shore

Whidbey reported they had with them **“about forty dogs in a drove, shorn close to the skin like sheep”**[[74]](#footnote-74)

Whidbey stopped opposite a low projecting point to take sighting to identify his latitude -- noon

he noted a substantial native village was located on (East Point) and landed

these natives were surprised by the color of Whidbey’s skin

and seemed never to have seen Europeans but did have European goods acquired in trade

they were very friendly and presented the exploring party with water, roasted roots, dried fish

and other food

when one of the British boats ran aground the chief organized his people to help push it off

Whidbey moved further up the arm about nine miles from its entrance

to an anchorage near the northern end of Camano Island

MAJOR LIEUTENANT FIDALGO REACHES BAHIA DE NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo sailed the frigate *Princesa* north from San Blas, New Spain

and entered Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) with eighty-six men -- May 29, 1792

(Ensign Alferez Manuel Quimper claimed the bay and named it Bahia Nunez Gaona [1790])

this port had excellent defensive conditions since it was a rocky plateau by the sea

next to a very clear stream whose bank was covered by a natural fence of dense trees

there was no need to build a stone wall as was necessary in California

Fidalgo’s men cleared a level shelf of land on the south side of Strait of Juan de Fuca

hemlock, spruce, cedar and fir trees were removed to form an open space

this was enlarged in circular form until it reached in all directions **“the length of a gunshot”**[[75]](#footnote-75)

carpenters sawed the logs into proper lengths and split them

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER KEEPS THE *DISCOVERY* AT ANCHOR AT POINT ELLIOTT

From the Point Elliott anchorage Vancouver could easily view nearby (Gedney Island)

Vancouver and botanist Archibald Menzies from the Discovery and Chatham’s William Broughton

went ashore to explore (the area of today’s Mukilteo) -- May 30, 1792 (Vancouver’s May 31)

Dr. Menzies’ morning stroll took him along the beach

he listed aquatic plants found in the marsh near the beach

(close to the present Mukilteo light house)

Broughton called the place “Rose Point”for the many roses found on the site

That afternoon the Discovery and *Chatham* headed northwest but finding little wind

they anchored between Camano Head[[76]](#footnote-76) and (Gedney Island off today’s Tulalip)

Vancouver named “Port Gardner” (today’s Saratoga Passage)

in honor of British Admiral Sir Alan Gardner

JOSEPH WHIDBEY AND JAMES HANSON COMPLETE THEY SURVEY

Master Joseph Whidbey and Second Lieutenant James Hanson left their camp

on the north end of Camano Island -- May 30, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday May 31)

At the top of Port Gardner (Saratoga Passage) Whidbey turned east

to explore what is now (Skagit Bay)

he found navigation difficult and missed the narrow passage of (Deception Pass)

which separates (Whidbey Island) from (Fidalgo Island)[[77]](#footnote-77)

they reached the rocky shallows at the end (at today’s Hope Island in Skagit Bay)

here they made camp for the night

LIEUTENANTS WHIDBEY AND HANSON COMPLETE THEIR INVESTIGATION

Master Joseph Whidbey led his expedition from his camp on (Hope Island)

back to (Whidbey Island) -- May 31, 1792 (Vancouver’s Friday June 1)

Whidbey explored a large cove opening west into the island

(which Vancouver named “Penn’s Cove” -- today’s Penn Cove on Whidbey Island)

Whidbey found deserted villages on both points at the entrance to the cove but despite this

he found this region to be the most populous area of Puget Sound they had seen

he estimated some 600 inhabitants

Whidbey and Hanson completed their survey and returned to Port Susan -- May 31

(Vancouver later wrote in his journal: **“This determined** [the shore they had been exploring] **to be an island, which, in consequence of Mr. Whidbey’s circumnavigation, I distinguished by the name of Whidbey’s Island: and this northern pass, leading into port Gardner, Deception Passage.”)**

SPAIN ESTABLISHES A COLONY (IN TODAY’S WASHINGTON)

Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) was not well suited for mooring large ships

but it was an excellent defensive position for protecting Spain’s political, commercial

and scientific interests in the region

it was located by the sea on a rocky plateau next to a very clear stream

with a bank covered by trees growing so tightly

that there was no need of a stone wall as was necessary in California

“Fort Nunez Gaona” (Fort Neah Bay) was functioning -- June 1792

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo put a large flag pole in place

a battery with six mounted cannons was put into place and a 24-hour guard posted

each dawn, sunset and important days were saluted with a cannon shot

to impress the Indians and any British that might be in the area

When it was completed Nunez Gaona consisted of about ten buildings

including an infirmary, storehouses, dwellings, a church and bakery

*Princesa’s* cargo hold had a quantity of crudely-made bricks

some bricks were used for the blacksmith’s shop, others to shelter the bakery

and a rough barracks that was constructed in the center of a circle

still other bricks were used for building a beehive oven coated with clay

long marsh grasses were gathered and laid out in bundles to dry

these were used for thatching steeply-sloping roofs

there were also corrals for several hogs, sheep, goats and eight head of runty black Spanish cattle

that had been brought aboard the *Princesa*

a high fence of woven branches served as a chicken yard

Salvador Fidalgo traded as much as possible with the local Makah Indians to preserve

his meager stores of sacks of dried beans, cheese, and rice along with jerked and pickled meats

Chief Tatoosh, the most important leader of the Makah villagers,

held the same status as the Nootka’s Maquinna and Clayoquot Sound’s Wickaninnish

Chief Tatoosh served as the natives’ ambassador

As the Spanish settlers conducted trade activities they also shared their own culture

steel implements, ceramics and other technology were introduced into the Pacific Northwest

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER CLAIMS “NEW GEORGIA”FOR BRITAIN

Captain Vancouver’s expedition sailed north from Camano Head -- June 1, 1792

to investigate the area around Port Susan discovered by Master Whidbey and Lieutenant Hanson

Vancouver provided his men with some recreation time: “**After the great fatigue our people had lately undergone,** [two days] **were well appropriated as holidays. Sunday, the 3rd all hands were employed in fishing, with tolerably good success, or in taking a little recreation on shore….”**[[78]](#footnote-78)

(once again one day after the actual date of June 2)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* moved from Port Susan to Possession Sound (Everett) -- June 3, 1792

where Vancouver formally took possession of the entire region naming it “New Georgia”

with double allowance of grog in honor of the birthday of King George III

Vancouver noted in his ship’s log wrongly dated: “**…On Monday, the 4th, they were served as good a dinner as we were able to provide them, with double allowance of grog to drink the King’s health, it being the anniversary of His Majesty’s birth, on which auspicious day I had long since designed to take formal possession of all the countries we had lately employed in exploring, in the name of and for His Britannic Majesty, his heirs and successors.”**[[79]](#footnote-79)

GALIANO AND VALDES INVESTIGATE (WASHINGTON STATE’S) INLAND WATERS

Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes sailed the *Sutil* and *Mexicana*

out of Santa Cruz de Nuca in Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- early morning June 5, 1792

to complete the survey of the inland waters begun by Captain Alejandro Malaspina

ten Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia soldier serving at Fort San Miguel

supplemented the crews of both ships’ crew of thirty-nine

(this four month effort will be the last Spanish exploring expedition on the coast)

Gailano and Valdes carried surveying instruments such as sextants and marine clocks

they were accompanied by artist Josef Cordero

whose pictures preserved an accurate rendition of native costumes

Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano remained at Friendly Cove to complete final preparations

for his investigation of Russian-America waters with the *Aranzazu*

SPANISH EXPLORERS VISIT NUNEZ GAONA (FORT NEAH BAY)

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca

they reached the Spanish colony of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

aboard the *Sutil* and *Mexicana* -- June 6, 1792

they anchored near Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo’s ship, the corvette *Princesa*

Galiano and Valdes were welcomed by Makah Chief Tatoosh

Tatoosh, continuing the friendly impression he had made on Galiano and Valdes,

visited the Spanish ships and was invited on board the Spanish ship *Sutil*

he examined it with a curiosity that impressed Galiano

Tatoosh said he was planning to travel to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes urged him to accompany the Spanish and he accepted the offer

Tatoosh was the first Makah native to board a Spanish ship

when he sailed across the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Galiano reported that the Makah natives were friendly much like the Nootka Indians

but he also noted they had acquired a large number of firearms

and desired in trade for gunpowder above all else

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo did not trust these Indians

PUGET AND WHIDBEY LEAD A BOAT EXPEDITION OUT OF POSSESSION SOUND

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey were dispatched on another boat expedition

taking *Discovery’s* launch and cutter -- -- June 6, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday June 7)

they set out from Possession Sound to examine an opening along the eastern shore

their route up the strait exposed them to a heavy westerly swell at broke powerfully on the shore and gave an entirely different appearance to the country

from that which they had enjoyed on their excursions south

instead of lush foliage and forests, the land appeared rocky and inhospitable

it was sparsely covered with small trees that provided no shelter

They arrived at (Deception Pass)in the evening

at first glance the opening appeared to be so narrow as to be impassable

however, the ebb tide rushing through soon changed their minds

as the force was so strong that the boats could make no progress in their attempt to enter

launch and cutter were forced to made a landing at the entrance to (Deception Pass)

they were forced to spend the night on the outer side looking across to Lopez Island

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* INVESTIGATE THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Captain Vancouver set out from his Possession Sound anchorage -- June 7, 1792

(Vancouver’s June 8)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* rounded (Point Colville) on Whidbey Island and passed “Deception Pass”

Vancouver wrote in his journal that the first inlet turned out to be a **“very narrow and intricate channel, which ... abounded with rocks above and beneath the surface of the water”**[[80]](#footnote-80)

sailing northwesterly they turned north at (Point Colville) on Lopez Island

before coming to anchor in Strawberry Bay off Cypress Island

LIEUTENANT PUGET AND MASTER WHIDBEY CONTINUE THEIR BOAT EXPEDITION

Their boat expedition broke camp on (Deception Pass) -- June 7, 1792 (Vancouver’s Friday June 8)

where they watched the *Discovery* and *Chatham* moving northward up the strait

Peter Puget and Joseph Whidbey waited for slack water to enter the narrow opening

once through they quickly determined that it connected with the area

previously surveyed by Master Joseph Whidbey and Second Lieutenant James Hanson

they entered (Skagit Bay) and Puget determined their latitude at (today’s Hope Island) -- noon

completing the survey of (Skagit Bay) they attempted to depart through Deception Pass

but the flood tide pouring through (Deception Pass) delayed their getting into the main channel

until later that evening

Puget and Whidbey moved about four miles up the continental shore, past two small islands to the west

where they stopped for the night on the mainland opposite (Burrow’s Island) below Fidalgo Head

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY EXPERIENCES AN INDIAN ATTACK

Sailing the *Columbia Rediviva* from the Columbia River Captain Gray reached (Vancouver Island)

John Boit accompanied by the ship’s carpenter went ashore looking for wood for a topmast

they were separated from the main party on shore

when about two hundred Indians rushed out of the woods -- June 7, 1792

nearly surrounded, Boit and his companion were forced to flee for their lives

reuniting with the main party the sailors retreated firing their muskets over the Indians’ heads

still the natives advanced getting close enough to throw their spears

several Indians were killed by musket fire as the sailors made their way

out of the woods to the beach

men on board the *Columbia* heard the reports from the muskets

it did not occur to them that an attack was occurring as it had not happened here before

Boit and his shore party reached the beach and hailed the ship

cannons were loaded with cannon balls and grapeshot (small pellets fired from a cannon)

under cannon fire the attackers fell back and soon disappeared

as the shore party retreated to the ship

LIEUTENANT PUGET AND WHIDBEY CONTINUE THEIR INVESTIGATION

Returning from their camp across from (Burrow’s Island), members of this boat expedition

stopped to visit the *Chatham* in Strawberry Bay -- June 8, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday June 9)

to see if there were any further instructions and to replenish their supplies

Puget and Whidbey headed back across the strait to continue their survey

following the mainland they passed through a channel to the east against a strong tide

and landed on an island to obtain a view of the water ahead

they entered a large sound leading to the southeast and traced it to its termination

in a broad flat that gave every indication of communicating with the area previously examined

when they had entered the upper part of (Skagit Bay) through Deception Pass [June 7]

Puget and Whidbey continued the survey north along the eastern shore of the sound

they passed through Guemes Channel (off today’s Anacortes) and stopped at (Hat Island)

here they could observe Padilla Bay, (Huckleberry Island) and (Saddlebag Island) to the north

they spent the afternoon tracing the shore of the Padilla Bay

They camped for the night on the long sandy spit of (William Point) on (Samish Island)

from where they had a clear view to the northwest and north

while the men were preparing camp, the Peter Puget and Joseph Whidbey left the cutter

to examine Vendovi Island[[81]](#footnote-81) to the northwest to take their bearing and observe the general area

from this station they had an unobstructed view southeast into (Samish Bay),

and of the channel leading to the northwest into the Strait of Georgia

(Jose Maria Narvaez’s Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario)

and north into Seno Gaston(Bellingham Bay)

When Puget and Whidbey returned to camp one of their men had an encounter with a skunk

in the dark he stepped on the animal which responded in its hostile manner with such power

that the smell woke everyone in the camp

later they attempted to boil the man’s clothes to remove the stench, but it was to no avail

so the men had to bear with this revolting situation until he could return to the ship

(where he was given used clothes under the condition that he burn his old uniform)

GALIANO AND VALDES MAKE PREPARATIONS TO LEAVE BAHIA DE NUNEZ GAONA

Lieutenants Galiano and Valdes said farewell to Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo -- June 8, 1792

they left Fidalgo awaiting fresh orders from Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

Quadra was in Nootka Sound awaiting the British negotiator who had been expected for weeks

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* sailed toward Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- June 8

they crossed the Strait of Juan de Fuca a cruised along the coast of (today’s Vancouver Island)

LIEUTENANT PUGET AND MASTER WHIDBEY COMPLETE THEIR INVESTIGATION

At dawn Puget’s party left their (Samish Island) camp -- June 9, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday. June10)

they made a brief examination of (Samish Bay) to the southeast

they stopped for breakfast on Vendovi Island and took their bearings

Their instructions had been not to pass to the north of the ship’s anchorage

their present situation marked the northern extremity of their survey

After breakfast they made for the west side of Cypress Island passing Bellingham Channel to the south

which separates Guemes and Cypress islands

Peter Puget and Joseph Whidbey sailed the launch and cutter around the north tip of Cypress Island

down Rosario Strait to the anchorage of the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

in Strawberry Bay off Cypress Island where they arrived -- 2:00 p.m.

they had explored and mapped the San Juan Islands

and identified the principal islands for the first time

(whereas the year before Jose Maria Narvaez had shown them as one large island)

GALIANO AND VALDES REACH PUERTO DE CORDOBA (ESQUIMALT HARBOR)

After sailing through the night *Sutil* and *Mexicana* reached Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor)

Makah Chief Tatoosh suggested a place for them to stop and take on water

as there were few sources in the area -- June 9, 1792

Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes were impressed by Tatoosh

he knew the names of all the Spanish and British captains who had been to the region

he said that two ships had already entered the Strait of Juan de Fuca

(this was British Captain George Vancouver’s expedition)

Tatoosh was shown a map of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

he recognized many places and told the Spanish what the native names were

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* anchored in Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor) about noon -- June 9, 1792

soon two of Chief Tatoosh’s wives arrived by canoe after following them from (Neah Bay)

they had not wanted to sail on the Spanish ships

Spanish artist Jose Cardero who accompanied Galiano and Valdes

drew portraits of Tatoosh and the two wife who had followed from (Neah Bay)

Spanish officers went to the villages on shore -- evening June 9

Galiano thought Tatoosh was the chief of these villages also

but that was unlikely since they were Songhees -- a different people than the Makah

however, Tatoosh may have been a relative

CAPTAIN GRAY CONTINUES TO TRADE WITH THE INDIANS

Trade was peacefully conducted as any canoes arrived with plenty of otter skins to sell

until twenty large war canoes carrying more than thirty men each were seen -- noon June 9, 1792

by using a telescope it was determined they were armed with bows and arrows and spears

Friendly natives involved in trading informed the Bostons these were the Indians fired on before Captain Gray ordered the attackers to stay away from the *Columbia Rediviva*

all complied except one canoe with forty-two men aboard

soon more canoes began to approach as the natives sang a war song

muskets and cannons were fired over their heads driving them back to about 100 yards distance

one small canoe paddled by two men with a chief aboard stayed between the ship and the canoes

while the chief counted the men on the ship and encouraged the Indians to attack

Gray told the chief not to come near the ship but he persisted and was killed

also the chief warrior of the canoes threw his spear into the ship and was shot

attacking natives retreated from the ship

As the attacking Indians withdrew some Indians who had previously participated in trade

came back alongside the ship and traded their otter skins

LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES INVESTIGATE THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

Galiano intended to sail quickly to Jose Maia Narvaez’s Seno Gaston(Bellingham Bay, [1791])

then north into Naravez’s Gran Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario la Marinera (Strait of Georgia)

Galiano and Valdes carried maps of the Strait of Juan de Fuca that had been drawn

by Commandant Francisco de Eliza [1791]

Galiano, in accordance with his orders, was most interested in the unexplored waters

that extended east into the continent and for that reason

he opted not to explore the south-tending Boca de Caamano (Admiralty Inlet)

which would have led him into Puget Sound

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* left Puerto de Cordova (Esquimalt Harbor) -- early morning June 10, 1792 they made for “Isla de Bonilla” (Smith Island) and turned north sailing for Lopez Island

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* anchored at the southern end of Lopez Island (near today’s Point Colville)

where a group went ashore with chronometers to make astronomical observations

to enable them to improve their longitude measurements

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* tacked toward Fidalgo Island -- June 10

they passed (Burrows) and (Allen) islands and steered for the center of Guemes Channel

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SETS UP HIS BASE OF OPERATION AT BIRCH BAY

*Discovery* and *Chatham* left Strawberry Bay off Cypress Island

and lay at anchor in Birch Bay -- June 10, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday June 11)

this became the base for an eleven-day excursion along the southwest coast

of (today’s British Columbia and the Gulf Islands -- Canada’s San Juan Islands)

named after Vancouver’s Gulf of Georgia (today’s Strait of Georgia or Georgia Strait)

“Birch Bay” was named for the black birch growing in great abundance in the vicinity

it had taken the 145-man expedition over fourteen months to get there from England

“Point Roberts” was identified -- June 10, 1792

Point Roberts acquired its present name from Vancouver, who named it after his friend

Captain Henry Roberts who had sailed with British Captain James Cook

and originally had been given command of Vancouver’s expedition

GALIANO AND VALDES CONTINUE THEIR EXPLORATION OF THE SAN JUAN ISLANDS

(Spain’s Juan Carrasco and Jose Maria Narvaez in their ship *Santa Saturnina* [1791]

had identified what they believed was an inland sea they named Canal de Floridablanca

Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes were assigned

to further investigate the exact nature of the Canal de Floridablanca (today’s Fraser River)

Lieutenants Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Cayetano Valdes sailed northeast -- June 11, 1792

they passed through part of Rosario Strait and through Guemes Channel into Padilla Bay

before sailing around (Samish Island) and entering (Samish Bay)

they noted an Indian village was located on the shore of Guemes Island

that evening they anchored in Seno de Gaston (Bellingham Bay)

LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES COME UPON A BRITISH SHIP

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* were becalmed on a hot day

in Jose Maria Narvaez’s Seno Gaston (Bellingham Bay) -- June 12, 1792

to add to the men’s alarm, they saw a mysterious illumination to the east

at times they heard rumblings like a volcano and saw flashes of light increasing in a frequency

they saw clouds of what appeared to be steam coming from “Mount Carmelo” (Baker)

Spanish lieutenants Dionisio AlcalaGaliano on the *Sutil* and Cayetano Valdes sailing the *Mexicana*

entered Rosario Strait

they proceeded north past the mouth of the (Nooksack River) at (Lummi Bay)

they sighted a launch and cutter at 8 p.m. -- June 12, 1792

from the ship’s square rigging Galiano concluded they were British

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS A BOAT EXPEDITION NORTH

Leaving the vicinity of Birch Bay, Vancouver’s boat expedition began an investigation

of Vancouver’s “Burrard Canal” (Burrard Inlet) -- June 12, 1792 (Vancouver’s June 13)

and (today’s Sunshine Coast)

Vancouver renamed Francisco de Eliza’s Boca de Floridablanca [1791]

after his friend and former ship-mate Captain (later Admiral) Sir Harry Burrard (Burrard Inlet, located beyond today’s Stanley Park, is main harbor for Vancouver, B.C. today)

LIEUTENANT DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ENTER BOUNDARY BAY

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* sailed into Boundary Bay and verified the point of land there was not an island

they named the peninsula “Punta Cepeda” (Point Roberts) -- morning June 13, 1792

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A SECOND DAY

Leaving Burrard Inlet Vancouver Vancouver’s two boats continued north -- June 13, 1792

they investigatedHowe Sound(Spain’sBoca del Carmelo)

and passed through the islands at the entrance to the sound reaching “Jervis Inlet”

Vancouver honored his friend Rear-Admiral Sir John Jervis, Earl of St. Vincent

Vancouver noted (Thursday July 14):**“The shores of these, like the adjacent coast, are composed principally of rocks rising perpendicularly from an unfathomable sea; they are tolerably well covered with trees, chiefly of the pine tribe, though few are of luxuriant growth.”**

they reached (today’s Woodfibre near Squamish, B.C.) were Vancouver recorded in his journal: **“In this dreary and comfortless region, it was no inconsiderable piece of good fortune to find a little cove in which we could take shelter, and a small spot of level land on which we could erect our tent.”**

LIEUTENANT COMMANDER JACINTO CAAMANO SAILS TO EXPLORE RUSSIAN-AMERICA

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra sent Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano

aboard the *Aranzazu* to survey the coast of the Russian-America (Alaska) panhandle

from Bucareli Sound south to eliminate the last large gap in the coastline map

Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano sailed the *Aranzazu* out of Nootka Sound -- -- June 13, 1792

in the final effort to find the fabled Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

LIEUTENANTS DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ENCOUNTER THE BRITISH

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* were in very shallow water -- 2:00 a.m. June 14, 1792

Galiano anchored until dawn midway between (Birch Point)

and the east tip of “Punta Cepeda” (Point Roberts)

Spanish ships sailed around Punta Cepeda -- 7:00 a.m. June 14

simultaneously a square-rigged brigantine moved out from Birch Bay

*Sutil* raised the Spanish flag and the British ship drew near and saluted

an English officer identified himself as Naval Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton

commander of the HMS *Chatham* -- he asked permission to board the *Sutil*

Meeting between Galiano and Broughton was a friendly one

Broughton currently was occupied taking on water from a small stream

he invited the Spanish to join him collecting water

Galiano said the Spanish were well supplied and were fully aware of water sources

as locations had been noted by previous Spanish captains during their explorations

Lieutenant Galiano informed British Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton

that Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra was waiting for his arrival

at Santa Cruz de Nuca on Nootka Sound’s Friendly Cove

Broughton explained *Chatham* along with Captain Vancouver’s Discovery

had been anchored in Birch Bay since [June 11]

Galiano and Valdes parted company with Broughton

but they all remained within the confines of Birch Bay

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A THIRD DAY

Setting out from his camp (at today’s Woodfibre, B.C.) -- June 14, 1792

Vancouver returned down the deep inlet and made camp (at today’s Gibsons Landing, B.C.)

Vancouver wrote in his journal (misdated Friday June 15): **“By sun-set we had passed the channel which had been observed to lead into the gulf, to the southward of Anvil Island; and about nine o’clock landed for the night, near the west point of entrance into the sound.”**

Vancouver named this “Point Gower” (but today it is called The Bluff

as today’s Gower Point is a little further along the coast)

exact location of Vancouver’s camp this night is not known however a commemorative plaque

has been place in today’s Chester Park indicating the site is nearby)

Vancouver and his crew camped for the night near (Gibsons Harbor)

Vancouver’s men described the flats at the mouth of the Tacouche Tesse (Fraser) River

and named “Sturgeon Bank” but failed to see the river itself

here they purchased several excellent sturgeons from the natives

weighing from fourteen pounds to 200 pounds each

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A FOURTH DAY

Vancouver entered the waters off (British Columbia’s Sunshine Coast) -- afternoon June 15

as the boat expedition continued north from (Gower Point) -- June 15, 1792

asVancouver sailed along the coast between (Gibsons Harbor and Pender Harbour)

he reported about the land in the area of (today’s Sechelt, B.C.): **“This part of the coast is of a moderate height for some distance inland, and it frequently jets out into low sandy projecting points. The country in general produces forest trees in great abundance, of some variety and magnitude; the pine is the most common, and the woods are little encumbered with bushes or trees of inferior growth.”**

They reached (Pender Harbour**)** where camp was made near(Francis Bay)

Vancouver was not overwhelmingly impressed with this region as he wrote (misdated June 16): “**Along this rocky shore of the main land we passed in quest of a resting place for the night, to no effect, until after dark; when we found shelter in a very dreary uncomfortable cove near the south point of an island about a mile long, and about two miles to the S.S.E. of a narrow opening** (today’s Agamemnon Channel) **leading to the northward.”**

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY INVESTIGATES BELLINGHAM BAY

Master Joseph Whidbey led a party southeast and explored “Bellingham Bay” -- June 15, 1792

(Spanish Pilot Jose Maria Narvaez’s Seno Gaston)

which Vancouver re-named for Sir William Bellingham, controller of the storekeeper’s accounts

for His Majesty’s Royal Navy

LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES CROSS THE GULF OF GEORGIA

Sailing out of Birch Bay, Dionisio Alcala Galiano on *Sutil* andCayetano Valdes on *Mexicana*

eventually investigated west across the Strait of Georgia

they made landfall off the east coast of “Galiano Island”near (Active Pass) -- June 15, 1792

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A FIFTH DAY

Captain Vancouver’s boat expedition left their uncomfortable camp

on Francis Bay -- June 16, 1792

Vancouver and his men traveled in an irregular course to the northeast

reaching (Agamemnon Channel)

Vancouver reported in his journal (incorrectly dated Sunday June 17) **“This part of the coast is of a moderate height for some distance inland, and it frequently jets out into low sandy projecting points. The country in general produces forest trees in great abundance, of some variety and magnitude; the pine is the most common, and the woods are little encumbered with bushes or trees of inferior growth.”**

This night was spent in a more comfortable situation near (today’s Vancouver Bay)

Vancouver wrote: **“The shores we passed this day are of a moderate height within a few miles of this station, and are principally composed of craggy rocks, in the chasms of which a soil of decayed vegetables has been formed by the hand of time; from which pine trees of an inferior dwarf growth are produced, with a considerable quantity of bushes and underwood.”**

SPANISH LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES EXPLORE GALIANO ISLAND

Galiano and Valdes searched Galiano Island looking for safe harbor

until they anchored in a bay then named **“**Cala del Descans” (cove of rest) -- June 16, 1792

(this is today’s Pilot Bay on the north end of Cabriola Island near Nanaimo, B.C.

it was first visited by Jose Maria Narvaez [1791] who named it “Punta de Gaviola”)

Jose Cardero, the expedition’s artist for Galiano and Valdes, sketched the local native chief

and an unusual rock formation

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A SIXTH DAY

Leaving their (Vancouver Bay) campsite -- June 17, 1792

Vancouver’s boat expedition reached their northernmost point and penetrated into the mainland

Vancouver reported in his journal (misdated Monday June 18): “[their inadequate campsite the night before] **...obliged us to continue our search along the shore for one less incommodious, which the perpendicular precipices precluded our finding until near eleven at night, when we disembarked on the only low projecting point the inlet afforded.”**

(Vancouver did not attempt to navigate the treacherous Malibu Rapids),

so he missed (Princess Louisa Inlet), the most important tourist attraction in the area today

and (Sechelt and Salmon inlets)

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY REACHES THE QUEEN CHAROLETTE ISLANDS

*Columbia Rediviva* was again at Queen Charlotte Sound

his landing party was attacked by two hundred natives hiding in the woods

in retaliation for hostile actions Captain Gray had taken when some clothes were stolen [1789]

Gray’s sailors finally got to beach where the ship’s guns raked the woods with grape-shot

Captain Gray was joined by his sloop *Adventure*

under command of Mr. Robert Haswell -- June 17, 1792

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A SEVENTH DAY

Vancouver’s boat expedition got an early start -- 4:00 a.m. June 18, 1792 (Vancouver’s June 19)

beginning their return to Vancouver’s ships they worked their way down Jervis Inlet

Vancouver reported in his journal, **“At four, on the morning of Tuesday the 19th, we again started, but having a strong southerly gale against us, it was past nine before we reached a small bay** [Goliath Bay]**, about a mile to the north of the north point of the arm leading to the north-westward, where we rested for the night.”**

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR EIGHTH DAY

Vancouver entered and named the “Gulf of Georgia”(today’s Strait of Georgia) -- June 19, 1792

as the boat expedition continued back to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

Vancouver noted in his journal (incorrectly dated Vancouver’s Wednesday June 20): **“The shores of this land, nearly straight and compact, are principally formed of rocky substances of different sorts; amongst which, slate was in abundance; and the trees it produced were of infinitely more luxuriant growth than those on the opposite shore.”**

camp was made near “Anderson Bay”on Texada Island, British Columbia

GALIANO AND VALDES SAIL ACROSS THE GEORGIA STRAIT

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* attempted to continue north from Gabriola Island

but sailing conditions were unfavorable -- June 19, 1792

Galiano reported the difficulties they encountered in the area: **“At midday, having remained becalmed, and the current going outward, we decided to anchor. We made way under oars to find an anchorage. The beach, which was sandy, appeared suitable for this. We were a mile from the shore and believed we would be in 25 or 30 fathoms** [75 to 90 feet of water]**, but found no bottom at 60. We approached the shore and at two thirds of a mile from it, we had 60 fathoms mud. The boat was sent shorewards, and at three cables** [about a third of a mile] **from the shore there was 30 fathoms gravel. Not being able to overcome the current to any noticeable extent with the oars, we had left off rowing until this was determined, and in the said situation were two miles from the west point of Boca de Carmelo** [Howe Sound]**. We made our way with the oars to a half mile from the land, and found 40 fathoms, muddy sand bottom. An anchorage so close to land with so much water was all right in case of need, but not as a matter of choice. The thermal breeze started to turn to the west, and not seeing any great force on the water we steered to the east, and with a light southwest wind we continued until four on a steady wind. We came up to ESE. At eight in the evening the wind built up from the west, and we laid a course for the Punta de Langara** [West Point Grey, B.C.]**.**”[[82]](#footnote-82)

they had crossed the Strait of Georgia to the Canadian mainland)

Galiano and Valdes named this body of water “Canal de Sasamat” after the local Indians

Lights were sighted near shore between 10:00 p.m. and midnight,

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano concluded it was a large British vessel and avoided it

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A NINTH DAY

Captain Vancouver’s men worked their way back toward their ships

leaving Anderson Bay on Texada Island -- June 20, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday June 21)

Vancouver does not record his campsite on for this night but Lieutenant Puget reports: **“That Night we reached the Cluster of Islands in Mid Channel off where we stopped…”**

they probably camped on (Worlcombe Island, one of the islands in the Pasley group)

or perhaps on (Bowen Island)

VANCOUVER LEADS HIS BOAT EXPEDITION FOR A TENTH DAY

Vancouver’s boat expedition continued toward their ships -- June 21, 1792 (Vancouver’s June 22)

Vancouver recorded the difficulties faced on this days travels: **“We were likewise unfortunate in having two flood tides against us. These, together with a light southerly breeze that prevailed the whole time, obliged us to be constantly rowing from nine in the forenoon until after midnight, before we could reach the point, which was at length effected; though not before we were nearly exhausted by fatigue. Here we slept….”**

VANCOUVER COMPLETES HIS INVESTIGATION OF THE GULF ISLANDS

Vancouver’s party was faced with a strong easterly breeze working against them

after traveling more than 330 miles they returned to the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

in Birch Bay-- about 10:00 a.m. June 22, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday June 23)

Vancouver thought this was his 35th birthday -- but again he was one day off

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON LEAVE BIRCH BAY

*Discovery* and *Chatham* enjoyed a fine breeze and very pleasant weather

as they sailed out of Birch Bay -- morning June 23, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday June 24)

they traveled north-northwest up the Gulf of Georgia (Strait of Georgia)

Off Point Grey Captain Vancouver was astonished to see the little Spanish expedition

comprised of *Sutil* and *Mexicana* commanded by Spanish lieutenants

Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes

who saluted the British with cheering -- 2:00 p.m. June 23, 1792 (Vancouver’s June 24)

Vancouver named this geographic feature after his friend Captain George Grey

(this is the location of the University of British Columbia

in what is now the city of Vancouver, British Columbia)

At the entrance of Jervis Inlet all four British and Spanish officers gathered aboard the *Discovery*

for **“a meal in the English style”**

Galiano informed Vancouver that they had examined a small branch near Burrard Inlet

which was very narrow and ended after about fifteen miles at a small stream

Gailano gave Vancouver a copy of the sketches of the area drawn by himself and Valdes

Vancouver also was shown a crude chart of the Strait of Georgia

base on Jose Maria Narvaez [1791] expedition

Vancouver wrote: **“I cannot avoid acknowledging that on this occasion I experienced no small degree of mortification in finding the external shores of the gulf had been visited, and already examined a few miles beyond where my researches during the excursion, had extended….”[[83]](#footnote-83)**

Spanish officers returned to their ships at sunset

SPANISH OFFICERS GRACIOUSLY RECEIVE BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano on *Sutil* and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes of the *Mexicana* met with

*Discovery*’s Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant-Commander Broughton of the *Chatham*

they invited the British officers to a hearty breakfast -- 7:00 a.m. Saturday, June 23, 1792

Vancouver learned that Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

was at Nootka Sound waiting to complete diplomatic formalities

Spanish and British commanders were excessively polite

friendly relations between the British and Spanish officers were developed immediately

Vancouver noted: **“Their apartments just allowed room for sleeping places on each side with a table in the intermediate space, at which four persons with some difficulty could sit, and were in all other respects the most ill calculated and unfit vessels that could possibly be imagined for such an expedition; notwithstanding this, it was pleasant to observe, in point of living they possessed many more comforts than could reasonably be expected.”**[[84]](#footnote-84)

Each expedition commander offered to assist the others

Galiano mortified Vancouver by showing him a copy of the map of the area they were investigating

made by Spanish officer Jose Maria Narvaez’s three-week reconnaissance [1791]

however, this lacked the detail Vancouver required to confirm (or deny) the existence

of the Northwest Passage

Spanish also had sought in vain for the mouth of a great river (Fraser) said to be in the vicinity

in return Vancouver showed Galiano and Valdes his detailed charts drawn of Admiralty Inlet

which the Spanish had continually by-passed because they believed the Indians

who told them Admiralty Inlet was deep enough only for canoes

a quick study of Vancouver’s charts showed this to be incorrect

Vancouver suggested they work together

they sailed northward together toward the northern end of the Strait of Georgia

but the Spanish ships could not keep pace with the English vessels

it was agreed they would assist one another by dividing the surveying work and share their charts

Spanish did very little surveying along the mainland side of the Strait of Georgia

since that was Vancouver’s area of focus

but the Spanish did discover and chart (Indian Arm) off Burrard Inlet

which was a region that Vancouver had ignored

Galiano and Valdes investigated the east coast of (Vancouver Island)

(however, these charts were not published until ten years later)

Vancouver named “Spanish Banks” in honor of the two Spanish ships

Captain George Vancouver, rather than hurrying to a meeting of the two nations at Nootka Sound,

leisurely explored (today’s Salish Sea) all summer while Quadra waited patiently

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano felt it was important that he not be interrupted any longer

Cayetano Valdes had been on the coast [1791] and learned to speak the local Indian language

he had learned from the natives that a passage to the sea existed North of the Strait of Georgia

LIEUTENANTS DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ARRIVE IN BURRARD INLET

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano felt it was important to continue their investigation to the north

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* continued to sail on into the night -- June 23, 1792

they planned to be at Burrard Inlet and enter it in the morning

Spanish lieutenants Galiano and Valdes entered Strait of Georgia

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON LEAVE BIRCH BAY

*Discovery* and *Chatham* enjoyed a fine breeze and very pleasant weather

as they sailed out of Birch Bay -- morning June 23, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday June 24)

they traveled north-northwest up the Gulf of Georgia (Strait of Georgia)

Off Point Grey, Captain Vancouver was astonished to see the little Spanish expedition

comprised of *Sutil* and *Mexicana* commanded by Spanish lieutenants

Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes

who saluted the British with cheering -- 2:00 p.m. June 23, 1792 (Vancouver’s June 24)

Vancouver named this geographic feature after his friend Captain George Grey

(this is the location of the University of British Columbia

in what is now the city of Vancouver, British Columbia)

At the entrance of Jervis Inlet all four British and Spanish officers gathered aboard the *Discovery*

for **“a meal in the English style”**

Galiano informed Vancouver that they had examined a small branch near Burrard Inlet

which was very narrow and ended after about fifteen miles at a small stream

Gailano gave Vancouver a copy of the sketches of the area drawn by himself and Valdes

Vancouver also was shown a crude chart of the Strait of Georgia

base on Jose Maria Narvaez [1791] expedition

Vancouver wrote: **“I cannot avoid acknowledging that on this occasion I experienced no small degree of mortification in finding the external shores of the gulf had been visited, and already examined a few miles beyond where my researches during the excursion, had extended….”[[85]](#footnote-85)**

Spanish officers returned to their ships at sunset

LIEUTENANTS DIONISIO GALIANO AND CAYETANO VALDES ARRIVE IN BURRARD INLET

Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano felt it was important to continue their investigation to the north

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* continued to sail on into the night -- June 23, 1792

they planned to be at Burrard Inlet and enter it in the morning

Spanish lieutenants Galiano and Valdes entered Strait of Georgia

INVESTIGATION OF THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA CONTINUES

Vancouver entered the Strait of Georgia (Jose Maria Narvaez’s Canal de Nuestra Senora del Rosario)

during the morning of June 24, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday June 25)

as he followed at a distance the route taken by Galiano and Valdes

Vancouver noted that a number of whales were seen in every direction

he concluded there was another opening to the Pacific Ocean that he had not yet seen

Vancouver’s *Discovery* and Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton’s *Chatham* sailed north

they overtook *Sutil* and *Mexicana* -- early afternoon June 24

Vancouver waited for the Spanish ships as evening approached

and offered the Spanish commanders dinner aboard the *Discovery*

Setting out again *Discovery, Chatham, Sutil* and *Mexicana* sailed north -- evening of June 24

investigating the Strait of Georgia

Galiano and Valdes entered “Malaspina Strait”

which they named after Spanish Captain Alejandro Malaspina

that separates Jose Maria Narvaez’s Texada Island from the (British Columbia mainland)

*Sutil* and *Mexicana* arrived at “Point Marshall”

BRITISH AND SPANISH OFFICERS CONTINUE TO SHARE COMPANY

Off and on for a month Vancouver’s *Discovery* shared company with *Sutil* and *Mexicana*

British Captain George Vancouver caught the Spanish vessels *Sutil* and *Mexicana*

together they moved through “Malaspina Strait” to “Marshall Point”

located at the northern point of Texada Island -- June 25, 1792

Spanish officers Dionisio Alcala Galiano and Cayetano Valdes

once again received Vancouver graciously

Sailing the *Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed north ahead of *Sutil* and *Mexicana* together

they continued past “Harwood Island”

Vancouver named “Savary Island” after a pleasant easterly breeze

this was an area of islands and small rocky islets that made sailing conditions unpleasant

(Off and on for a month, British and Spanish explorersshared company

as they investigated the Gulf Islands and the Georgia Strait)

BRITISH AND SPANISH BOAT EXPEDITIONS INVESTIGATE THE INSIDE PASSAGE

Weather was serene and pleasant -- June 25, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday June 26)

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey took *Discovery’s* launch and cutter

to examine the continental shore of the Strait of Georgia

Lieutenant James Johnstone in the *Chatham’s* cutter

was accompanied by Lieutenant Spelman Swaine in the *Chatham’s* launch

together they investigated the branch of the Strait of Georgia leading to the northwest

Spanish Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes on the *Mexicana* surveyed the intermediate coast

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton searched to the northwest for better anchorage for the ships

Captain George Vancouver and Spanish Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano

visited the shore of a nearby island

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton returned after having found a suitable anchorage

All four ships move to the anchorage at what became known as (Desolation Sound) -- 6:00 p.m.

(across from Vancouver Island’s Campbell River)

*COLUMBIA REDIVIVA* HITS A ROCK

*Columbia Rediviva* ran on a rock near (Milbanke Sound on today’s British Columbia mainland)

she split her keel, smashed her stern and stripped away much of her sheathing -- June 28, 1792 plugging the leak with a topsail, Gray limped back toward Nootka Sound for repairs gale force winds added to the *Columbia Rediviva’s* difficulties

Gray sailed to (Nesparte Inlet on the outside of Vancouver Island) and examined the damage

extensive repairs would be necessary -- Captain Gray was forced to return back to Nootka Sound

BOAT EXPEDITIONS RETURN TO THE *DISCOVERY*

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey reported to Captain George Vancouver

after completing the survey of the mainland coast -- June 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday June 30)

they had surveyed (Desolation Sound) beginning at the two points of land at the entrance

which Vancouver named “Sarah Point” and “Point Mary”

Puget and Whidbey had found a deserted native village which at one time held up to 300 people

it was built on a rock with perpendicular cliffs providing protection on all sides

a long narrow neck of land extended from the mainland toward the island

a tree grew in the center of the spit of land

planks were laid from its branches to the island forming a bridge

which could be removed to prevent attack by unfriendly neighbors

at the level of the houses, platforms held up by heavy timbers had been built out from the rock

these extended above the sea on all sides of the island

this overhang guarded the rock from ocean invasion

LIEUTENANTS JAMES JOHNSTONE AND SPELMAN SWAINE RETURN TO THE *CHATHAM*

When Lieutenants Johnstone and Swaine returned -- July 1, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday July 2)

they reported they had met with Spanish Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes

and had learned the area they were surveying to the east

had already been investigated by the Spanish

Johnstone and Swaine turned their attention to the west

and examined “Bute’s Canal” off Desolation Sound

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SPENDS A MONTH MAKING REPAIRS TO HIS SHIP

Suffering extensive damage *Columbia Rediviva* limped into Nootka Sound for repairs -- July 1792

Friendly Cove had changed considerably since Captain Gray’s last visit

Spanish settlement now numbered sixteen buildings

presided over with courtly charm by Commandant Francisco de Bodega y Quadra

several ships of various nationalities were in the harbor including Joseph Ingraham’s tiny *Hope*

on a pervious voyage [1788] Ingraham had been Captain Gray’s first mate

aboard the *Columbia* *Rediviva*

Robert Haswell had been Ingraham’s shipmate on the *Columbia*

(Ingraham had sailed the *Hope* from Boston

twelve days before Gray [September 16, 1790])

Friendship that had marked American relations

with Spanish Chief Pilot of San Blas Esteban Jose Martinez continued with Commandant Quadra

as the Spaniard offered Gray, free of charge, every resource at hand

Americans received assistance from the Spanish in the repair of the ship

storerooms on shore also were made available for the cargo

Americans were entertained by the Spanish

Yankee captain lived with Quadra while *Columbia Rediviva* was out of commission

Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra was a courtly host

Americans were well entertained by the Spanish

who invited Gray and the rest of the *Columbia’s* officers to a banquet

at the Governor’s table aboard Quadra’s brig *Activa*

Captain Gray told Quadra of his discovery of a great river which he had named after his ship

he showed the Spanish commandant his maps and gave a sketch of river’s entrance to Quadra

this documented Gray’s discovery and provided the United States its claim to the Northwest

SPANISH OFFICER IS KILLED AT THE COLONY OF NUNEZ GAONA

(English brig *Venus* captained by Henry Shepherd and manned by black-skinned sailors

from the Jolo Archipelago [south of the Philippines] sailed from Bengal, India [January 7, 1792]

*Venus* had previously stopped at Nootka Sound)

*Venus* arrived at Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- July 2, 1792

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo visited with Captain Shepherd until late in the day

when he returned to the *Princesa*, Fidalgo was informed his friend Antonio Serantes

who was second in command of *Princesa* had been missing for several hours

Fidalgo, worried about his friend’s safety -- he waited at the barracks until dawn

when he sent out twenty men with dogs to pick up Serantes’ trail -- July 3, 1792

they reported no luck on their return and Fidalgo sent them out again

later in the day an Indian told Fidalgo that natives from Chief Tatoosh’s village

had killed a Spaniard and carried him away

NOOTKA INDIANS ASK THE SPANISH FOR HELP

Commandant Quadra was asked to assist a village of Nootka people -- July 3, 1792

who had been attacked

they said seven of their people had been killed and many others were wounded

all of the villagers’ sea otter pelts had been seized

Spanish Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano was visiting the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca

and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove

he was under the impression the ship was the *Columbia Rediviva* under American Robert Gray

but the attack was actually carried out by the English fur trader William Brown

Brown was the leader of a three-ship trading operation known as the Butterworth squadron

*Butterworth*, *Jackall* and *Prince Lee Boo* comprised his fleet

Brown was trading under a grant from the British government

to set up a fur trading post on the coast of Vancouver Island

Commandant Quadra had his surgeon tend some of the wounded and promised to punish the aggressors

(later in the year Brown had a violent conflict with the people of Clayoqout Sound as well

he claimed he acted in self-defense but other fur traders said

he forcefully stole furs from the Clayoquot people)

INVESTIGATION OF THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA CONTINUES

*Discovery, Chatham, Sutil* and *Mexicana* -- July 4, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday July 5)

investigated the Strait of Georgia in a coordinated effort

Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant-Commander Broughton explored the northern Gulf Islands

during his investigation Vancouver’s crew left behind a coin and a knife

at “Georgia Point” on (Mayne Island)

Vancouver named “Stuart’s Island” and “Loughborough’s Channel”

Lieutenants James Johnstone and Spelman Swaine were sent with five days’ supplies

to examine the continental shore through a narrow passage

(when they returned [July 11] -- Vancouver’s [July 12]

they reported they had found a passage leading into the Pacific Ocean to the northwest)

Spanish Captain Dionisio Alcala Galiano explored and named “Galiano Island” and the area around

and “Saturna Island” was named after the Spanish schooner *Santa Saturnina*

commanded by Jose Maria Narvaez who first investigated the vicinity of the island [1791]

VACOUVER AND BROUGHTON CONTINUE THROUGH BROUGHTON’S ARCHIPELAGO

*Discovery* and *Chatham* again set sail -- 9:00 a.m. July 28, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday July 29)

although they were favored with a light breeze, the *Discovery* remained stationary

she did not respond to the helm

*Discovery* remained trapped by an undertow until nearly dark when a strong breeze came up

that allowed her to reach Deep Sea Bluff where they anchored -- 11:00 p.m.

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* WERE AGAIN UNDER WAY IN BROUGHTON’S ARCHIPELAGO

Both vessels moved northward to better allow for taking on wood and water

Vancouver investigated the route ahead in a boat -- July 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday July 30)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* were forced to remain in place in the poor anchorage at Deep Sea Bluff

to gather supplies

BROUGHTON’S ARCHIPELAGO PROVES TO BE A TREACHEROUS PASSAGE

While *Discovery* and *Chatham* remained in place -- July 30, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday July 31)

*Discovery’s* yawl, launch and cutterwere ordered sent out at daylight to investigate their situation

Vancouver and Broughton accompanied by Peter Puget in the *Discovery’s* launch

and Master Whidbey in the cutter set out to follow the continental shore at sunrise

passages too small for the ships were discovered and eliminated as possible routes

VANCOUVER HAS DIFFICULTY IN DISCOVERING A ROUTE

Passages through Broughton’s Archipelago full of rocky islets were investigated

to what Vancouver called “Point Phillip” to honor Sir Phillip Sevens, Secretary to the Admiralty

about eight miles from Deep Sea Bluff -- July 31, 1792 (Vancouver’s August 1)

One passage led to the southwest and appeared to possibly reach to the Pacific Ocean

but the shore on both sides of the passage was high, steep and rocky

one very high point was named “Mount Stephens”

STILL NO PASSAGE CAN BE FOUND THROUGH BROUGHTON’S ARCHIPELAGO

Captain Vancouver traced yet another channel -- August 1, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday August 2)

this route was extremely dangerous because it was full of rocky islets, sunken rocks

and rapid and irregular tides

Captain Vancouver had reached as far as he intended to search during this reconnaissance

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey continued their investigation

as they entered the archipelago at the entrance of the Queen Charlotte Sound near Fife Sound

Vancouver turned his attention to finding a suitable rendezvous place for the vessels and boats

he proceeded the southwest down a channel that separated “Broughton Island” from the mainland

Vancouver named this “Wells’s Passage” (today’s Wells Passage)

after British Captain (later Admiral) John Wells

when he stopped for lunch it was noted that a strong ebb tide from the west

indicated a link with the ocean in that direction was improbable

Vancouver located a safe rendezvous point and returned to his ship

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVES BACK AT THE *DISCOVERY*

Vancouver returned from his scouting expedition -- 1:00 p.m. August 2, 1792 (Vancouver’s August 3)

immediately the *Discovery* and *Chatham* set out toward the rendezvous point

but progress was extremely slow through the treacherous channels

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE RETURNS TO FORT CHIPEWYAN

Mackenzie had decided to make an overland trip to the Pacific Ocean

after visiting in Montreal and attending classes in London to learn the newest advances

in measuring longitude in an incredibly short time for such a major effort

Alexander Mackenzie returned to Fort Chipewyan on the western tip of Lake Athabasca

(in today’s northern Alberta, Canada) -- August 1792

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE PREPARES FOR HIS SECOND EXPEDITION

Mackenzie in an effort to reach the Pacific shore and, perhaps, find the elusive Northwest Passage

knew he must get to Pacific Ocean and back to Fort Chipewyan in one summer

but he did not know the distance from Fort Chipewyan to the Pacific Ocean

Mackenzie decided spend the (winter) as far west of Fort Chipewyan as possible

he reasoned that the Peace River emptying into Lake Athabasca from the west

should, if followed to its source, put the him within striking distance of a west flowing river

he would journey as far up the Peace River as possible before (winter) set in

there he would make camp

he would cross the Rocky Mountains (the following spring)

and if it was possible he would then continue west to the Pacific Ocean

In preparation for supplying his (winter) camp far up the Peace River

several canoes had been sent carrying supplies and trade goods -- August 1792

DIFFICULT CONDITIONS PLAGUE VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON

*Discovery* and *Chatham* in Broughton’s Archipelagoentered a channel

to the west of a group of islands -- August 4, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday August 5)

that appeared to lead to the Pacific Ocean

Haze and fog made it impossible to conduct a thorough investigation

but there appeared to be ample width and depth to safely sail

Vancouver decided to maneuver the British ships toward the channel during the night

to gain an early start in the next morning

VANCOUVER FACED EXTREMELY DANGEROUS CONDITIONS

Very thick fog and calm winds came with dawn -- August 5, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday August 6)

these conditions held *Discovery* and *Chatham* stationary placing them at the mercy of the currents

Boat expeditions conducted beyond Vancouver’s [August 1] scouting location returned to the ships

Lieutenant Peter Puget and Master Joseph Whidbey reported they had identified several small bays

that could provide snug and convenient anchorages

but the routes between them were intricate and dangerous with strong currents

and many rocky islets and sunken rocks

When the fog lifted the British ships reached the channel which was filled with rocky islets and rocks

deepening haze and fog returned but there was no better route available

Both British ships set out through an obscured intricate channel

Vancouver wrote: **“We sailed cautiously under a light easterly into a narrow channel, I judged no more than a mile wide, its shores rising perpendicular from the sea, its waters cluttered with a menacing scattering of shoals. The wind died, and thick fog obscured every surrounding object, and wet us clean to the bone.”** (misdated August 6)

Suddenly *Discovery’s* bow became grounded on a small bed of sunken rocks -- 4:00 p.m.

reported Vancouver: **“She lurched broadside. I swept blood from my eyes, and bellowed for the ship to be lightened. Yards and masts were struck and got over, ballast and fuel following. Nothing would right her. The tide continued to fall; she swung alarmingly over her starboard side; the water surging towards the rail. If a storm arose, she was certainly doomed…”**

small anchor and cable were immediately carried out and every attempt was made

to pull her off the rocks but to no avail as the tide was falling very fast

*Chatham* was signaled and she anchored -- boats were sent to assist

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton brought the *Chatham* close to be ready to help if possible

as the tide rapidly fell *Discovery* began to list to Starboard (right)

her situation became increasingly predacious

it became necessary to hold the rail or the rigging to stand on the *Discovery*

Vancouver reported in his journal this was **“a very irksome and perilous situation”**

(again misdated as Monday August 6)

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION FACES YET ANOTHER CRISIS

*Discovery*, after throwing wood and ballast overboard was refloated on the incoming tide

*Discovery* came nearly upright -- 2:00 a.m. August 6, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday August 7)

crew members, after only about three hours of rest, went to work re-equipping the ship everything was made ready to sail by noon

*Discovery* proceeded along Broughton’s Archipelago

which became more intricate as they moved forward

but the narrowest part of the passage had been navigated -- 5:00 p.m.

wind became light but the ebb tide aided them toward the ocean

which could be seen on the horizon

Safety seemed to be within reach when the *Chatham* ran on the rocks -- 6:00 pm.

ocean swells added to the difficulties faced by Lieutenant-Commander Broughton

as his ship was repeatedly lifted and then dropped back on the rocks

*Discovery* anchored and sent her boats to assist

*Chatham* was eventually freed when the incoming tide lifted her off the rocks

but the extent of the damage could not be determined

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* GET UNDER WAY AGAIN

With the dawn came an extremely thick fog -- August 7, 1792 (Vancouver’s Wednesday August 8)

as the *Discovery* continued on her course *Chatham* could not be seen in the distance

not knowing the condition of the *Chatham* added to the tension felt by *Discovery’s* crewmen

When the fog lifted in the late morning *Chatham* was seen trailing behind the *Discovery*

aided by an ebbing tide and light southerly breeze

both ships moved silently and cautiously away from the scene of their near demise

as they entered Queen Charlotte Strait

Captain Vancouver steered the *Discovery* for Calvert’s Islands in search of Port Safety

which had been identified on Captain Charles Duncan’s [1788] chart

at the west entrance to “Tribune Channel”

anchorage was made to the west of (Shelter Bay) -- late afternoon

Two boat expeditions were sent out

Master Joseph Whidbey was sent ahead to seek a route to the ocean

Peter Puget in *Discovery’s* launch andcutter and Harry Humphrys in her small cutter

were sent to investigate to the north along the continental shore

they reached Fitzhugh Sound and Smith Island -- and discovered (Rivers Inlet)

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* CONTINUE THEIR HAZARDOUS JOURNEY

Lack of wind and the heavy morning fog detained the ships until 9:00 a.m.

when a light easterly breeze enabled them to sail out of the area of Shelter Bay

through the rocky channel -- August 8, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday August 9)

weather was clear directly overhead but the horizon was vague with partial fogs in every direction

viewing even the nearby surroundings was difficult

Dr. Archibald Menzies noted the foul ground at (Allan Rocks and Middle Rocks)

lying southwest of (today’s Storm Islands)

There appeared to be a spacious channel between the islands and the northern shore

but as Menzies noted **“…yet we did not attempt it, as we observed some low picked rocks and breakers strewd** (sic) **in two or three places at half-tide which showd** (sic) **it to be foul ground and by no means a commendable passage to Navigate without previous knowledge of its Soundings.”** (Vancouver’s Thursday August 9)

*Discovery* signaled to *Chatham* to steer west and to lead through mile wide (Shadwell Passage)

which lay between islands covered with pines -- 10:00 a.m.

Both ships became becalmed in the middle of (Europa Passage)

between “Pine Island” and the “Tree Islets” -- noon

(today located in God’s Pocket Marine Provincial Park)

further investigation of what was at first thought to be on island proved the Tree Islets

consisted of eight of nine smaller islets about a quarter to a half mile wide

which strung out for about four miles (known today as the Storm Islands)

Both British ships passed through (today’s Storm Islands)

progress through Europa Passage was made only with the help of the boats -- 1:00 p.m.

when the wind changed to the northwest it brought a remarkably thick fog-- as usual

*Discovery* and *Chatham* continued on despite the treacherous conditions

(Bates Passage) was reached (in the vicinity of today’s Port Hardy)

none of this shoreline along the north end of (Vancouver Island) was examined by Vancouver

all of his energies were now directed to moving the ships clear of the dangers of the coast

in the fog *Discovery* gave the signal for *Chatham* to change direction

by firing three guns at 3:30 p.m. and again at 4:40

muskets were frequently fired to denote her position to the *Chatham*

Anchorage was made in Queen Charlotte’s Sound -- 6:00 p.m.

in Captain Duncan’s Port Safety located on tiny (Vansittart Island)

between the much larger (Hope Island) and (Nigei Island)

however, this cove was in a different latitude than that reported by Duncan

Vancouver renamed the inlet “Safety Cove”

*Chatham* was moored to trees as close to the shoreline as possible

in the hope that low tide would allow an inspection of the damage to the ship

caused by grounding on the rocks

Vancouver reported in his journal: **“We anchored about six in the evening in 17 fathoms on the South side of the cove. Being tolerably well sheltered in this cove, I was willing to hope the Chatham might with security, and without much difficulty, be laid on shore to examine if she had sustained any damage whilst striking on the rocks.”** (incorrectly dated Vancouver’s Wednesday August 8)

Vancouver visited the shore of (Vansittart Island) that evening

he found the channel he had entered stretched to the southeast in a winding course

through the island chain to the south that divided the land into islands

this passage appeared free from the dangers they had recently experienced

on the west side of (Shadwell Passage) a sandy beach stretched along (Hope Island)

Vancouver now recognized the coast before him as having been previously explored

by earlier traders from Europe and remarked in his journal: **“We now appear to have reached the part of the coast that had been visited and named by several of the traders from Europe and India. The *Experiment*, commanded by Mr. S, Wedgebourugh in August of 1786, honoured the inlet through which we had lately passed, with the name of Queen Charlotte Sound** (actually the captain was John Guise acting under Supercargo James Strange)**; the opening of the continental shore was discovered, and called Smith’s Inlet by Mr. James Hanna the same year; and the high distant mountain that appeared to be separated from the main land, formed part of a cluster named by Mr. Duncan Calvert’s Islands*;* and the channelbetween them and the main land, was by Mr. Hanna called Fitzhugh’s Sound*.* These being the names given, as far as I could learn, by the first discovers of this part of the coast, will be continued by me, and adopted in my charts and journal.”**

Merchant ships had indeed previously visited this region

to the north Spanish officer Juan Josef Perez had identified the Queen Charlotte Islands [1774]

main channel between the Calvert Island and the mainland

was named Fitzhugh Sound by Captain James Hanna [1785]

Queen Charlotte’s Sound had been named by Captain John Guise of the *Experiment* [1786]

Queen Charlotte Islandshad been named by Captain George Dixon in honor of his ship [1787]

and the Dixon Strait (today’s Dixon Entrance) after himself

Fitzhugh Sound had been named by Captain Hanna [1787] as had Smith Inlet

Captain Charles Duncan named Calvert Island [1788]

Captain George Vancouver sent out several boat excursions to investigate the region

and to attempt to find safe passage back to the Pacific Ocean

WORK AT SAFETY COVE IN NOT SUCCESSFUL

Attempts to assess the damage began on the *Chatham* -- August 10 (Vancouver’s Saturday August 11)

but damage to the *Chatham* remained un-surveyed because the tides were too small to ground her

(efforts to make repairs on the *Chatham* will continue until [August 17 -- Vancouver’s August 18])

Supplies of salmon, firewood and freshwater were taken aboard by the sailors

Lying at anchor Captain Vancouver expressed concern for the men he had out surveying

but at the same time he expressed confidence in them

as well as his pleasure in their positive attitude toward their work

Master Joseph Whidbey returned to report there were three possible channels available to Vancouver:

•one nearly through the center of the rocks;

•another about midway between the rocks and the continental shore offered a very broken route;

•third option, which became increasingly hazardous,

lay between the nearest cluster of rocks and the continent

WORK CONTINUES ON THE *CHATHAM*

Crews were busy doing what they could to make the *Chatham* seaworthy

and well supplied -- August 10, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday August 11)

Lieutenants Peter Puget and James Johnstone returned from having visited Fitzhugh Sound

and their investigation Smith Inlet and “Rivers Inlet” named by Vancouver

Vancouver reported in his journal that about half way up Smith Inlet**, “...a village of the natives was discovered which our gentlemen supposed might contain two hundred and fifty native persons. It was built upon a detached rock, connected to the mainland by a platform, like those before mentioned, constructed for defense. A great number of it’s** (sic) **inhabitants, in about thirty canoes, visited our party, and used every endeavor, they thought likely, to prevail on them to visit their habitations. They offered the skins of the sea-otter and other animals to barter…”**[[86]](#footnote-86)

*SUTIL* AND *MEXICANA* MEET A BRITISH MERCHANT SHIP

Spanish Lieutenants Dionisio Galiano and Cayetano Valdes met the British brig *Venus*

under the command of Henry Shepherd in (Bear Cove)

near (Port Hardy) on (Vancouver Island) -- August 10, 1792

Captain Shepherd hinted of uncertain conditions at Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

Spanish captains continued their exploration of the north end of (Vancouver Island)

before setting sail for Friendly Cove at Nootka Sound

VANCOUVER RECEIVES A BRITISH VISITOR

Both British ships remained anchored in Safety Cove on the west side of (Vansittart Island)

in Queen Charlotte Sound -- August 17, 1792 (Vancouver’s August 18)

Vancouver was surprised to suddenly see the arrival of a brig off the entrance to Safety Cove

*Venus,* flying English colors, was commanded by Captain Henry Shepherd

and belonged to John Henry Cox’s Bengal Company

she had sailed from Nootka Sound looking for furs sold by the Indians

at a better price than could be attained along the Pacific Coast

Captain Shepherd informed Vancouver that his supply ship *Daedalus* had arrived in Nootka Sound

sadly, her commander, Lieutenant Richard Hergest and astronomer William Gooch

had been killed in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

Hergest had been a close personal friend of Vancouver’s

also, Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

was waiting for Vancouver’s arrival with great impatience for the opportunity to resolve

the [1790] Nootka Crisis with the British representative

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* INVESTIGATE FITZHUGH SOUND

Repairs on *Discovery* and *Chatham* were completed

Vancouver and Broughton set sail -- 7:00 a.m. August 17, 1792 Vancouver’s Saturday August 18)

Broughton on the *Chatham* led the way across Queen Charlotte’s Sound headed for Smith Inlet

through Master Joseph Whidbey’s middle channel between the rocks

Opening to Captain James Hanna’s Fitzhugh Sound [1786] appeared in front of them

*Chatham* continued her investigation up Smith Inlet as the *Discovery* waited in the sound

winds changed to variable and partial fogs returned

treacherous rocks above and below the water forced *Chatham*’s effort to be abandoned

*Discovery* and *Chatham* regrouped in Fitzhugh Sound

both ships were forced to anchor -- 1:00 p.m.

where they faced stormy weather and torrents of rain

Vancouver and Johnstone explored to the north looking for the next place of rendezvous

Captain Vancouver had intended to continue his surveys for another month

but after his reconnaissance he decided his diplomatic duties needed attention

he ended his investigation in the north

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SAILS TOWARD NOOTKA SOUND

Vancouver and Broughtonturned toward Nootka Sound -- August 18, 1792 (Vancouver’s August 19)

for the first time this month they enjoyed a pleasant breeze as they sailed toward a passage

that appeared to lead to the ocean

*Discovery* and *Chatham* rode on a flood tide through a “narrows” just east of Fitzhugh Sound

where they came to their final anchorage in “Restoration Bay”

(located in today’s Codville Lagoon Marine Provincial Park)

Lieutenant James Johnstone was sent out with a crew in one of the boats to inspect

“Menzies Point,” (Labouchere Channel) and North and South Bentinck Arms

(originally named “Benedict Arms” by Vancouver)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER COMPLETES HIS INVESTIGATION

Captain George Vancouver had spent a leisurely summer exploring, naming and mapping

he identified capes and headlands, changed named and added features

Mt. Rainier, Mt. Baker, Mt. St. Helens, Puget Sound, Hood Canal, Deception Pass,

Elliot Bay, Birch Bay, Bellingham Bay, Port Discovery, Admiralty Inlet, Whidbey Island,

Cyprus Island, Vashon Island, Protection Island, Cape Dungeness, Port Orchard,

New Dungeness Foulweather Bluff, Possession Sound, Restoration Point, Gulf of Georgia,

and Port Townshend (sic) were only a few of the over two hundred named by Vancouver

he had honored officers of his ships, gentlemen influential in backing his venture,

his relatives, friends and place names from home

ROBERT GRAY SAILS THE *COLUMBIA REDIVIDA* OUT OF NOOTKA SOUND

Captain Robert Gray sailed *Columbia* north to join the sloop *Adventure* -- August 24, 1792

which had been trading under Robert Haswell in the Queen Charlotte Islands

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Foggy weather delayed the British approach to Nootka Sound

but the fog began to clear about 2:00 p.m. -- August 27, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday August 28)

*Chatham* cleared the entrance to Nootka Sound and was the first ship to circumnavigate

what would shortly be known as (Vancouver Island)

but the larger *Discovery* remained outside waiting for the weather to improve

when the entrance eventually was reached *Discovery* was visited by a Spanish officer

who brought a pilot to conduct the ship into Friendly Cove

Entering Friendly Cove Captain George Vancouver saw the brig *Activa* at anchor

with Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra on board

Vancouver’s supply ship *Daedalus* under Master Thomas New also was there

carryingmuch needed replenishment supplies for the British expedition

she also carried among other things a copy of a Spanish map of the San Juan Islands

made in [1790] by Gonzalo Lopez de Haro

also in the port was a small merchant ship, *Three Brothers*, out of London

commanded by British Lieutenant Joshua Alder

Commandant Quadra resided on shore

Vancouver’s pride of rank and diplomatic status made him unfair to Quadra

Vancouver made the Spaniard wait since he considered the Spanish officer to be an inferior

Lieutenant Peter Puget was sent to announce the arrival of the British

Vancouver had Quadra informed that he would salute the Spanish flag with cannon fire

if the commandant would return an equal salute -- Quadra agreed to do so

thirteen guns were fired in salute

Captain Vancouver and some of his officers went ashore

where they were cordially received by the Spanish commandant

BRITISH AND SPANISH NEGOTIATORS COMPARE CHARTS AND MAPS

British Captain Vancouver while at Nootka Sound

learned from Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

that American trader Robert Gray had entered a great river the previous [May]

and had named it Columbia’s River after his ship *Columbia Rediviva*

Vancouver was not impressed with this report of a possible river to the south

he had previously eliminated from his mind the possibility of a river in that location

A copy of Jose Maria Narvaez’s [1788] map of (Alaskan waters) was loaned to Vancouver

who had one of his men copy it

COMMANDERVANCOUVER BEGINS HIS SECOND ASSIGNMENT -- THAT OF DIPLOMAT

Spanish officers breakfasted the next morning on the *Discovery* -- August 28, 1792

Captain Vancouver asked Commandant Quadra for restitution of the land

British Captain John Meares supposedly had bought from Mannequin

however, Americans Robert Gray and Joseph Ingraham had previously informed Quadra

that no such sale had ever been consummated

Quadra accordingly declined to hand the land over

he was willing to give only a small area in Friendly Cove to the British

Vancouver was unwilling to accept such a small area

English and Spanish commanders, as gentlemen, agreed to disagree

NATIONAL INTERESTS WERE OF PRIMANRY IMPORTANT IN THE NEGOTIATION POSITIONS

British government position regarding the [1790] Nootka Crisis and the Nootka Sound Convention

placed an emphasis on trade

because the old British Empire was breaking up

Great Britain wanted to add the Spanish Empire to its own

Spanish government was concerned that they were losing control of North America

British, Americans and Russians were active along the Pacific coast

Nootka Sound incident [1790] was viewed by the Spanish as an effort by the British government

to unite North America’s internal and coastal trade under British control

Mandan Indian Villages on upper Missouri River were reported

to be trading with the Canadian Nor’Westers

Mandans also were reported to be considering an attempt to forge a link on Spain’s frontier

between themselves and the British

COMMANDANT QUADRA SERVES AN ELEGANT BANQUET

As many British officers as could be spared dined at Quadra’s residence -- evening August 28, 1792

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra provided a gala feast

fifty-four people sat down to and elegantly served elaborate five course dinner

featuring an excess of an unsurpassed variety foods

270 dinner plates of solid silver were used

toasts to the health of the kings of England and Spain was accompanied by firing salutes

and a seventeen-gun salute was fired to the success of the assignments

being undertaken by Captain Vancouver’s *Discovery* and *Chatham*

an extremely friendly Quadra was a thorough gentleman which caused Vancouver to observe:

**“It was a repast we had lately been little accustomed to or had the most distant idea of meeting with at this place.”**[[87]](#footnote-87)

Maquinna was present for the occasion

he informed Quadra that he had been prevented from visiting the *Discovery* early that morning

because he wore no indication of his superior rank

Quadra appeased the chief’s injured ego with presents of blue cloth, copper and trinkets

Maquinna appeared satisfied with the offerings but after a few glasses of wine

he resurfaced the subject once again

Quadra took pains to explain that it was the Spaniards’ ignorance of Maquinna’s people

that had led to the chief being insulted by the British

he further assured the chief the British would treat the natives as kindly as had the Spanish

BRITISH OFFICERS RELISH THEIR RELATIONSHIP WITH COMMANDANT QUADRA

Both Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant-Commander Broughton enjoyed the politeness,

hospitality and friendship shown on all occasions by the Spanish commandant

they dined at his table with several of the officers and gentlemen of both vessels almost every day

these wholesome meals constantly featured a variety of foods long unavailable to the British

Vancouver learned that when Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

arrived at Nootka Sound (April) he had ordered all vessels under his command

to inspect the coast to determine what proposal should be made to the British

and to gather the circumstances that led to the capture of the *Argonaut* and *Princess Royal*

by Spanish Commandant Esteban Jose Martinez [1789]

FORMAL NEGOTIATIONS TO RESOLVE THE NOOTKA SOUND CONVENTION UNDERWAY

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra stated Spain’s case in a letter

addressed to the British government which he gave to their representative

Captain George Vancouver -- August 29, 1792

in his letter, Quadra stated he had commissioned all vessels under his command

to inspect the coast to discover the proper limits on British territory

Quadra’s letter was accompanied by copies of statements he had gathered

from people who had seen the small size of John Meares’ tiny settlement [1788]

they reported that no buildings had been damaged by the Spanish

Quadra’s letter also was accompanied by statements from people who had been present a year later

when Chief Pilot of San Blas Esteban Jose Martinez seized the British vessels

Francisco de Viana Portuguese captain of the *Iphigenia Nubiana*

American Captain Robert Gray commanding the *Columbia Rediviva*

AmericanJoseph Ingraham of the *Hope*

Quadra reported that San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) had been maintained by Spain at great expense

Spanish efforts to develop the Pacific Northwest included a series of explorations

and the establishment to two colonies:

•Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove on San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound);

•Nunez Gaona at Neah Bay along the Strait of Juan de Fuca

on the coast of (today’s Washington state)

San Lorenzo (Nootka Sound) was first seen by Juan Josef Perez [1774]

and possession was taken by Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta [1775]

Esteban Jose Martinez had found no kind of establishment at all at San Lorenzo

Martinez took possession of San Lorenzo [1789] with demonstrations of joy by the Indians

thus Spain had prior claim to the region

Spain fortified Friendly Cove without any objection

from the Portuguese commander Joseph de Viana of the British ship *Iphigenia* *Nubiana*

then anchored in Friendly Cove [1789]

arrival of the American *Columbia Rediviva* and *Lady Washington* [1789]

led to their papers being examined by Chief Pilot of San Blas Esteban Jose Martinez

both ships were released after providing adequate explanations to address Spanish concerns

British schooner *North West America* and the sloop *Princess Royal* arrived soon after

these ships were permitted by Chief Pilot Martinez to depart [1789]

British Captain James Colnett of the *Argonaut* was concerned about entering Friendly Cove

but after assurances by Spanish officials his fears vanished [1789]

Captain Colnett wanted to establish a factory (trading post) at Friendly Cove

which led to Colnett’s arrest by Martinez and the capture of the *Argonaut*

Colnett was sent to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

British Captain Thomas Hudson and the *Princess Royal* received the same treatment [1789]

Thus Spain has nothing to deliver to the to British nor was payment of any damages due

however, to preserve peace, Quadra was prepared to cede to the British

the houses and gardens that had been constructed -- an area of about one-half acre

without relinquishing the legitimate claims of Spain

further, Quadra would move to the settlement of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

the Strait of Juan de Fuca would constitute the northern boundary of Spanish territory

Britain would have no claim south of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

British ships ought not to pass into Spanish waters south of Strait of Juan de Fuca

waters north of the Strait of Juan de Fuca would provide free commerce

to both Spain and Great Britain and no establishments should be undertaken

without permission from the other nation

Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove would remain the most northerly Spanish settlement

British Captain Vancouver gave all of these documents to Thomas Dobson to translate

Dobson served as one of the mates on supply ship *Daedalus* -- this task took considerable time

VANCOUVER HAD NO INTENTION OF ACCEPTING ONLY ONE-HALF ACRE OF GROUND

British Captain George Vancouver pointed out the Neah Bay colony of Nunez Gaona

had been organized long after the [1790] treaty between these two nations

Vancouver did not believe any British settlement north of San Francisco

had been founded in the period covered by the agreement

thus Spain’s colonial effort should have no status either

BRITISH SAILORS UNDERTAKE VARIOUS NECESSARY PROJECTS IN NOOTKA SOUND

All hands busily carried out their duties such as caulking, overhauling the rigging and sails,

cleaning the ship’s hold and storage rooms in anticipation of being filled with stores and provisions

from the supply ship *Daedalus --* August 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday August 30)

tents, observatory instruments, chronometers and other equipment were taken ashore

*Discovery’s* and *Chatham’s* yawls, cutters and launches were all in need of maintenance and repair

and were taken ashore where those tasks were begun

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES IN THE QUEEN CHAROLETTE ISLANDS

Sailing north from Nootka Sound Captain Gray met his sloop *Adventure* -- August 30, 1792

trading in the Queen Charlotte Islands

Trading had been successful with thousands of sea otter pelts collected between the two ships

many thousands of other skins had been acquired by the American traders

John Boit, Robert Haswell and John Hoskins recorded much of the year’s activities in their logs

Haswell noted: **“The ship** (*Adventurer*) **during the cruise had collected upwards of 700 sea otter skins and 15 thousand skins of various other species.”**[[88]](#footnote-88)

Haswell further noted in his book *Narrative*: **“The skins are bears, wolves, foxes, rein, fallow and moose deers** (sic)**, land otters, raccoons, brown minks, martins, beavers, wild cats, grey rabbits, the large grey and small brown squirrels common in our country, squirrels, and mice. The fallow deer, wolves, (which are grey) raccoons, squirrels and martins are found in great abundance….”**[[89]](#footnote-89)

*SUTIL* AND *MEXICANA* ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano on *Sutil* along with Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes on *Mexicana*

after taking leave from Captain Vancouver

they had continued surveying the northern portion of (Vancouver Island) on their own they reached the Spanish colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel at Friendly Cove

on Nootka Sound -- August 31, 1792

three days too late to take the claim first to circumnavigate Vancouver Island

this honor properly belonged to Captain George Vancouver

Both Spanish captains gave reports to Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

they described the wildness of the country along the inland channels they had explored

they noted Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) had a poor harbor and was unsafe for large ships

they told of Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo’s trouble with the natives at Fort Nunez Gaona

which made it unthinkable for the Spanish to remain in their colony

nothing they had seen compared to Nootka Sound in its present state of development

they regretted Nootka might have to be turned over to the British for no reason at all

with Neah Bay untenable and Nootka Sound in the hands of the British

what port would Spain have on its northern frontier?

Spanish Lieutenants Galiano and Valdes received new orders from Commandant Quadra -- August 31

Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Bruno de Heceta’s [1775] Expedition had identified

Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora(Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady) [1775]

this discovery (of the mouth of the Columbia River) was identified on many maps

as “Heceta’s Entrance” although its existence was pure speculation

both Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes and Spanish Captain Alejandro Malaspina

urged Lieutenant Dionisio AlcalaGaliano and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes

to investigate Heceta’s Entrance on their back to Acapulco, New Spain

LIEUTENANT GALIANO LEARNS OF AMERICAN CAPTAIN GRAY’S GREAT DISCOVERY

At Nootka Sound Galiano learned from Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

that American Captain Robert Gray had entered and named the Columbia River

Quadra gave Galiano a sketch map of the river’s mouth based on Gray’s information

Lieutenant Dionisio Alcala Galiano informed Vancouver that he and Lieutenant Cayetano Valdes

intended to take advantage of the serene weather which they had enjoyed since their arrival

and sail for the Spanish ports to the south either that night or early the next morning

Galiano obligingly agreed to carry a short letter to the British Lords of the Admiralty

that contained a brief abstract of transactions since the departure of *Discovery* and *Chatham*

from the Cape of Good Hope

SPANISH LIEUTENANTS GALIANO AND VALDES SAIL OUT OF NOOTKA SOUND

Having made their report, Galiano and Valdes sailed from Nootka Sound on the midnight tide

to return to Acapulco (New Spain)

while en route they sighted the Columbia River -- September 1, 1792

Galiano and Valdes did not enter the river

they claimed their ships were inappropriate for the task

however, Galiano did fix the location and determine that this was a river and not a strait

VANCOUVER AND QUADRA CONTINUE THEIR MUTUAL ADMIRATION

Walking to the observatory in the early morning Vancouver was stopped by Quadra

who informed the British captain -- September 1, 1792 (Vancouver’s Sunday September 2)

that he was pleased to say that he derived the greatest satisfaction

from finding a person of Vancouver’s character with whom he was to transact

the delicate business of resolving the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis

COMMANDANT QUADRA COMPOSES A SECOND LETTER TO VANCOUVER

Quadra still had received no response from Vancouver regarding his first proposal

in fact, Thomas Dobson had just completed the translation of the original documents

Commandant Quadra sat up late that night composing a new proposal

he suggested to Vancouver that British Captain John Meares’ claim was not as clear-cut

as had been thought by the British government

Quadra’s second letter withdrew his previous proposal to give Nootka Sound to the British

this reflected Quadra’s belief that Meares’ alleged injuries were imaginary -- September 2, 1792

Translation of this letter was delayed by the illness of Thomas Dobson

several days passed before Vancouver learned of Quadra’s change in position

COMMANDANT QUADRA ATTEMPTS TO APPEASE THE INDIANS

Once again Vancouver accompanied Quadra to breakfast

their conversation was very friendly -- September 3, 1792 (Vancouver’s September 4)

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra impressed on the Indians

his high personal opinion of Captain Vancouver and his men

Quadra proposed to Maquinna that he hold a ceremonial visit for the British the next morning

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RESPONDS TO COMMANDANT QUADRA’S LETTER

Vancouver noted that he did not consider himself authorized to enter into a retrospective discussion

of the respective rights and pretensions of the court of Spain or England -- September 3, 1792

those subjects of the [1790] Nootka Sound Convention that had undergone a full investigation

were mutually agreed upon and settled by ministers of the respective courts

Vancouver was empowered only to receive the territories which according to Article I stated

Commandant Quadra was authorized to restore **“the buildings and districts, or parcels of land which were occupied by the subjects of his Britannic Majesty in April, 1789, as well in the port of Nootka or of St. Lawrence, as in the other, said to be called Port Cox, and to be situated about 16 leagues distant from the former to the southward.”**

Vancouver hadno intention of admitting the British might be entitled to only one half acre

he noted the fifth article of the convention stated: **“It is agreed, That, as well in the places that are to be restored to the British subjects by virtue of the first article, as in all other parts of the north-western coast of North America, or of the islands adjacent, situated to the north of the parts of the said coast already occupied by Spain, wherever the subjects of either of the two powers shall have made settlements since the month of April, 1789, or shall hereafter, and shall carry on their trade without any disturbance or molestation.”**[[90]](#footnote-90)

he pointed out the Neah Bay colony of Nunez Gaona had been organized

long after the treaty between these two nations had been signed

and fell under the terms of the agreement as a **“‘port of free access,’ as well as all other establishments that have been, or that may hereafter be, formed from thence southward to port San Francisco, conceiving port San Francisco to be the northernmost settlement occupied by the subjects of His Catholic Majesty, in April, 1789.”**[[91]](#footnote-91)

Vancouver did not believe any Spanish settlement north of San Francisco

had been founded during the period covered by the agreement

thus Spain’s colonial effort should have no status

That evening Vancouver received a letter from Quadra -- September 3, 1792

inviting he and his officers to a banquet in the native village of Tahsheis

MAQUINNA HOLDS A BANQUET FOR THE SPANISH AND BRITISH OFFICERS

Commandant Quadra accompanied Captain Vancouver

on the *Discovery’s* yawl(similar to a sloop)

followed by a Spanish launch and the *Chatham’s* cutter

these carried as many English and Spanish officers as possible to Maquinna’s village of Tahsheis

Weather was cloudy and very pleasant with a favorable breeze

as the village of Tahaheis was reached -- 2:00 p.m. September 4, 1792 (Vancouver’s September 5)

Maquinna received his visitors with great pleasure

it was evident that his pride was not a little indulged by this display of attention

Maquinna conducted everyone through the village where they were welcomed as guests

all of the inhabitants conducted themselves in a most orderly manner

After visiting most of the houses the visitors arrived at Maquinna’s residence -- one of the largest

here they found Maquinna’s daughter

not long before she had been publicly and ceremoniously proclaimed sole heiress

to her father’s property, power and dominion

near her were seated three of Maquinna’s wives and numerous relatives

Vancouver offered presents to Maquinna and his daughter which were received with great approval

as were presents provided to the wives, brothers and other relatives

After these ceremonies were concluded a most excellent dinner was served by Commandant Quadra

Maquinna and his daughter were seated at the head table with the commandant and captain

Vancouver reported: **“After dinner Maquinna entertained the guests with warlike displays. A dozen men first appeared armed with muskets, and equipped with all of their appendages, who took their post in a very orderly manner within the entrance of the house, where they remained stationary, and were followed by eighteen very stout men, each bearing a spear or lance sixteen or eighteen feet long, strong and pointed with a long flat piece of iron which seemed to be sharp on both edges, and was highly polished; the whole however appeared to form but an awkward and unwieldy weapon. These men made several movements in imitation of attack and defense, singing at the same time several war songs, in which they were joined by those with muskets. Their different evolutions being concluded, I was presented with two small sea-otter skins, and the warriors having laid by their arms, performed a mask dance, which was ridiculously laughable, particularly on the part of Maquinna, who took considerable share in the representation.”**[[92]](#footnote-92)

British and Spanish officers contributed to the entertainment with songs and fife and drum music

this event was concluded with folk dances and country dances

After the banquet, the Spanish and British officers made camp several miles from the village

where a very pleasant night was enjoyed by everyone

BRITISH AND SPANISH OFFICERS RETURN TO FRIENDLY COVE

Quadra, Vancouver and their men set out for Friendly Cove from their camp after breakfast

they did not arrive until about 5:00 p.m. September 5, 1792 (Vancouver’s Thursday September 6)

During their time together Quadra and Vancouver had developed a lasting friendship

they agreed to name the island where they had formed their friendship

**“Quadra and Vancouver Island” -- Vancouver insisted Quadra’s name appear first**

**(although that decision was ignored by British geographers**

**who identified the location as “Vancouver Island”)**

SEVERAL MEMBERS OF THE BRITISH CONTINGENCY FAVOR THE SPANISH POSITION

Several of Vancouver’s officers became convinced the Meares’ settlement really was small

they learned from Captain Henry Shepherd of the English brig *Venus*

that Meares was not above cheating his own partners out of property

Quadra informed Vancouver that his response to the Spanish position had been translated to him

negotiations had not gone well

Quadra insisted on Spain retaining Nootka Sound which Vancouver could not accept

Spain desired to set the Spanish-British boundary at the Strait of Juan de Fuca,

but Vancouver insisted on British rights being maintained as far as San Francisco

Vancouver also objected to the new Spanish post at Neah Bay

A deadlock prevailed after the second exchange of documents from Quadra

neither commander would change his mind although they continued to enjoy pleasant social visits

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER CAAMANO COMPLETES HIS INVESTIGATION IN (ALASKA)

Jacinto Caamano coasted southward from Russian-America waters on *Aranzazu*

he arrived at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound -- September 7, 1792

Caamano’s expedition did a thorough study of the coast between Nootka Sound and Bucarelli Bay

off the western coast of Prince of Wales Island (Alaska)

While in Nootka Sound British Captain George Vancouver was supplied

with Caamano’s chart of his cruise including a map of the Queen Charlotte Islands

(which was one later carried by Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton to England)

Caamano’s generosity motivated Vancouver to keep many Spanish names

these were added to the British map (and are still in use today)

(but no general report on Lieutenant-Commander Caamano’s investigation

of Russian-American waters was published by Spain until long afterward)

RESOLUTION OF THE NOOTKA CRISIS PROVES TO BE DIFFICULT

Commandant Quadra’s response to Captain Vancouver’s proposal to resolve the Nootka Crisis

was finally translated into English -- September 9, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday September 10)

Vancouver was surprised to learn the two negotiators were so far apart

Quadra informed Vancouver that by the terms of **“the first article of the Nootka Convention and the royal order of the Spanish King, he could only restore to His Britannic Majesty the edifices, districts, or portions of land which in April, 1789, were taken from his subjects; that he was in possession of full proof that the small hut the English had was not in existence on the arrival of Martinez, and that the then establishment of the Spaniards was not in the place where the British subjects had theirs. That if I did not think myself authorized to subscribe to the tenor of his commission and instructions, he would recommend that each should lay before his respective court all the circumstances of the pending negotiation, and wait for further instructions;…”**[[93]](#footnote-93)

BRIG *FENUIS AND ST. JOSEPH* ENTERS NOOTKA SOUND

*Fenis* and S*t. Joseph* under Portuguese Captain Joao de Barros Andrade flying a Portuguese flag

arrived at Nootka Sound -- mid-September 1792

Englishman Robert Duffin served as supercargo on board the ship

Duffin had been at Nootka Sound with John Meares [1788] and with James Colnett [1789]

both were involved in the events of the Nootka Sound Crisis

Vancouver asked Duffin for a sworn statement about the [1789] events at Nootka Sound

Duffin’s report contradicted the reports of Americans Robert Gray and Joseph Ingraham

that Quadra had been using to undermine Vancouver’s diplomatic position

Gray and Ingraham had sworn that John Meares never purchased any land

from the local indigenous Chief Maquinna

Duffin said Meares had in fact purchased all of Friendly Cove

this dispute was central to resolving the Nootka Crisis

Vancouver seemed to doubt the truth of Duffin’s account but confronted Quadra with the information

Quadra dismissed it claiming that Duffin could not be objective on the matter

Quadra sought a formal statement from Maquinna who came before a group assembled

at Quadra’s house, including Barros Andrade, captain of the *Fenis and St. Joseph*

all of whom were to serve as witnesses for an affidavit

Maquinna flatly denied selling Meares any land

he had only sold a bit of land in (Marvinas Bay) to the America John Kendrick

he had donated the land at Friendly Cove where the Spanish settlement stood

to Francisco de Eliza on the condition that the land be returned when the Spanish withdrew

Between the statements of Duffin and Maquinna negotiations between Vancouver and Quadra

reached a complete deadlock

TREATY NEGOTIATIONS MAKE LITTLE PROGRESS

Spanish negotiator Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra and British negotiator George Vancouver

came to no official agreement

Vancouver demanded all Spanish property north of San Francisco be surrendered

he especially believed Spain should turn over the entire settlement

of Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove and Nootka Sound

in truth, Vancouver’s demand could not be justified

Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra took a more reasonable position

Quadra believed the original treaty provided only for restoration of Meares’ property

and had nothing to do with claims south of the Strait of Juan de Fuca

Spain would maintain her claims north of San Francisco

Day after day they pleasantly bickered while meeting each night for a stately dinner

AN AGREEMENT TO DISAGREE IS REACHED

Autumn was fast approaching with its usual stormy weather

Vancouver wrote to Commandant Quadra: **“Would the governor restore the territories of Nootka and Clayoquot to the British?”**[[94]](#footnote-94)

Quadra answered that he could not

Vancouver responded: **“Then I shall consider Nootka a Spanish port until our governments reach some other decision.”**[[95]](#footnote-95)

Both Commandant Quadra and Captain Vancouver agreed to refer the matter

once again to their respective governments for final resolution

Quadra would remain at Nootka Sound only until the carpenters had finished

some additional accommodation to his apartments on board his little brig

then he would either wait for Vancouver’s departure and accompany him south

to any Spanish ports he might want to visit

or Quadra would sail and wait for Vancouver at any proper port

Quadra recommended San Francisco or Monterey for that purpose

Quadra announced that the store houses would immediately be cleared for use by the British

he requested Vancouver join him in a walk around the premises to evaluate the buildings

these appeared to be sufficiently secure and more extensive than Vancouver first believed

a large new oven had recently been built for the British and remained unused

houses had all been repaired and the gardeners were busily employed at their work

poultry, fowls and turkeys, were in excellent condition and in abundance

as were black cattle and swine -- Quadra said he should take only a sufficient quantity

for his passage to the southward to Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) leaving the rest

along with a large assortment of garden seeds for Broughton

Vancouver added both hogs and goats to leave with Broughton

whose needs were well enough provided for to allow him to live comfortably

Vancouver gave directions for clearing the store ship *Daedalus*

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER PREPARES TO LEAVE FRIENDLY COVE ON NOOTKA SOUND

Astonished British sailors were ordered to move supplies out of shore buildings

and place them back aboard the British ships

Vancouver turned his attention to reloading the *Chatham*

whose hold had been emptied to allow for inspection of the damage to the hull

when she became grounded

supplies from the *Daedalus* which were found to be in a deteriorated state were loaded by all hands

During these preparations Commandant Quadra and Captain Vancouver

agreed to a rendezvous in Monterey, California where they thought fresh orders might await them

VANCOUVER WAS UNSURE OF WHAT TO DO WITH PROPERTY ONCE HE RECEIVED IT

Vancouver’s orders were unclear regarding the territories he received for His Britannic Majesty

Vancouver assumed that maintaining the commercial advantages of Great Britain

in this part of the world was a goal as, perhaps, was a settlement at this important location

Vancouver placed Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton in charge of Nootka Sound

but only to insure proper conduct by the traders who frequented the area

governmental oversight would be provided strictly by Spanish officials

Vancouver, himself, would continue to follow His Majesty’s commands regarding exploration

until he received further instructions from the British government

ARRANGEMENTS ARE MADE BY THE SPANISH TO GOVERN NOOTKA SOUND

Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra -- September 17, 1792 (Vancouver’s Tuesday September18)

he informed Captain Vancouver that Spanish Lieutenant Jacinto Caamano

would be left in charge of the port until the arrival of the *Princesa*

commanded by Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo who would take command

Quadra noted the British government could be assured they would receive every consideration

Vancouver presented Quadra with a copy of the charts of his extensive survey

AMERICAN ROBERT GRAY SELLS THE SLOOP A*DVENTURE* TO COMMANDANT QUADRA

Sailing from the Queen Charlotte Islands Captain Robert Gray entered Nootka Sound

where he paid a social call -- September 21, 1792

he may have given a copy of a casual sketch of the entrance to the Columbia River

to Quadra at this time

it is known the British carried a rough drawing which they attributed to Gray

and was later used by Lieutenant-Commander Broughton of the *Chatham*

Gray sold the *Adventure* to Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

who paid a price of seventy-five choice sea otter pelts worth about $4,125

Commandant Quadra renamed the sloop the *Orcasitas*

he planned to give it as gift to Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo

SPANISH COMMANDANT QUADRA PREPARES TO SAIL OUT OF NOOTHKA SOUND

This day in Nootka Sound -- September 21, 1792 (Vancouver’s Saturday September 22)

was spent in cheerfulness and hilarity

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra planned to sail

to the colony of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) the next day

Commandant Quadra provided a farewell dinner in honor of British Captain George Vancouver

attended by most of the Spanish officers

Arrangements were made for Quadra and Vancouver to meet in the future

at the Royal Presidio of Monterey, California

COMMANDANT QUADRA DEPARTS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Commandant Quadra relinquished his command to Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano

who was temporarily left in charge of Nootka Sound

Quadra sailed the *Activa* and *Orcasitas* (Robert Gray’s former *Adventure)* out of Friendly Cove

to an exchange of thirteen-gun salutes

with Captain George Vancouver -- September 22, 1792 (Vancouver’s September 23)

SPAIN’S NUNEZ GAONA PROTECTS THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA’S ENTRANCE

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo had spent an anxious two months in the colony

wondering what his future held in store for him

Under the leadership of Salvador Fidalgo Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) had grown

small gardens introduced foreign vegetables such as: tomatoes, garlic, corn, cabbages, turnips,

carrots and lettuce

grains, fruits, an orchard and mastic trees carried from New Spain (Mexico) were planted

from this settlement the Spanish recorded scientific studies of local flora and fauna

language, songs, religion and customs of the native Makah people were preserved

maps of the region and key geographical locations were named

CHANGE OF COMMANDERS AT NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

(Captain Joseph Ingraham of the American brigantine *Hope* out of Boston

had spent the (summer) trading along the coast before stopping at Nootka Sound)

Ingraham arrived in Bahia de Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) from Nootka Sound -- September 24, 1792

bringing the news that Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo was to be ready to sail on the *Princesa*

when Commandant Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra arrived from Nootka Sound

Fidalgo was to go to Nootka Sound to take command of Santa Cruz de Nuca

and Fort San Miguel at (Friendly Cove)

until the two negotiating governments settled the fate of the colony

replacing temporary commander Jacinto Caamano

TINY BRITISH SHIP *JENNY* REACHES NEAH BAY

British trader Captain James Baker out of Bristol, England arrived at Neah Bay

with the little 78-ton schooner *Jenny*

*Jenny* was a former slave ship but British resentment toward slavery

encouraged the ship’s owners to take up the fur trade

Captain Baker was under orders not to talk about his activities or keep a ship’s log

as a consequence little is known about him or his voyage

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES IN NEAH BAY

Captain Robert Gray sailed the recently repaired *Columbia Rediviva* from Nootka Sound

arriving in Bahia Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- September 26, 1792

Captain Gray noted the presence of the *Hope* and Joseph Ingraham in the port

NUNEZ GAONA RECEIVES COMMANDANT QUADRA

Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra’s *Activa* and *Orcasitas* came within sight

of Nunez Gaona (at Neah Bay) -- evening of September 26, 1792

Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo’slaunch from the *Princesa*

carried out a light to meet the new arrivals

all three ships in the harbor, Spain’s *Princesa* America’s *Columbia Rediviva* and *Hope*

hoisted masthead lanterns to greet them

*Orcasitas* arrived safely and anchored beside the *Columbia Rediviva*

but *Activa* was still four leagues distant and having difficulty entering

Commandant Quadra’s *Activa* finally anchored in the harbor -- night of September 26, 1792

all of the ships fired salutes honoring the arrival of the commandant

All hands were concerned the Indians might take revenge

for Captain Gray’s previous sinking of a canoe and killing of all but two natives

Indians did a great deal of yelling in the night -- whites kept their guns ready

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY SAILS FROM NEAH BAY

After a successful trading season Captain Robert Gray sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* from Neah Bay

he fired a thirteen-gun salute to the Spanish flag as he exited -- September 28, 1792

(Captain Robert Gray held such high regard for his friendship with Commandant Quadra

that he named his next son Robert Don Quadra Gray)

*Columbia Rediviva* left the Pacific Northwest coast for the last time (she continued on via the Sandwich Islands [Hawaii] to Macau, China

there Captain Gray sold or traded the furs he had acquired for a cargo to be taken to Boston

where he arrived [July 1793])

SPANISH COLONY OF NUNEZ GAONA AT NEAH BAY IS LEFT TO COMMANDANT QUADRA

Spanish Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo departed from Bahia de Nunez Gaona

on the *Princesa* bound for Nootka Sound -- midafternoon September 29, 1792

after only four months (Washington State’s) first colony was abandoned

in favor of the more developed facility at Santa Cruz de Nuca on Friendly Cove

which was protected by Fort San Miguel

American trading ship *Hope* under Joseph Ingraham departed from Neah Bay the same day

with fifty-five excellent sea otter pelts bound for China by way of the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

(on the return trip to Boston Ingraham would pass by [Formosa]

becoming the first American to visit that island

*Hope* would make a second voyage the following year

both of these ventures were financial failures)

Tiny British merchant ship *Jenny* sailed with *Princesa* and *Hope* to Nootka Sound

SPANISH NUNEZ GAONA AT NEAH BAY IS ABANDONED

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra’s ships *Activa* and *Orcasitas* (former *Adventure)*

sailed out of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) -- mid-afternoon September 29, 1792

departure of the last Spanish officials marked the end of Spanish settlement

on (Washington’s) coast

After the Spanish left Makah Chief Tatoosh tore down the fort

and threw the bricks into a stream to show his contempt for whites

(Nunez Gaona was officially relinquished by the Spanish

under the terms of the third Nootka Sound Convention [1794])

(Spain officially relinquished its claim to this region under the [1819] Adam-Onis Treaty)

*FENIS AND ST. JOSEPH* SAILS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Portuguese brig *Fenis and St. Joseph* under Captain Joao de Barros Andrade

left Nootka Sound sailing for China -- October 1, 1792

Captain George Vancouver placed on board British Naval Lieutenant Zachary Mudge

with copies of journals, charts and logs, as well as reports from Vancouver

to the British government regarding the diplomatic impasse that had developed

(Zachary Mudge arrived in London [June 1793]

TINY MERCHANT SCHOONER *JENNY* ARRIVES IN NOOTKA SOUND

British Captain James Baker sailing from Neah Bay entered Nootka Sound -- October 6, 1792

*Jenny* had begun her trade expedition in Bristol, England [1791]

and had stopped for supplies at the island of (Oahu) in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

members of the crew had kidnapped two young native women, Raheina and Tymarow

Captain Baker asked Vancouver to return them to their home when he journeyed there

Vancouver agreed with Captain Baker’s request

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE BEGINS HIS SECOND EXPEDITION TO REACH THE PACIFIC

Alexander Mackenzie had dispatched two canoes of Nor’Westers a few days before he set out

to journey ahead to complete construction on a (winter) post on the upper Peace River

Alexander Mackenzie, six Canadian voyageurs and two Indian companions

left Fort Chipewyan on Lake Athabasca -- October10, 1792

they proceeded up the Slave River paddling toward the Rocky Mountains

in an effort to find a westerly running river on the Pacific side of the Rocky Mountains

Mackenzie was carrying Captain James Cook’s map of the northwest coast

Alexander Mackenzie was concerned about the winter freeze up

once ice covered lakes and rivers the canoes would be useless

no roads or even trails existed through the forest and the expedition would be sure to perish

As he had done during his first expedition [1789]

Mackenzie got his traveling companions out at unbelievably early hours

his men would be awakened and the canoe launched at 3:00 a.m.

for fear the river might freeze in the coming winter

he kept them paddling until exhaustion

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER DEPARTS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Vancouver accepted two kidnapped Hawaiians aboard the *Discovery*

Vancouver noted in his journal (misdated October 12, 1792): **“I received on board two young women for the purpose of returning them to their native country, the Sandwich Islands; which they had quitted in a vessel that arrived at Nootka…called the Jenny**[.] **Mr. Baker her commander very earnestly requested, that I would permit these two unfortunate girls to take a passage in the Discovery to Onehow** [Oahu]**,** **the island of their birth and residence; from whence it seems they had been brought, not only very contrary to their wishes and inclinations, but totally without the knowledge or consent of their friends or relations.”**

Captain Vancouver’s three vessels, *Discovery, Chatham* and *Daedalus* sailed out of Friendly Cove

on Nootka Sound -- October 11, 1792 (Vancouver’s Friday October 12)

headed for the Spanish port of San Francisco to complete their mapping of the California coast

from San Francisco to Monterey where Commandant Quadra was to be met

Vancouver was anxious to see if the British government had sent further instructions

or if Spain had provided new directions for Bodega y Quadra

(nothing had been received in Monterey)

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS EXPEDITION REACH THE PEACE RIVER

Mackenzie and his six Canadian voyageurs and two Indian companions

left the Slave River and entered the Peace River -- October 12, 1792

traveling upriver toward the river’s source

Canoe journeys were well known to the Canadian voyageurs who accompanied him

but the weather was so cold and raw that travel was already unpleasant

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER’S FLEET REACHES BULLFINCH (GRAYS) HARBOR

*Discovery, Chatham* and *Daedalus* passed Cape Flattery and reached the Quinault River

where two Indians in a canoe sold a pair of pelicans to the men of the *Chatham*

When Vancouver’s fleet reached American Captain Robert Gray’s Bullfinch Harbor

*Discovery* and *Chatham* continued on to investigate Captain Robert Gray’s large river

*Daedalus* under Thomas New was assigned to explore the area along with Master Joseph Whidbey

who took the *Discovery’s* launch to conduct a thorough survey of the harbor

*Daedalus* was forced to wait in the harbor three days for a change in the weather

before it was safe enough to attempt an exit [October 18]

Surveying Bullfinch Harbor proved to be difficult as the winds blew and rain poured

Whidbey named all of its prominent features, including “Point Hanson” on the southern tip

for James Hanson one of Vancouver’s lieutenants

Whidbey concluded the harbor was of little importance

he named the inlet “Gray’s Harbor” -- Vancouver later applied the name to his charts

(Bullfinch Harbor became today’s Grays Harbor -- no apostrophe)

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* CONTINUE SOUTH FROM GRAYS HARBOR

George Vancouver and William Broughton sailed south from Grays Harbor

to investigate American Captain Robert Gray’s claim of the Columbia River -- October 15, 1792

Vancouver became thoroughly enchanted by his Hawaiian guests Raheina and Tymarow

these two kidnapped Kanaka (Hawaiian) shipboard companions proved to be good company

Vancouver estimated their ages as fifteen and twenty respectively

while he criticized their kidnapping by the crew of the British trading ship *Jenny*

he pointedly noted in his journal that **“…they had been treated with every kindness and attention whilst under** [Captain James Baker’s] **protection.”**

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REACHES ITS FIRST PROTAGE

Mackenzie and his men reached a waterfall that required two considerable portages to bypass

here they found recent campfires showing the canoes dispatched a few days before

were not far ahead -- October 17, 1792

VANCOUVER AND BROUGHTON ARRIVE AT CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY’S RIVER

*Discovery* and *Chatham* reached the Columbia River -- October 19, 1792 (Vancouver’s October 20)

Vancouver did not want to risk the *Discovery*

he thought his ship was too large to be of use in exploring the river

*Discovery* made ready to proceed down the Pacific coast toward Monterey, California

*Chatham* stood at anchor waiting for favorable wind and tide to enter into the river’s mouth

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton began a detailed investigation of the river’s entrance

Broughton carried a copy of American Captain Robert Gray’s chart

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN ARRIVE AT AN EARLY FUR TRADING POST

After journeying seven days up the Peace River the weather turned unusually cold falling snow delayed the start for the day for an hour or two -- October 19, 1792

Alexander Mackenzie reached what was called the “Old Establishment”

he found that the men he had sent ahead had slept at the old trading post the previous night

and had carelessly set a large house on fire

had Mackenzie’s expedition not arrived when they did all of the buildings

would have been destroyed

On either side of Peace River there were extensive plains which offered pasture

for the great herds of buffalo

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE REACHES FORT VERMILLION

Mackenzie and his men arrived at North West Company’s Fort Vermillion -- October 20, 1792

where they were received with shouts of rejoicing and volleys from the guns

of the approximately three hundred Indians who lived there -- who now expected rum

Mackenzie stayed only long enough to give some advice and presents to the Indians

and instructions to his employees there before he continued up the river

it was constantly growing colder and ice on the Peace River was becoming a problem

Mackenzie always took whatever steps were necessary to hasten his progress up the Peace River

on one occasion when a conference with the Indians continued for too long

he distributed nine gallons of watered-down rum

in spite of his own belief that liquor was an evil for the natives

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LT.-COMMANDER BROUGHTON PART COMPANY

William Broughton guided the Chatham accompanied by several boats up the Columbia River

to explore and lay claim -- October 20, 1792 (Vancouver’s October Sunday 21, 1792)

*Chatham* had a rough entry past Cape Discovery into the river’s mouth across the sand bar

waves broke completely over Broughton’s ship smashing one of her small boats

Broughton found less water in the river than Captain Gray had reported as the river was at low tide

he thought the signs of high water must have been left by unusual floods

and remarked that Gray’s chart: **“did not much resemble what is purported to represent”**[[96]](#footnote-96)

he gave the river’s width repeatedly as half a mile or one-quarter mile

(actually at almost no point below the Cascade Mountains is it less than a mile wide

but one and a half miles is more usual)

Broughton consistently understated the size of the river

he insisted that it could never be used for navigation to save face with British Admiralty

after both he and Vancouver (and Captain James Cook before them)

had sailed past it without giving any notice

by showing the river’s mouth to be an inlet of the sea Broughton hoped to lay a British claim

in opposition to the legitimate discovery of American Captain Robert Gray

Broughton anchored for the night almost on the bar (near today’s Sand Island)

once safely inside the sand bar Broughton fired a cannon to signal his safe crossing

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER WILLIAM BROUGHTON MOVES UP THE COLUMBIA RIVER

Broughton sailed *Chatham* past Sand Island and entered a bay -- October 21, 1792 (Vancouver’s 22nd)

there he was surprised to discover the small merchant ship *Jenny* under Captain James Baker

Baker had also learned of the existence of the river from Captain Gray

Broughton fired a cannon as a signal of the sighting to Captain Vancouver

who was anchored outside the mouth of the river

Vancouver heard the cannon fire from the *Chatham*

and correctly guessed Broughton had found a ship inside the sandbar

Broughton had no conversation with Captain Baker at that time

but he named “Baker’s Bay” in honor of his fellow Englishman Captain James Baker

this was the first anchorage inside the river deep enough to prevent grounding at low tide

*Chatham* moved about a mile and a quarter inside the mouth of the river

to the vicinity a large deserted Indian village (on today’s Chinook Point, Washington)

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON INVESTIGATES THE COLUMBIA RIVER

William Broughton spent three weeks on the Columbia River moving *Chatham* from place to place

nothing about the Columbia River, so far as Broughton could see, matched Gray’s description

Broughton voiced doubts that Gray had ever been into the river itself

he did not take into account the Yankee had entered during spring floods

and the *Chatham* during low water season

Broughton found navigation difficult and constantly checked the depth

until he determined he could not safely continue up the river aboard his ship

Broughton continued his exploration in *Chatham’s* pinnace -- October 22, 1792 (Vancouver’s 23rd)

he left *Chatham* about twenty miles above the bar and led several small boats

taking soundings and observing he charted and named many geographic features along the way

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER BELITTLES CAPTAIN GRAY’S COLUMBIA RIVER

British Captain George Vancouver noted in his ship log: **“The river Mr. Gray mentioned should from the latitude he assigned to it, have existence in the bay south of Cape Disappointment. This we passed on the forenoon of the 27th** [October 26]**; and as I then observed, if any inlet should be found, it will be a very intricate one, and inaccessible to vessels of our burden, owing to the reefs and broken water which appeared in its neighborhood. Mr. Gray stated that he had been several days attempting to enter it, which he at length was unable to effect in consequence of a very strong outset.... I was thoroughly convinced, as were also most persons of observation on board, that we could not possibly have passed any safe navigable opening, harbour, or place of security for shipping on this coast, from Cape Mendocino to the promontory of Classett; nor had we any reason to alter our opinions, notwithstanding that theoretical geographers have thought proper to assert, in that space, the existence of arms of the ocean, communicating with a Mediterranean sea, and extensive rivers, with safe and convenient ports. These ideas, not derived from any source of substantial information, have, it is much to be feared, been adopted for the purpose of giving unlimited credit to the traditional exploits of ancient foreigners, and to undervalue the laborious and enterprising exertions of our own countrymen in the noble science of discovery.”[[97]](#footnote-97)**

Vancouver turned the *Discovery* toward San Francisco where he would take up his coastal survey

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON CONTINUES ON THE COLUMBIA RIVER

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton sailed *Chatham’s* pinnace up the Columbia

he named “Mount Hood” (Oregon) -- October 29, 1792

in honor of British Admiral Samuel Hood, 1st Viscount Hood

who had been a British naval officer during the (American Revolution)

WILLIAM BROUGHTON CLAIMS THE COLUMBIA RIVER FOR GREAT BRITAIN

Broughton reached the farthest point up the Columbia River -- October 29, 1792 (Vancouver’s 30th)

arriving at (today’s eastern Multnomah County east of Portland and northwest of Mount Hood)

Landing in full view of a majestic peak he called Mount Hood Broughton went ashore

in the moonlight he formally took possession of the country in the name of King George III

at Possession (Cottonwood) Point (above Washougal, Washington)

even though Spanish Captain Bruno de Heceta had found indications of a great river [1775]

but could not confirm the fact and named the area “Rio San Roc” (Rogue)

Spain subsequently named the land near Rio San Roc “Heceta”

and American Captain Robert Gray had entered and named the Columbia River

in honour of his ship the Columbia Rediviva [May 18, 1792]

(this event later was used by Great Britain during the boundary dispute with the United States)

able-bodied seaman Alexander Bell wrote in his journal that the river **“might communicate with some of the Lakes on the opposite side of the continent”[[98]](#footnote-98)**

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton and his men camped on (Government Island)

(opposite Ellsworth Springs in today’s Vancouver, Washington)

MACKENZIE ARRIVES AT HIS WINTER CAMP AT A FORK IN THE PEACE RIVER

(Two North West Company traders had been dispatched by Roderick Mackenzie [the prior summer]

to cut and square timbers for the construction of a factory [trading post], “Fort Fork”

[near the junction of the Peace and Smoky rivers -- today’s Peace River, Alberta, Canada]

they were joined by about seventy Indians who assisted them in their work

enough timber had been prepared to build a considerable fort

and a ditch had been dug to set up the walls of the stockade

open plains on either side of the river in this region attracted buffalo, elk, wolves, fox and bear

while a ridge of mountains to the west was inhabited by great numbers of deer)

After fifty-seven days of constant effort paddling against the current for three hundred miles

Mackenzie’s men were exhausted

Alexander Mackenzie’s arrival at Fort Fork -- November 1, 1792

was greeted by shouts of celebration and volleys from the guns

Mackenzie’s first business was to call the Indians together

they drank the rum, smoked tobacco, listened to Mackenzie’s advice

and promised everything he asked

BRITISH LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER BROUGHTON RETURNS DOWN THE COLUMBIA

Provisions ran low and Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton gave up further effort

William Broughton had made a careful examination of Columbia River as far upriver

as the mouth of the Sandy River (near today’s Troutdale, Oregon)

Broughton estimated he had journeyed one hundred miles from the mouth

eighty miles beyond the point reached by the American Captain Robert Gray

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton’s expedition turned back downriver

they reached the *Chatham* -- November 2, 1792

LIEUTENANT ALFREZ MANUEL QUIMPER REACHES SAN BLAS, NEW SPAIN

After a difficult Pacific Ocean crossing from Manila, the Philippines, Quimper

sailed the frigate *San Jose de las Animas* into San Blas, New Spain (Mexico) -- November 6, 1792

Once in San Blas Lieutenant Quimper learned that orders had been issued [on October 16]

appointing him special assistant to his friend Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

who was in failing health but did not want to resign his command

while the international situation was deteriorating and war was likely

(Quimper would hold this position until [February 1794] when Bodega y Quadra died

Quimper himself was in poor health

he was granted permission to return to Spain [June 1795])

WILLIAM BROUGHTON RETURNS TO THE MOUTH OF THE COLUMBIA RIVER

*Chatham*, due to foul weather, was forced to remain in the Columbia River

along with the merchant ship *Jenny*

On this occasion, Lieutenant-Commander Broughton had a conversation with Captain James Baker

he learned the *Jenny* had been inside once before shortly after the *Columbia Rediviva*

butwhile at Nootka Sound Baker had said nothing about having entered Columbia River

as he had been instructed by the ship’s owners

Captain Baker, now familiar with the channel, led Broughton and the *Chatham*

across the sandbar and out of the river -- November 10, 1792

*Chatham* and *Jenny* separated in the stormy weather

as Broughton sailed for California to join Captain Vancouver and the *Discovery*

Captain Baker continued to trade for furs along the Pacific coast

On his charts William Broughton showed the Columbia River’s mouth as an estuary

he believed the “real river” began twenty-two miles inside Cape Disappointment

suspiciously, this was two miles beyond Captain Robert Gray’s deepest penetration

both he and Vancouver agreed that what Gray entered was not the river itself but merely a bay

Broughton asserted that he was the true discoverer of the great river

in the hope this claim might override Gray’s legitimate discovery

Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton, in fact, made a considerable addition

to Columbia River geography when he named “Baker Bay,” “Puget’s Island,” “Walker Island,”

“Young’s River,” “Young’s Bay,” “Tongue Point,” “Menzies’ Island,” “Whidbey’s River,”

“Mount Hood” (in honor of Lord Hood) “Point Vancouver,” “Oak Point,”

“Broughton Strait” and he sited “Coffin Mountain” in the distance

this was an Indian burial place where the dead were placed in canoes

(Captain George Vancouver later commented on Broughton’s work: **“Mr. Broughton gave up the idea of any further examination, and was reconciled to this measure, because even thus far the river could hardly be considered as navigable for shipping. Previously to his departure, however, he formally took possession of the river and the country in its vicinity, in His Britannic Majesty’s name, having every reason to believe that the subjects of no other civilized nation or state had ever entered this river before; in this opinion he was confirmed by Mr. Gray’s sketch, in which it does not appear that Mr. Gray either saw or was ever within five leagues** (fifteen miles) **of its entrance.”**[[99]](#footnote-99)

(No effort was made by the British to change the name of the river provided by Captain Robert Gray

it was even called the Columbia River on Vancouver’s map [published in 1798]

Vancouver even accepted the name of Point Adams named in honor of John Adams

but rather than keeping Gray’s identification of Point Hancock for the great northern headland

he changed it back to Captain John Meares Cape Disappointment

to emphasize the British discovery of the great river

Vancouver’s map added most of the important geographic features of the coast

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER AND THE *DISCOVERY* REACH SAN FRANCISCO

*Discovery* sailed into the Golden Gate and anchored at the Spanish fort

at the Royal Presidio of San Francisco -- November 14, 1792

British officers and crewmen received a friendly and helpful reception from the Spanish

When Vancouver’s other ships, the *Chatham* under Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton

and the supply ship *Daedalus* under Master Thomas New arrived in San Francisco

reports of their expedition were made by Broughton and Sailing Master Joseph Whidbey

(After a visit of a few days, Vancouver’s fleet sailed south along the coast of California

visiting Chumash Indian villages at Point Conception and the Mission San Buenaventura)

UPPER PEACE RIVER FREEZES OVER

Although game was plentiful in this area the Peace River separated Alexander Mackenzie

from the source of food

since the river could not be crossed there was a potential that food could become scarce

Peace River froze over allowing Mackenzie’s men to walk across to hunt -- November 22, 1792

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER’S FLEET ARRIVES IN MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

*Discovery, Chatham* and *Daedalus* reached

Monterey, California -- November 25, 1792 (Vancouver’s Monday November 26)

Captain Vancouver was well received Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

Vancouver was resupplied free of charge

as the British captain reported in his journal: **“The Spanish officers with whom we had the honor of being acquainted, demanded from us the highest sentiments of esteem and gratitude. Even the common people were entitled to our good opinion and respect, as they uniformly subscribed to the exemplary conduct of their superiors, by a behavior that was very orderly and obliging.”**[[100]](#footnote-100)

*CHATHAM* RECEIVES A NEW COMMANDER

British Captain Vancouver and Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

agreed that Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton should proceed to Europe

traveling across New Spain (Mexico) carrying communications from Vancouver and Quadra

to the courts of Great Britain and Spain regarding the agreement they had reached

on the resolution of the Nootka Sound Crisis

this was, in essence, their agreement to disagree

(it would be two more years before the dispute was settled)

Vancouver believed the arrival of either Lieutenant Zachary Mudge who was crossing Siberia

or Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton in London would result in a speedier resolution

Vancouver expected a reply from London about Nootka Sound sometime the following year

William Broughton began preparations to return to Europe

he was given dispatches, reports and maps from Vancouver who sought further instructions

Lieutenant Peter Puget was placed in command of *Chatham* in spite of objections from Dr. Menzies

who would have preferred the honor go to his friend Lieutenant James Johnstone

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MAKES WINTER CAMP IN THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

North West Company trappers completed the 120 feet square stockade of Fort Fork

at the junction of the Peace and Smoky rivers at the falls of the Peace River

three hundred miles up the Peace River

(Fort Fork was located near the site of present settlement of Peace River, Alberta)

Construction was begun on six cabins with fireplaces for the men -- December 7, 1972

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE WORKS WITH THE INDIANS

Indian legends told of a time when no timber grew on the hills and plains along Peace River

they were covered with moss and reindeer were the only animal available for food

when timber spread on across the hills elk and buffalo appeared

reindeer withdrew to the highlands called “Deer Mountain”

Mackenzie made note of the Indians living in the vicinity of Fort Fork

these natives used bows and snares but since the first trapper arrived on the Peace River [1786]

they had become well-armed -- bows were little used and snares were unknown

they were excellent hunters and such hard workers that they were extremely lean

and were always in the best physical condition

when a relative died

men blackened their faces, cut off their hair and gashed their arms with knives and arrows

women often cut off a finger at the death of a favorite son, husband, or father

Mackenzie continued to trade with the Indians in the area throughout the winter

he was receiving plenty of beaver pelts from the natives but he faced the usual annoyances

Indians showed a tendency to quarrel among themselves

especially over liquor, gambling and women

however, on the whole winter passed quietly

NOR’WESTER ALEXANDER MACKENZIE IS FORCED TO TAKE UP MEDICINE

Using simple remedies and by paying close attention to each case

he cured a number of severe ailments among the Indians

on one occasion when a combination of rum and soap failed to cure the victim,

he bled him as was the state of medicine at that time

when the patient recovered Mackenzie’s reputation as a healer was established

Mackenzie described another example: **“On my arrival here last fall, I found that one of the young Indians had lost the use of his right hand by the bursting of a gun, and that his thumb had been maimed in such a manner as to hang only by a small strip of flesh. Indeed, when he was brought to me his wound was in such an offensive state and emitted such a putrid smell that it required all the resolution I possessed to examine it. His friends had done everything in their power to relieve him, but as it consisted only in singing about him and blowing upon his hand, the wound, as may be well imagined, had got into the deplorable state in which I found it. I was rather alarmed at the difficulty of the case, but as the young man’s life was in a state of hazard, I was determined to risk my surgical reputation, and accordingly took him under my care. I immediately formed a poultice of bark, stripped from the roots of the spruce fir, which I applied to the wound, having first washed it with the juice of the bark. This proved a very painful dressing. In a few days, however, the wound was clean and the putrid flesh around it destroyed. I wished very much in this state of the business to have separated the thumb from the hand, which I well knew must be effected before the cure could be performed, but he would not consent to that operation till, by the application of vitriol, the flesh by which the thumb was suspended was shriveled almost to a thread. When I had succeeded in this object I perceived that the wound was closing rather faster than I had desired. The salve I applied on the occasion was made of the Canadian balsam, wax, and tallow dropped from a burning candle into water. In short, I was so successful that about Christmas my patient engaged in a hunting party, and brought me the tongue of an elk…. When he left me I received the warmest acknowledgments, both from himself and the relations with whom he departed, for my care of him. I certainly did not spare my time or attention on the occasion, as I regularly dressed the wound three times a day during the course of a month.”**[[101]](#footnote-101)

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MOVES FROM HIS TENT TO HIS HOUSE

Work was underway at Fort Fork on houses for the men who were lying out in the cold and snow

with only an open shed and tents for shelter

Alexander Mackenzie’s house was completed -- just before Christmas

long before this event the temperature had fallen far below zero

Mackenzie made note of the situation: **“It would be considered by the inhabitants of a milder climate as a great evil to be exposed to the weather at this rigorous season of the year, but these people are inured (hardened) to it, and it is necessary to describe in some measure the hardships which they undergo without a murmur, in order to convey a general notion of them.”**[[102]](#footnote-102)

CONSTRUCTION OF FORT FORKIS COMPLETED

Construction of the fort had started none too soon

two days after Christmas the cold was so severe **“that the axes of the workmen became almost as brittle as glass”**[[103]](#footnote-103)

however, cabins with fireplaces for everyone were completed

and all of the tents abandoned -- December 27, 1792

here it was here that Alexander Mackenzie and his men would spend the winter

Alexander Mackenzie reported on his traveling companions: **“The men who were now with me** (but who had arrived there in the spring to begin construction and establish trade) **left this place in the beginning of last May and went to the Rainy Lake in canoes, laden with packs of fur, which, from the immense length of the voyage and other occurring circumstances, is a most severe trial of patience and perseverance; there they do not remain a sufficient time for ordinary repose, when they take a load of goods in exchange, and proceed on their return, in a great measure, day and night. They had been arrived near two months, and all that time had been continually engaged in very toilsome labor, with nothing more than a common shed to protect them from the frost and snow. Such is the life which these people lead, and is continued with unremitting exertion till their strength is lost in premature old age.”**[[104]](#footnote-104)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SENDS HIS SUPPLY SHIP TO AUSTRALIA

Captain Vancouver decided to send the *Daedalus* to Port Jackson, New South Wales, Australia

*Daedalus* was partially unloaded at Monterey, California and some sick sailors were discharged

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra offered cattle and sheep

to be consumed during the voyage to Port Jackson

and Spanish sailors were dispatched to make complete the crew requirements of the *Daedalus*

which had been depleted by death, desertion and illness

*Daedalus* sailed from Monterey, California under Master Thomas New -- December 29, 1792

SPAIN MAINTAINS ONLY ONE COLONY IN THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST

Santa Cruz de Nuca and Fort San Miguel remained a lonely Spanish outpost

on the northern frontier of the Spanish empire

Santa Cruz de Nuca was commanded by Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

(eventually Fidalgo returned to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

Spanish Lieutenant Ramon Saavedra with a force of one hundred twenty men

of the First Free Company of Volunteers of Catalonia

sat out the winter at Nootka Sound --1792-1793

his main duty was to warn off French and American trading vessels

it had been agreed that only Spanish and English vessels would be allowed at Nootka Sound

Winter 1792-1793 was very difficult

salmon run had been later than usual the (preceding fall)

Spanish and Indians alternately had to help each other ward off starvation

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER WILLIAM BROUGHTON TRAVELS WITH QUADRA

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton left Vancouver’s expedition -- January 14, 1793

he traveled as a passenger with Commandant Quadra on the *Activa* to San Blas, New Spain

Broughton received permission from Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra

to cross New Spain (Mexico) carrying dispatches, reports and maps written by Vancouver

for the British government

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton also carried a copy of Narvaez’s map

(another copy of this was used by the United States after inheriting Spain’s claim

to demonstrate that Spain had discovered the San Juan Islands first

and thus the islands should become the possession of the United States)

(from San Blas, Broughton proceeded overland to Vera Cruz, New Spain

next Broughton was to take a ship to England to deliver Vancouver’s messages to London

Lieutenant-Commander Broughton arrived in London [July 1793]

one month after Lieutenant Zachary Mudge had arrived in China)

CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY ARRIVES IN CANTON, CHINA

American Captain Robert Gray had sailed the *Columbia Rediviva* from Neah Bay [September 1792]

to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) and into Macau, China

where he exchanged his year’s take of furs for tea, nankeens, sugar and porcelain -- 1793

Preparations were undertaken for the final leg of his journey back to Boston

NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS DIMINISHES IN IMPORTANCE IN EUROPE

Revolutions in the United States and France caused grave concerns in Great Britain and Spain

where kings ruled and the government responded to their Royal demands

In an effort to save their monarchies, England and Spain became allies against republican France

Spanish and English hard feelings over conflicting interests at Nootka Sound

dwindled in importance

For practical reasons, Spain decided to abandon her claims on the Northwest Coast

and try (with utter futility as it soon turned out) to hang on to her imperial possessions

in (today’s American Southwest)

SECOND NOOTKA CONVENTION IS SIGNED IN MADRID, SPAIN

This was the second treaty between the Kingdom of Spain and the Kingdom of Great Britain

it was signed to resolve the conflict triggered by the seizure of British ships and property

by Spanish naval Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza at Nootka Sound [1789]

this treaty was signed to supersede the [1790] Nootka Agreement -- February 12, 1793

British Captain John Meares was awarded 210,000 Spanish dollars

half the amount of his claim

Spain accepted 42º north (California-Oregon border) from the Rockies to the Pacific Ocean

as the international boundary line:

•Spain held the land south of 42º

Spain abandoned all clams to Nunez Gaona at Neah Bay

a small Spanish garrison of Spanish soldiers remained at Friendly Cove

at Nootka Sound until a final determination could be achieved;

•Great Britain held the land north of 42º

Britain was to send a British officer was to go the through the formality

of unfurling a flag as a sign of possession;

•both countries were free to use Nootka Sound to conduct trade with the natives;

•they could make temporary settlements on any part of the coast not already occupied

and erect needed temporary buildings,

but no permanent buildings were to be constructed;

•neither country could claim sovereignty or attempt to exclude the other nation

•additional details would be resolved by respective national representatives at Nootka

these meetings would take place at some future date to be announced

PACIFIC NORTHWEST BECOMES AN AREA OF INTERNATIONAL DISPUTE

In addition to Spain and Great Britain who had negotiated a settlement to their dispute

two other nations also held claims to the Northwest between 42º and 54º-40’north latitude:

•United States held a claim of discovery -- American Captain Robert Gray’s Columbia River;

•Russia had the claim of settlement

with the establishment of posts for the fur trade with the Alaskan natives

and Fort Ross along the Sacramento River in northern California

BRITISH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVES IN THE SANDWICH ISLANDS (HAWAII)

*Discovery* sailed around the north side of the Big Island of Hawaii

*Chatham*, now under the command of Lieutenant Peter Puget, sailed around the south side both British ships met at Kealakekua Bay on the Kona Coast

on the big island of Hawaii -- middle of February 1793

Vancouver had access to scientific equipment that allowed him to make adjustments

to improve the accuracy of his own instruments

he also adjusted his ship’s log to reflect the correct day and date for his entries

Vancouver ordered numerous improvements to the small boats that did the detailed survey work,

he implemented changes that provided better shelter for his crewmen

and developed improved methods to store supplies

(these improvements would enable his crews to survey to about 56°30’ North latitude

which allowed for the charting one of the most complex coastlines in the world

until weather ended the survey season)

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION RETURNS TO MANILA, THE PHILIPPINES

(Spanish explorer Alejandro Malaspina aboard the corvette *Descubierta*

andJose de Bustamante y Guerra sailing the corvette *Atrevida* crossed the Pacific Ocean

from Acapulco, New Spain by way of the Mariana Islands to Manila in the Philippines)

there Spanish Lieutenant Manuel Quimper helped they to create charts of their findings

when the coastal surveys were completed by Malaspina and Guerra

they made a side-trip to Macau, China

from China both corvettes sailed southwest landing at Espiritu Santo in the New Hebrides Islands

then continued on to southern New Zealand

after a visit to Dusky Sound, New Zealand, previously explored by British Captain James Cook,

Malaspina’s scientific expedition explored Doubtful Sound in New Zealand

which no European had visited before)

From New Zealand Spain’s scientific expedition sailed west to Port Jackson, Australia

(part of Sydney today) where they arrived -- early March 1793

about five years after the British first colonized Australia

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER MAKES AN IMPACT ON THE KONA COAST

Hawaiian natives were frustrated by the demeaning treatment they usually received from Europeans

as a result of this mistreatment they had become less than friendly

because of this circumstance Vancouver’s visit in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) was difficult

maintaining order consumed much of his time and energies

Captain Vancouver took a keen interest in the Hawaiian natives

he met John Young, a British Sailor living on the island of Hawaii, who acted as an interpreter

Young helped Vancouver negotiate with Hawaiian King Kamehameha

Vancouver formed an alliance with Kamehameha to protect the Hawaiian Islands from foreigners

(that agreement, however, was never officially acknowledged by the British government)

Kamehameha attempted to consolidate his power as a first step to unify the islands

with Vancouver’s help he managed to gain control of the Big Island of Hawaii [1793]

Vancouver conducted surveys of the waters around the Sandwich (Hawaiian) Islands

and impressed Kamehameha with the reach of British power

At the same time Dr. Archibald Menzies collected Hawaiian flora and fauna specimens

HMS *DISCOVERY* AGAIN SAILS TO THE NORTHERN COAST OF NORTH AMERICA

With access to several chronometers and other instruments available in the Sandwich Islands

Vancouver corrected his navigational instruments and the day and date of his journal entries

Captain Vancouver sailed out of his anchorage along the Kona Coast of the big island of Hawaii

to resume his investigation of the North American coast -- March 30,1793

Lieutenant Peter Puget aboard the *Chatham* accompanied

Vancouver left behind in the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) some cattle and sheep

and plants collected in California by Dr. Archibald Menzies

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION SAILS FROM AUSTRALIA

Alejandro Malaspina andJose de Bustamante y Guerra stayed in Australia for about a month

while they visited there they established friendly relations with the colonists

as the Spanish collected many specimens of flora, fauna, and minerals and conducted

scientific experiments, including astronomical and hydrographic observations

Malaspina also observed the British settlement itself, taking special note

of any potential threat to Spanish interests in the Pacific

he was concerned that an increasing British presence in the Pacific

might jeopardize Spanish trade between the Americas and the Philippines

which Manila galleons had conducted for over two centuries

with virtually no outside interference

Malaspina’s and Guerra’s Spanish corvettes *Descubierta* and *Atrevida*

left Port Jackson, Australia -- April 11, 1793

they sailed northeast to Tonga, then known as the Friendly Islands

(Captain James Cook had visited the southern Tonga Islands [1773])

Malaspina opted to visit the northern archipelago (now known as Vava’u)

PRESIDENT GEORGE WASHINGTON SETS UNITED STATES FOREIGN POLICY

President Washington and Secretary of State Jefferson believed Great Britain would march south

from Canada and attack New Spain (Mexico) through the Western territory claimed by the U.S.

and capture all of Spain’s western territory

however, President George Washington was leery of any foreign entanglement

he believed the young United States of America was too weak and unstable

to fight another war -- especially with a major European power

he insisted the president alone, without the guidance of congress, could set foreign policy

President Washington responded to the rising threats from Europe by insisting that the United States

would observe a strict neutrality [in the affairs of Europe] so long as circumstances and events

permitted the United States to do so -- Declaration of Neutrality -- April 22, 1793

Neither Jefferson nor Hamilton and their followers agreed with President Washington’s policy

Jefferson’s anti-British Democrat-Republican expansionists were not happy

with lack of support for American settlers facing the dangers of living on the frontier

and the opportunity to remove Britain from America’s northern regions

Hamilton’s pro-British Federalists were not happy with neutrality toward Spain

especially when Florida remained Spanish territory on America’s southern boundary

AMERICAN FUR TRAPPERS WORK THE UPPER MISSOURI RIVER REGION

While under French control, St. Louis quickly emerged as a trading center

and the village grew into an oasis of wealth, culture and privilege

American merchants in St. Louis were encouraged by the new United States government

to form business syndicates -- 1793

American trappers were to explore and occupy the Upper Missouri River

above the mouth of the Platte River

hardy independent trappers also pushed beyond the Mandan Villages (in today’s North Dakota)

America’s St. Louis fur syndicate was interested in trade -- not exploration

they were reluctant to establish defensive garrisons to protect their business interests

because of French domination over the region

THOMAS JEFFERSON SENDS AN EXPEDTION TO THE WEST

Thomas Jefferson became Vice President of American Philosophical Society in Philadelphia -- 1793

he convinced the Society to fund famous French world traveler and botanist Andre Michaux

on a one-man expedition to explore the Missouri River and then travel on to the Pacific Ocean

in his instructions, Jefferson wrote, **“As a channel of communication between these states and the Pacific Ocean the Missouri, so far as it extends, presents itself under circumstances of unquestioned preference. It has therefore been declared as a fundamental object of the subscription (not to be dispensed with) that this river shall be considered and explored as a part of the communication sought for.... You will then pursue such of the largest streams of that river as shall lead by the shortest way and the lowest latitudes to the Pacific Ocean.... It would seem by the latest maps as if a river called Oregon, interlocked with the Missouri for a considerable distance, and entered the Pacific Ocean not far southward of Nootka Sound. But the society are** (sic) **aware that these maps are not to be trusted so far as to be the ground of positive instruction to you. They therefore only mention the fact, leaving to yourself to verify it, or to follow such other as you shall find to be the real truth.”**[[105]](#footnote-105)

Michaux set out on his trek across North America but never returned -- he was never heard from again

SPANISH VICEROY SENDS ANOTHER EXPEDTION NORTH TO PROTECT SPAIN’S CLAIMS

Viceroy Juan Vicente de Guemes, 2nd Count of Revillagigedo, was annoyed

that British Lieutenant-Commander William Broughton had taken possession

ofSpanish Lieutenant-Commander Bruno de Heceta’s

Bahia de la Asuncion de Nuestra Senora(Bay of the Assumption of Our Lady),

Ensenada de Heceta (Heceta’s Entrance)and Rio San Rogue (Columbia River)

Viceroy Guemes considered founding a settlement there at once to protect Spain’s claim

but he reconsidered in light of the unsettled conditions between Spain and Great Britain

instead, the Spanish Viceroy sent Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza on *Activa* to lead an expedition

to examine the mouth of San Rogue (Columbia River) and the Oregon coast -- early spring 1793

his consort ship, *Mexicana,* was commanded by Lieutenant Juan Martinez y Zayas

(Eliza had spent three years [1790-1792] exploring and strengthening Spain’s northwest claim

he had been prevented by scurvy from making a complete survey of the Nootka Sound region

he did investigate Clayoquot Sound, the channels and islands of Gulf of Georgia,

he had named Senode Gaston [Bellingham Bay], Montana del Carmelo [Mount Baker]

and Eliza, Sucia, Lopez, Guemes and Fidalgo islands)

Lieutenant Eliza Zayas left San Blas, New Spain -- April 30, 1793

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MAKES FINAL PREPATIONS FOR HIS TREK TO THE PACIFIC

In addition to trading with the Indians Mackenzie had been busily preparing for his push

across the Rocky Mountains in an effort to reach the Pacific Ocean

he had ordered his old canoes to be repaired with bark and added four new ones

Six canoes were loaded with furs acquired from the natives and provisions purchased from the Indians

these were sent to Fort Chipewyan when ice left the Slave River -- May 8, 1793

Mackenzie’s private and public dispatches to the North West Company to date

also were sent downstream

Mackenzie kept his cousin, Alexander Mackay, who served as second in command of the expedition

he was a trader and explorer of admired abilities

(he was later to figure importantly in the fur business of the Far West)

Alexander Mackenzie’s twenty-five-foot-long birch bark canoe had been sewn by Indian women

it was four feet nine inches wide at the beam and twenty-six inches deep

Mackenzie noted it was **“…so light, that two men could carry her on a good road three or four miles without resting”**[[106]](#footnote-106) Mackenzie’s canoe was loaded with thirty ninety-pound packs -- 2,700 pounds

•some packs were composed of kegs of powder, musket balls and shot;

•some were bales of blankets, guns, knives, kettles, tobacco and trinkets for trade;

•some of the bales were food

in addition he and his men brought clothing, oilcloths to cover the packs when it rained,

a sail, a big kettle to cook in, a cordelling (tow) line to pull the canoe up rapids

and other equipment including scientific instruments to measure latitude and longitude

Heleft two men at Fort Forkto trade ammunition with the natives for furs

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE SETS OUT ON HIS SECOND GREAT EXPEDITION

Two Scotsmen Alexander Mackenzie the leader of the expedition to cross the Rocky Mountains

his cousin Alexander McKay who served as second in command were accompanied by

six Canadian voyageurs Joseph Landry, Charles Ducette, Francois Beaulieux, Baptiste Bisson,

Francois Courtois and Jacques Beauchamps

Landry and Ducette had accompanied Mackenzie on his [1789] adventure to the Arctic

two Plains Indians, one named Cancre, were hired to serve as hunters and interpreters

they also were used to introduce the whites to local natives along the route

and make assurances of the peaceful nature of the expedition

and a dog simply called “Our Dog”

Mackenzie’s nine-man expedition set out from Fort Fork up the Slave River -- 7:00 p.m. May 9, 1793

local Indians were a concern for Alexander Mackenzie

but only because he feared they would entice his two hunters to desert

At times one or both of the commanders, Mackenzie and Mackay, would leave the main party

to cut across country from one bend in the river to another exploring as they went

After paddling against a strong current all day they landed before eight on an island for the night

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION CONTINUES UP THE SLAVE RIVER

Mackenzie and his nine men set out -- 3:00 a.m. May 10, 1793

weather was clear and pleasant with a sharpness in the air

After traveling eleven miles with their heavy cargo of goods

Mackenzie’s canoe showed signs of needing repair and began to leak under the heavy load

he put ashore and repairs undertaken when they stopped for dinner -- noon

Mackenzie took this opportunity to establish his latitude

When they set out once again Mackenzie dropped his pocket compass into the river and lost it

his education in navigation acquired in England now became especially valuable

as the party paddled up the strong flowing Slave River Mackenzie spent much of his time

making observations: **“From the place which we quitted this morning the west side of the river displayed a succession of the most beautiful scenery I had ever beheld. The ground rises at intervals to a considerable height and stretches inward to a considerable distance; at every interval or pause in the rise there is a very gently ascending space or lawn, which is alternate with abrupt precipices** (cliffs) **to the summit of the whole, or, at least, as far as the eye could distinguish. This magnificent theatre of nature has all the decorations which the trees and animals of the country can afford it; groves of poplars in every shape vary the scene, and their intervals are enlivened with vast herds of elks and buffaloes, the former choosing the steeps and uplands, and the latter preferring the plains. At this time the buffaloes were attended with their young ones, who were frisking about them; and it appeared that the elks would soon exhibit the same enlivening circumstance. The whole country displayed an exuberant verdure** (greenness)**; the trees that bear a blossom were advancing fast to that delightful appearance, and the velvet rind of their branches reflecting the oblique rays of a rising or setting sun, added a splendid gaiety to the scene, which no expressions of mine are qualified to describe. The east side of the river consists of a range of high land covered with the white spruce and the soft birch, while the banks abound with the alder and the willow. The water continued to rise, and the current being proportionately strong, we made a greater use of setting poles rather than paddles.**[[107]](#footnote-107)

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE PEACE RIVER

Setting out at 4:00 a.m. May 12, 1793

Mackenzie his cousin Alexander Mackay, his six voyageurs and two Indian hunters

reached the location where the Peace River enters the Slave River

they entered the Peace River and began their journey toward the Rocky Mountains

Most of the Indians they encountered were Rocky Mountain natives

who had no knowledge of any route to the Pacific Ocean

Mackenzie enquired about an old man he had met the year before at Fort Chipewyan

who had described a fork in the river between the mountains

he instructed the Southern branch was the correct route

from there it was about a day’s trek to get to a carrying-place to reach the river to be taken

to cross the Rockies

but the old man had not been seen for over a month

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION SEES AN ABUNDANCE OF GAME

Animals continued to abound as Mackenzie noted in his journal: **“We saw one of their** (bear) **dens, or winter quarters, called watee, in an island, which was ten feet deep, five feet high, and six feet wide, but we had not yet seen one of those animals. The Indians entertain great apprehension of this kind of bear which is called the grisly bear, and they never venture to attack it but in a party of at least three or four.”[[108]](#footnote-108)** -- May 13, 1793

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION IS SLOWED BY THE WEATHER

Weather conditions deterioratedas Mackenzie noted -- May 15, 1793

**“rain prevented us from continuing our route till past six in the morning”[[109]](#footnote-109)**

Signs of beaver were to be seen along the course of the Peace River which was full of islands

and the land to the south thick with wood

Mackenzie described the land in glowing terms: **“Some parts, indeed, offer a beautiful scenery, in some degrees similar to that which we passed on the second day of our voyage, and equally enlivened with the elk and the buffalo, who were feeding in great numbers and unmolested by the hunter.”**[[110]](#footnote-110)

MACKENZIE AGAIN REFLECTS ON THE SURROUNDING SCENERY

Mackenzie’s men were again in their canoe in clear weather -- 4:00 a.m. May 16, 1793

Mackenzie’s exuberance continued: **“This spot would be an excellent situation for a fort or factory, as there is plenty of wood and every reason to believe that the country abounds in beaver. As for the other animals, they are in evident abundance, as in every direction the elk and the buffalo are seen in possession of the hills and the plains.”[[111]](#footnote-111)**

Two elks were killed and a buffalo was wounded -- May 16, 1793

land above their camp spread out in an extensive plain gradually rising to a high ridge

covered with grasses and dotted with poplar and white birch trees

Mackenzie noted, **“The country is so crowded with animals as to have the appearance, in some places, of a stall-yard, from the state of the ground and the quantity of dung which is scattered over it. The soil is black and light. We this day saw two grisly and hideous bears.”**[[112]](#footnote-112)

On the following days camps of “Beaver” Indians (today’s Dane-zaa natives) were seen

Mackenzie was somewhat concerned these natives would encourage his hunters to desert

but that did not happen

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S JOURNEY BECOMES MORE DIFFICULT

Freezing weather hit but the time lost to the last start on [May 15] was made up

by launching the canoe at 2:00 a.m. May 17, 1793

Rocky Mountains came into view for the first time (eight days into the journey) -- 2:00 p.m. several rapids were climbed during the course of the day and camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.

AN ACCIDENT SLOWS MACKENZIE’S PROGRESS

After the usual early start the explorers had traveled only about two hundred yards

before the canoe was damaged in an accident but was rapidly repaired

a second occurred when the canoe ran on a tree stump in the river

where the river bank was so steep they could not make repairs

a spot was found where the bow was beached and the canoe partially unloaded

which allowed the damaged portion to rise above the water line

about noon a place was found where repairs could be undertaken on an island

eight lodges used the year before were seen at a place to gather bark

outer bark to be used for canoes and inner bark for food

When the weather darkened and became cloudy with thunder, lightning and rain

they were forced into camp that evening at 6:00

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION FACES THE LONG RAPIDS

Travel up the Peace River had not been easy as they had frequently been forced to stop

and unload the heavily burdened canoe to make repairs

Alexander Mackenzie, Alexander Mackay and two hunters left the canoe to lighten the load

they walked up hills covered with cypress trees but with very little underbrush -- May 19, 1793

they found a well-worn path through the woods and they came upon a buffalo heard

Mackenzie refused to allow their Indians to fire their weapons

for fear local Indians would become aware of their position

instead their dog was sent after the herd

he soon killed a calf that was skinned and butchered

Two shots were heard from the direction of the canoe which was answered by Mackenzie

when another shot was heard the four men quickened their pace as they hiked back to the canoe

they met one of their men who explained they were stopped in front of a very strong rapids

and several more waterfalls appeared upriver

Indians has previously told Mackenzie of these barriers

but they said there was a way around that took a day’s march

White water of the Peace River gave way to impassable turbulence

there was no way to drag the canoe through the gorge

and no footing at all along river bank was to be found

Mackenzie moved the canoe to where it could be towed along an island

this worked well until the end of the island was reached -- there extremely swift currents

drove the canoe with such violence onto the stony shore that it was badly damaged

every effort was made to repair the damage and to dry the packages

everything was carried across a point of land and the canoe was reloaded

they set out again about three-quarters of a mile up the Peace River

but were soon blocked by the swift current ahead and the threatening rapids behind them

which threatened their destruction if accidentally entered

they had no choice but to attempt to cross the river or retrace their route back toward the rapids

They retreated with their canoe until they reached a series of table-sized islands used to cross the river

Alexander Mackay and the Indian hunters watched from the top of a rock

in constant fear for the safety of their companions

in fact, the heavy load carried by the canoe added to the dangers faced by Mackenzie and his men

When the other side of the river was reached the current there was as swift as what they had left

but the craggy bank was somewhat lower and they were able to use a long line to tow the canoe

until they reached the foot of the greatest rapids they had yet encountered

here they unloaded and carried everything 120 steps over a rocky point and reloaded

Mackenzie climbed up a high point of land where he could see the canoe the men were towing

as they were approaching an especially dangerous stretch of water

one false step, or if the line broke, the canoe and everything in it would be destroyed

when this danger was successfully overcome it was followed by another

rocks large and small rained down on the men and canoe from the high cliffs above

Mackenzie’s men moved out of his sight

Mackenzie struck out through the woods to return to the river ahead of his men

he saw where Indians had set snares for elk and walked for hours through forests of spruce, birch,

and the largest poplars he had ever seen

he reached the river and anxiously awaited the arrival of his men and their canoe

Mackenzie sent Alexander Mackay and one of the Indian hunters down the Peace River

in search of the canoe

Mackenzie himself set out alone to scout the river ahead

he found that a mile-and-a-half ahead the river washed against lofty cliffs with no bank

and was filled with a series rapids and cascades

since the canoe could not be seen Mackenzie returned to where he and Mackay had separated

Mackenzie saw the men carrying the canoe over a small rocky point of land

they met at a narrow channel where Mackenzie learned their trials had been great

their canoe had been broken but they continued on

having missed the carrying-place Mackenzie decided to continue on using the tow-line

as far as Mackenzie had scouted before they crossed the river and made camp on the beach

there was no wood on their side of the river as fire had swept through the area

several elks were seen feeding across the river on the edge of the 300-foot high cliffs

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SPENDS HIS SPRING ON THE PACIFIC COAST

Captain Vancouver reached Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound as the *Discovery*

arrived from the Sandwich Islands -- 5:00 p.m. May 20, 1793

Vancouver immediately dispatched an officer to inform

Spanish Major Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo of their arrival

arrangements were made for an eleven-gun salute to be fired by the Spanish and British

Captain Vancouver learned the *Chatham* had arrived in port [May 18]

and completed several repairs

Vancouver and Puget had been previously arranged that if *Discovery*

had not arrived by the middle of May

Lieutenant Peter Puget would sail to Fitzhugh Sound to begin an investigation there

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ALLOWS HIS MEN TO SLEEP IN

After the exertion of the day and night before carrying their baggage and canoe

the members of the expedition remained in bed until about 8:00 a.m. May 20, 1793

after rising Mackenzie’s and his men worked their way along the rock cliff with great difficulty

by cutting steps into the rock face for about twenty feet

at one place Mackenzie leaped onto a small rock below **“where I received those who followed me on my shoulders. In this manner four of us passed and dragged up the canoe, in which attempt we broke her. Very luckily, a dry tree had fallen from the rock above us, without which we could not have made a fire, as no wood was to be procured within a mile of the place. When the canoe was repaired, we continued towing it along the rocks to the next point, when we embarked….”**[[113]](#footnote-113)

Soon the current became too swift to paddle and the water became too deep to use poles there was no option but too once again resort to the towline

this was made extremely dangerous by trees that grew to the edge of the cliff above the river

and the rope had to be handed from person to person beyond their limbs

which reached over the river

swift water was again reached and some of the men stripped to their shirts

in preparation for a forced swim -- but this obstacle was overcome without inconvenience

Another waterfall required the canoe to be unloaded and portaged again

Mackenzie called a halt at noon for a rest and to take a sighting to determine their latitude

When they again set out the Peace River’s current became ever more rapid

in the next two miles they were forced to unload, portage and reload four times

They arrived at a place where the river became one continual rapid -- 5:00 p.m.

everything was unloaded and a towline attached to the canoe

pulling the canoe up through the rocks was difficult and extremely hazardous

water in the river became so rough that a wave struck the bow and broke the towline

dismay swept through the expedition as it appeared impossible to save the canoe

and the four men in it from being dashed to pieces on the rocks

luckily another wave drove the canoe out of the cascading water

so it could be brought ashore with no injury to the men or vessel

Members of Mackenzie’s expedition, especially those that had been in the canoe, were in such a state

that he called a halt -- the men climbed the river bank and made camp for the night

as far as they could seen the river was a white sheet of foaming water

discouragement and low moral among the men quickly led to grumbling about turning back

Mackenzie and one of the Indians set out to find a way around the barrier

although he searched almost until dark he could find no end to the rapids and waterfalls

it was impossible to proceed by water

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION SEARCHES FOR A WAY AROUND THE LONG RAPIDS

Morning brought rain to add to their misery -- May 21, 1793

Alexander Mackenzie allowed his men to sleep in until 8:00 a.m.

Mackenzie sent Alexander Mackay with three voyageurs and two Indians to climb

to the top of the nearby mountain and follow the river to where it once again became navigable

if they found there was no such place, two of the men were to return

while the other two sought a portage, route used by Indians -- if one existed

those who remained in camp repaired the canoe

Mackay and one of the men returned about sunset and the other two men about two hours later

they had penetrated thick forests, climbed hills and crossed valleys to the end of the rapids

they estimated the distance to be nine miles

Mackenzie sent a voyageur and an Indian to scout the rapids ahead

one of these men went in pursuit of a beaver seen in shallow water on a stony island

he was joined by Mackay and the other Indian hunter but they animal got away

just as it was getting dark the man scouting alone returned to camp

he reported it was impractical to navigate several impending rapids and promontories

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE CREATES HIS OWN PORTAGE AROUND THE LONG RAPIDS

When daylight broke -- May 22, 1793

Mackenzie’s men began up the mountain to cut a trail through the forest

they followed Mackenzie’s instructions to fell the trees parallel to the trail

and not completely detached from the stump to form a railing on either side

camp was established at the top of the climb

next the baggage was brought from the water to the encampment

this was a very perilous activity as one false step would have sent the man headlong

into the rapids below

When the men had rested, they proceeded with no small degree of apprehension to deliver the canoe

up the mountain by pulling on a rope wrapped around successive stumps

as a man at the end of the canoe carefully bent it around obstacles

3000 pounds less the food they had consumed and their canoe were at the summit -- 2:00 p.m.

Another trail was cut down the mountain for about a mile

that day’s weather had been cloudy with showers and thunder

MACKENZIE’S MEN CONTINUE TO PORTAGE THEIR EQUIPMENT

Weather this morning was clear -- May 23, 1793

as a second day of portaging their canoe and equipment began

Mackenzie joined Alexander Mackay and two Indians in cutting the road down the mountain

Although they were at a high altitude they could see very little

because they were surrounded by even higher mountains covered with snow

they continued cutting the road over hills, through thick woods and across deep ravines

those carrying the canoe and baggage overtook the road builders -- 4:00 p.m.

Camp was made by a rivulet beneath a large mass of ice and snow -- 5:00 p.m.

they had traveled about three miles through a burn area of fallen timber and Devil’s club plants

intermixed with shrubs of gooseberry and currants and several kinds of briars

*DISCOVERY* DEPARTS FROM NOOTKA SOUND

Captain George Vancouver sailed out of Nootka Sound traveling through hazy, rainy

and unpleasant weather -- May 23, 1793

Vancouver decided to investigate the area from Cape Scott on the north end

of Quadra-Vancouver Island (Vancouver Island) to the entrance of Fitzhugh Sound

in the waters of (today’s northern British Columbia)

when the weather became pleasant gathering more accurate information

about Queen Charlotte Sound became easy

it was decided to pass by Galiano, Valdes and Calvert’s islands to reach Fitzhugh Sound

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH THE END OF THEIR LONG PORTAGE

Mackenzie’s expedition continued their labors for a third day -- May 24, 1793

they progressed down steep hills and through the forest of tall pines

after a great deal of toil and trouble they brought their canoe and gear through the difficult passage

they arrived at the river about a hundred yards beyond the rapids -- 4:00 p.m.

this day they had traveled about four miles

Mackenzie named his route “Rocky Mountain Portage”

(in fact, an ancient Indian trail requiring only four hours of walking around the gorge existed

[and still exists today] -- it was missed by the scouts)

MACKENZIE MAKES PREPARATIONS TO CONTINUE THE JOURNEY

It had rained through the night and continued until noon -- May 25, 1793

in the short time they had remained at this location the water had risen a foot and a half

Having survived the hazards of Rocky Mountain Portage, Mackenzie and his men were occupied

with cutting long and short poles to propel the canoe and putting the canoe in order

Mackenzie attached a knife, steel and flint, beads and other articles to a pole

as a token of goodwill to the natives

one of his hunters added a small piece of green wood chewed on one end to form a brush

used to pick the marrow out of bone -- this was a sign the country abounded with animals

Alexander Mackenzie’s expedition set out water-bound once again -- 5:00 p.m.

there were snow covered mountains on all sides -- one peak to the south rose to a great height

almost four miles farther up the Peace River they made camp

MACKENZIE CONTACTS THE LOCAL INDIANS

When the men took to their canoe the air was so cold that although they were actively employed

they could keep warm without the aid of their blanket coats -- 4:00 a.m. May 26, 1793

Mackenzie and his nine men came upon an encampment of local “Knisteneaux” (Cree) Indians

who had not previously seen white men, but had some iron which they had procured by trade

from other natives who had journeyed a great distance to the Pacific Ocean

Mackenzie hired one of these Indians to travel with the party and serve as guide

camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.

VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES FITZHUGH SOUND

HMS *Discovery* sailed up Fitzhugh Sound -- May 26, 1793

gentle breezes brought them to the arm leading to Menzies Point [visited in 1792]

here Vancouver expected to meet the *Chatham* but progress was impeded

by unfavorable winds and a strong ebb tide

when the tide changed *Discovery* continued up Fitzhugh Sound through thick misty weather

*Chatham* was revealed in the distance and *Discovery* anchored beside her in a cove -- noon May 26

Lieutenant Peter Puget informed Vancouver that *Chatham* had arrived the day before

and had enjoyed an uncomplicated voyage from the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

Since *Discovery* was in need of repairs Vancouver decided that a two boat expedition

would be dispatched to investigate the region

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SAILS FURTHER UP FITZHUGH SOUND

Captain Vancouver moved north to a large cove

there repairs were begun on the *Discovery* -- May 27, 1793

her bow had a leak that needed immediate attention and the stern of the ship needed caulking

and several spars needed replacement

*Discovery’s* launch needed repairs and her sails needed mending

gunpowder needed airing to remove the humidity

however, rainy weather impeded the pace of the work

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TAKES AN UNUSUAL DAY OFF

Violent rains continued throughout the day which kept the expedition in camp -- May 29, 1793

to amuse himself Mackenzie wrote a letter reporting their hardships to date

he wrapped it in bark, placed it in an empty rum keg and sent it down the Peace River

(this prank later led to the legend that Mackenzie sent his reports to headquarters down the river

sealed in a rum keg)

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SENDS OUT A BOAT EXPEDITION

Lieutenants James Johnstone was dispatched in *Chatham’s* cutter attended by another small cutter

on the first boat expedition of 1793 -- May 29

to investigate the waters in the vicinity of (today’s King Island) which had been abandoned

due to bad weather the year before

VANCOUVER LEADS A BOAT EXPEDITION OF HIS OWN

Vancouver took the *Discovery’s* yawlaccompanied by Lieutenant Spelman Swaine in the cutter

to examine an arm of this inlet in a northerly direction -- May 30, 1793

Vancouver named this arm “Burke’s Canal” (today’s Burke Channel)

to honor eminent political theorist and author the Right Honorable Edmund Burke

the northwest point of land at the entrance was identified as “Point Walker”

and the southwest point was named “Point Edmund”

Vancouver arrived at what appeared to be the main branch leading from Fitzhugh Sound -- 9:00 a.m.

he named “Fisher’s Canal” (today’s Fisher Channel)after a much-respected friend

landing on the western shore Vancouver’s party was visited by a few shy natives

but distribution of a few trinkets gained their confidence and friendship

they appeared to be different from other natives in the region and used a different language

not at all like the Indians of Nootka Sound

Vancouver named “Port John” which provided a good harbor

evening brought rough water and rainy, unpleasant weather

steep cliffs kept the boat expedition from landing until nearly midnight

UNPLEASANT WEATHER CONTINUES FOR A SECOND DAY FOR CAPTAIN VANCOUVER

Rain fell throughout the night and daylight -- May 31, 1793

daybreak showed they were camped in a marsh and their possessions were very wet

Continuing on, the channel divided into two branches and Vancouver followed the one to the right

until they reached what Vancouver named “Point Edward” where camp was set up

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE HEAD OF THE PEACE RIVER

After three weeks of hard toil and constant peril Alexander Mackenzie reached the point

where the Peace River is formed by the (Finlay River) and the (Parsnip) river -- May 31, 1793

Finlay River that flowed north-north-west was smooth and easy to follow

(Parsnip) river that flowed swiftly south-south-east was full of rapids

Mackenzie had learned from an old Indian at Fort Chipewyan the year before

that route that led across the Rocky Mountains was the south-south-east (Parsnip) river

the native had said that a carrying-place would be discovered which led to a large river

(Finlay River would have taken them a considerable distance into the Rockies

but many hundreds of miles from the Pacific Ocean

whereas the (Parsnip) river is the only river, other than the Laird River 300 miles north,

that cuts through the mountains)

forced to take the far more challenging route Mackenzie’s men began to complain

they demanded the expedition return downriver -- Mackenzie would not consider it

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE REMAINS A POSITIVE LEADER

Mackenzie and his nine companions continued their travels as he and his six voyageurs

launched their canoe up the (Parsnip) river -- sunrise June 1, 1793

Alexander Mackay and the two Indian hunters walked to lighten the burden on the canoe

about noon the river’s current began to slacken but toward evening it once again increased

even so, Mackenzie kept his men moving forward and relished in the beauty of the region: **“In no part of the Northwest did I see so much beaver-work within an equal distance as in the course of this day. In some places they had cut down several acres of large poplars; and we saw also a great number of these active and sagacious** (intelligent) **animals. The time which these wonderful creatures allot for their labors, whether in erecting their curious habitations or providing food, is the whole of the interval between the setting and the rising sun.”**[[114]](#footnote-114)

When Mackay and his two native traveling companions arrived in camp in the evening

they were exhausted by their efforts -- they had crossed swamps and had to swim to the river

to reach our camp which was inadvertently located on an island

they reported hearing more gunfire during the day than could be accounted for by the expedition

which used gunfire to communicate their location during their travels

Camp was uneasy and restless that night as each man posted himself at the foot of a tree fully prepared

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION FOR A THIRD DAY

Cloudy but mild weather greeted the boat expedition members -- June 1, 1793

Point Menzies was seen faced by Burke’s Canal on the opposite shore

(these had been visited by Lieutenant James Johnstone [1792])

Captain George Vancouver left a note for Lieutenant James Johnstone in a conspicuous place

instructing him to return to the ships by the same route he was now inspecting

Further investigations by Vancouver resulted in observing a driftwood fire on the beach

and evidence that Johnstone’s boat expedition had been there

it became obvious there was no need to explore this area further

Vancouver’s boat expedition turned south to explore five openings on the continental shore

camp was made that night near where they had camped the preceding evening

VANCOUVER EXPLORES THE CONTINENTAL SHORE

Vancouver’s men set out early on the fourth day -- June 2, 1793

they entered the fifth opening, which Vancouver named “Dean’s Canal,” (Dean’s Channel)

Vancouver ended his investigation of this region at “Point Raphoe”

Three Indians appeared across a brook from Vancouver’s men but refused to meet

using signs they indicated some of Vancouver’s men were nearby

they indicated that if Vancouver led the way to his men the Indians would follow

several other encounters with the natives that day had the same result

Vancouver passed what he named “Point Edward” at the north end

of which he named “King’s Island” (King Island) and proved it was, in fact, an island

he named King’s Island after British Captain James King the Dean of Raphoe, Ireland

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION FOR THE FIFTH DAY

Vancouver’s boat expedition set out after breakfast -- June 3, 1793

retracing their route out of Dean’s Channel Captain Vancouver named “Roscoe Inlet”

They returned to the brook they had seen the day before where they had enjoyed lunch

they set out to explore the next unexplored inlet where camp was made that evening

(PARSNIP) RIVER BECOMES INCREASINGLY DIFFICULT TO TRAVEL

Morning showed a very heavy fog had rolled in during the night -- June 3-4, 1793

Mackenzie had been keeping a detailed account of events and observations during his expedition

these included descriptions of people, locations, native houses, scenery, topography, geography

and his sightings for latitude and longitude to accurately place his location -

which were usually taken at noon

Mackenzie often recorded these notes while traveling in the canoe

occasionally he also slept as the canoe progressed along its journey

one day Alexander Mackenzie’s notebook was missing

he surmised branches had swept it from his hands as he dozed -- June 4, 1793

his detailed writings between [May 28] and June 4 were lost

he was forced to rerecord general information that he could recall between those dates

Navigating the (Parsnip) river became increasingly difficult as the men grew ever more discontent

this river’s current was so strong that paddles could not be used

and it was so deep that poles were useless

banks of the river were lined with willows and other trees that made it was hazardous

to tow the canoe with a cordelling line

No camping place could be found as night approached

they landed on a gravel bank situated only slightly above the water line

VANCOUVER NAMES “CASCADE CANAL”

Morning dawned chilly and unpleasant on the sixth day -- June 4, 1793

Vancouver’s boat expedition returned to Fisher Channel and continued to the entrance of the next inlet

Vancouver named this arm “Cascade Canal” as it was surrounded by perpendicular cliffs

with several large cascades of fresh water

as he remarked in his journal, **“These cascades were extremely grand, and by much the largest and the most tremendous of any we had ever beheld. The impetuosity with which these waters descended produced a strong current of air that reached nearly to the opposite side of the channel, though it was perfectly calm in every other direction.”**[[115]](#footnote-115)

Near the entrance to Cascade Canal they met friendly Indians who took Vancouver

to their village of seven houses located in a small rocky cove around a point of land

Vancouver landed on the side of the cove opposite the village

and crossed over to visit the village where he visited for about half an hour

about forty male Indians made an appearance, but the women and children remained in the houses

none of the men had weapons and they conducted themselves in a civil and orderly manner

Vancouver left some medals and few trinkets and received indifferent sea otter pelts

and some pieces of halibut

Vancouver’s boat expedition proceeded to the next unexplored opening where camp was made

VANCOUVER INVESTIGATES THE INLET SOUTH OF CASCADE CANAL

After breaking camp on the seventh day of his investigation -- June 5, 1793

Vancouver’s boat expedition entered yet another inlet and found it terminated about two miles

in a westerly direction -- this was named “Cousins Inlet”

Continuing on Vancouver entered the last arm -- the one they had “Fisher Channel”

along the west side of King’s Island

pleasant weather and gentle winds aided in the investigation which ended like the others inlets

Vancouver turned his attention to the continental shore one again until evening

when a sizable navigable channel was found

camp was made about a mile up this opening

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE FACES A REBELLION BY HIS MEN

From the time they had set out from Fort Chipewyan the rivers had been rising

as the advancing season melted snow in the high mountains and swelled all of the streams

When the men awoke they found their canoe and baggage in water which had risen the during the night

they had landed so late the night before that the canoe had to be prepared for the day’s journey

before they could depart -- June 5, 1793

Mackenzie and a few of the men left the canoe and climbed a high hill to investigate the country

he climbed a tree to look ahead -- he saw a ridge of mountains covered with snow

there appeared to be an opening which he decided marked the course of the river

When he returned to the (Parsnip) river he could not see his canoe

as had been prearranged he fired a signal of two guns -- but there was no response

Mackenzie believed the canoe was ahead of him while his Indian hunters believed it was behind

as they proceeded up the river Mackenzie began to doubt his belief as his concern grew

Mackenzie left Alexander Mackay and an Indian where they were to build a large fire

he threw branches into the river as a signal if the canoe was behind them downriver

Mackenzie and an Indian hunter set out to search up the river

they stopped at noon to again fire two guns with no response

the rushing river increased Mackenzie’s concerns

while swarms of gnats and mosquitoes added to their torment

Mackenzie and his Indian companion returned to where Mackay and the others were to wait

but found in his absence they had traveled three or four miles downriver

but having discovered nothing they had returned

Mackenzie began to blame himself for leaving the men in such difficult conditions

Alexander Mackay and the Indian Cancre set off downriver -- 6:30 p.m.

to search as far as possible before nightfall and to continue the next day if necessary

Mackenzie proposed to search upriver with his Indian companion the next morning

if success was not achieved they would meet back where they now were

As Mackenzie prepared to sleep two gunshots were heard from the direction Mackay had gone

Mackenzie and his Indian companion traveled downriver until they reached the canoe

he listened to his men’s account of why their progress had been so slow

they said the canoe had been damaged and that travel had been even harder than previously

Mackenzie pretended to believe them

Mackenzie thought of leaving the river and striking overland -- this was a desperate idea

if they continued along the river it was always possible to return back

but without the river retreat could become impossible

one wrong turn and the entire party could become lost

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION WAS AGAIN UNDER WAY

Mackenzie and his nine companions set out once again -- 4:30 a.m. June 6, 1793

the current continued so strong and the river so deep that neither paddles nor poles could be used

and the riverbank so crowded by willows and other trees that progress was made

only by passing the canoe and baggage overhead from branch to branch

no stopping place could be found until noon when repairs were made to the canoe

clothes were dried and new paddles and poles were made to replace those broken or lost

VANCOVER IS FORCED TO MAKE A LATE START ON THE EIGHTH DAY OF EXPLORING

Thick fog and rainy weather forced Vancouver’s boat expedition to remain in camp

they did not set out until 10:00 a.m. June 6, 1793

when some of the fog began to clear and an investigation of the navigable channel began

they discovered a large native village but did not approach as the Indians hid themselves

proceeding about ten miles a stop was made for lunch

here two canoes of unarmed Indians from the village arrived and conducted a friendly trade

when the head of the inlet was reached Vancouver’s expedition stopped for the night

about two miles away from the water’s terminus

MACKENZIE AND HIS NINE MEN CONTINUE ALONG THE (PARSNIP) RIVER

Morning dawned calm and clear -- June 7, 1793

(Parsnip) river had risen two inches during the night and the current we even more swift

They set out along the river in their newly repaired canoe

after an unusually hard day’s trek camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.

Alexander Mackay and the two Indian hunters had walked most of the day

Mackay killed a porcupine and several Indian encampments were seen -- but no Indians

VANCOUVER ENTERS HIS NINTH DAY OF HIS BOAT EXPEDITION

Back in the main channel the next morning -- June 7, 1793

Vancouver proceeded west to a small island where his men had breakfast

they were again visited by the friendly Indians

Weather became serene and pleasant with a gentle southwest breeze

Vancouver believed this channel would lead toward the ocean

the boat expedition continued westward keeping the continental shore to their right

as was their usual practice

openings were seen on both sides of the channel but their provisions were running low

so these remained uncharted

Vancouver stopped for lunch and to take a sighting of their longitude and longitude -- noon

Swaine was sent ahead in the cutter to find a channel leading to the ocean

Swain returned to report he had seen the ocean about a mile and a half ahead

Vancouver ended his exploration at this point

Vancouver’syawl and Swain’s cutter set out to cross the forty-five miles to the ships

they once again passed by the Indian village they had previously seen

while the natives were once again friendly it became obvious

they did not want the sailors to land near their village

Vancouver and his boat party continued on

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION FACES THE MOUNTAINS AHEAD OF THEM

Rain and thunder had filled the night but the canoe was launched -- 4:00 a.m. June 8, 1793

for the past three days the mountains had loomed ahead

sometimes seemingly very close and other times far away

For the past two days they had been looking for the carrying place

promised to Mackenzie by an old Indian the year before

nothing appeared that resembled what had been described

all that could be done was to push on until the (Parsnip) river was no longer navigable

to add to their difficulties the river was so high no campsites along the bank could be found

they did not stop until 8:00 p.m. June 8, 1793

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION CONTINUES BACK TOWARD THE SHIPS

Once again after breaking camp good progress was made

toward the *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- June 8, 1793

they identified a bay that had the appearance of communicating with the ocean -- noon

about forty men, women and children from the native village they had seen on the first day

indicated the sailors should land at a rock near the Indians

when this was done most of the village’s men and boys welcomed the strangers

after receiving presents

Continuing on Vancouver’s boat expedition reached the *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- 10:00 p.m.

Vancouver discovered that bad weather had impeded the repairs to the *Discovery*

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER RECEIVES A REPORT FROM LIEUTENANT JOHNSTONE

Lieutenant James Johnstone had taken *Chatham’s* large and small cutters

to explore the waters north of Fitzhugh Sound

His boat party had reached Point Menzies [by May 30]

where they discovered an arm of the sea that opened before them

pleasant weather allowed them to make great progress until the evening

when camp was made for the night

Contact was made with an Indian village the next day [May 31]

canoes here proved to be capable only of fishing in the nearby streams

and were not suited for ocean travel

Johnstone entered another arm of the sea leading to the northeast

which terminated after about eleven miles [June 1]

here another Indian house was seen which was of the usual variety

returning to the entrance of the arm Lieutenant Johnstone found Vancouver’s note

instructing him to return to the ships

*Discovery* and *Chatham* were reached ([June 2]

Based on Lieutenant James Johnstone’s report elongated North Bentinck and South Bentinck Arms

were misnamed “Bentinck Arms”

in honor of Tory Prime Minister William Henry Cavendish Bentinck

North Bentinck Arm is the longest inland-reaching channel of the whole complex coast

and was left unexplored by Johnstone’s boat expedition

(later North Benedict Arm which will later deliver Alexander Mackenzie to the Pacific Ocean)

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SENT LIEUTENANT JOHNSTONE TO EXPLORE FURTHER

Lieutenant James Johnstone took the *Chatham’s* cutter to the place where Vancouver

had stopped his investigation on [June 7] to follow that opening where it might lead

he was to continue to where the ships would be anchored

near two small islands both boat expeditions had located earlier

if Johnstone arrived at the rendezvous first he was to leave a note

and continue to survey the coast to the west

Lieutenant Johnstone accompanied by Midshipman Robert Barrie in *Discovery’s* small cutter set out

with a week’s supplies -- June 8,1793

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION ENCOUNTERS LOCAL NATIVES

Alexander Mackenzie and his men noticed a small fire and in a short time heard people in the timber,

they seemed frightened and confused by the discovery of the explorers’ party

and the members of the expedition were equally alarmed they might be attacked -- June 9, 1793

as the Indians fled Mackenzie decided not to follow as the explorers’ weapons were not ready

and there was no way of telling how many local natives there were

if there were only a few they would probably escape through the dense woods

if there were many it would be foolish to try to catch them

Mackenzie turned his canoe to the opposite side of the river to see if any natives had remained there

but before they were half-way across the hundred yard wide river

two Indians appeared on the far bank brandishing their weapons on the rising ground

Mackenzie’s interpreter called to the two Indians and told them the white people were friendly

but the Indians maintained their threatening attitude

however, after some talk the two Indians allowed the explorers to beach their canoe

although the natives were very frightened they laid down their weapons

Mackenzie stepped forward and shook hands with both of them

one of the Indians, trembling with fear, drew his knife from his sleeve

he offered it to Mackenzie as a sign of his submission

These Indians had heard of white men before but had never seen one

they were extremely curious as well as suspicious

they said they had just gotten to this place and had not yet made their camp

but when they saw Mackenzie’s party they ran away leaving their property behind

Mackenzie decided to stop until **“the Indians became so familiarized with us as to give all the intelligence which we imagined might be obtained from them”**[[116]](#footnote-116)

he made a great effort to pacify them and reassure them he was friendly

MACKENZIE BECOMES ACQUAINTED WITH THE SHUSWAP INDIANS HE HAS JUST MET

Throughout the day the whole party of Indians came to visit with Mackenzie’s expedition

three “Shuswap” Indian men and women, and seven or eight boys and girls

they were delighted with the beads given to them and seemed to enjoy the pemmican

as they had been surviving entirely of dried fish

These Indians were lean and short, no taller than five feet six or seven inches

their round faces were surrounded by loose-hanging hair and featured a pierced nose

they wore robes of beaver, groundhog, or reindeer skins dressed with the hair left on

their leggings and moccasins were of dressed moose, elk, or reindeer skin

they wore collars of grizzly bear claws around their necks

their cedar bows were six feet long and bore a short iron spike on one end

to be used as a spear or lance

they also carried lances headed with iron or bone and their knives and axes were of iron

they made strong cords of rawhide and their nets and fishing-lines were of willow bark and nettle

their fish hooks were made of bone set in wood

their kettles were baskets, their spoons were made of horn or wood

their canoes were made of spruce bark

These Indians possessed some iron which they said they had obtained from people

who lived about eleven days’ walk away, and that those people travelled for a month

to reach the country of other tribes who lived in houses

and journeyed to the “Stinking Lake” (Pacific Ocean)

where they traded with white people who came in canoes as large as islands

This account discouraged Mackenzie who feared the end of his journey was far away

he continued his efforts to allay the suspicions of his new friends

and treated them and their children with great kindness

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE IS ENCOURAGED BY WHAT HE LEARNS

Mackenzie was sitting around the campfire listening to the talk of the Indians and his interpreters

some of it he could understand himself -- June 10, 1793

he recognized that one of theShuswap Indians, Sikannis, spoke of a great river

flowing near the source of the river they were ascending

and of portages leading to a small river which discharged into another great river

with a little patient work by Mackenzie the Indian described

what seemed a practical route to the ocean

Mackenzie noted in his journal on June 10: **“I desired him** [Sikannis] **to describe the road to the other river by delineating it with a price of coal, on a strip of bark, which he accomplished to my satisfaction.”[[117]](#footnote-117)**

Mackenzie’s canoe was loaded the and camp was broken -- 10:00 a.m. June 10, 1793

before he departed the expedition leader informed the Indians to expect their return in two months

they continued along the (Parsnip) river until camp was made that night -- 7:00 p.m.

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* LEAVE RESTORATION COVE

Captain George Vancouver named the cove where he had anchored beside the *Chatham*

at the mouth of Burke Channel “Restoration Cove” --June 10, 1793

(Restoration Bay was named in honor of Restoration Day -- the day King Charles II

was restored to the English monarchy after the [1651] death of his father

*Discovery* and *Chatham* under Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget

sailed to rendezvous east of (Yeo Island) off the north coast of (British Columbia) -- June10

MACKENZIE CONTINUES UP THE (PARSNIP) RIVER

Morning was clear and cold as camp was broken -- 4:00 a.m. June 11, 1793

Mackenzie’s interpreter encouraged Sikannis to remain loyal to the expedition

their guide replied saying **“How is it possible for me to leave the lodge of the Great Spirit?** **When he** (Mackenzie) **tells me he has no further occasion for me, I will then return to my children.”[[118]](#footnote-118)**

Leaving the Indian camp Alexander Mackenzie’s expedition saw a river entering on their left

and noted what their guide called “Beaver Lodge Mountain” also to their left

they continued on but after about thirteen miles their canoe took on so much water

that it became necessary to stop and repair the leaks

Approximately four more miles up the river they left the main branch of the (Parsnip) river

which, according to Sikannis ended a short distance from where they were

their new stream was smaller than the one they had just left and the current was very slow

this river was so shallow that it became difficult to work the canoe forward

after about a mile they entered a small lake that was almost choked off by driftwood

as the water deepened it became impossible to maneuver the canoe

among the overhanging branches

Camp was made that night at a deserted Indian encampment beside a lake

beaver had been seen during the afternoon as were swans and large numbers of geese and ducks

tracks where large deer had crossed the river could be seen and wild parsnips grew in abundance

they set out a net to catch what fish might be available

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION REACHES FISHER’S CANAL

After sailing all night *Discovery* and *Chatham* entered “Fisher’s Canal”

(today’s Fisher Channel) -- June 11, 1793

by noon they had reached the location investigated by the boat expeditions

favorable winds diminished and the ships anchored south of the Indian village visited [June 4]

soon the expedition was visited by friendly villagers desiring to trade

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH THE CONTINENTAL DIVIDE

Where Mackenzie had camped the lake was about two miles long and three to five hundred yards wide

Mackenzie considered this lake to be the source of the Peace River high in the Rocky Mountains

their net, set out the night before, provided a trout, a white fish, a carp

and three that were unknown to the explorers

Mackenzie’s expedition set out about 3:00 a.m. June 12, 1793

they traveled along the lake until they found a well-worn path leading over a low ridge

after 817 paces across a neck of land they reached a small lake

sometime before, Indians had left canoes there

baskets that contained many articles were hung on the trees

Mackenzie took a net, some hooks, a goat’s horn and a wooden groundhog trap

in exchange he left a knife, some steel balls, beads, awls and other small articles

here two streams tumbled down the rocks from the right and fell into the lake they had just left

two other streams from the left flowed into the lake ahead of them

they were at the Continental Divide of the Rocky Mountains

dividing the Mississippi River watershed from the waters that flowed to the Pacific Ocean

they were more than 1,000 miles from Lake Athabasca

Alexander Mackenzie and his nine men became first whites to cross the Rocky Mountains

(then also known as the Stoney or Shining Mountains)

At the second lake they cleared away some floating driftwood to reach another portage path

only 175 paces long before it reached a place where their canoe could be launched

into a small river that flowed from the second lake

When they entered the stream a great deal of energy was expended clearing the water of fallen trees

this river grew rapidly in size as many small ice-cold streams added their flow

weather on this day was cloudy and cold

and they were frequently required to be in and out of the ice-cold water

yet another portage around a rapids was necessary to reenter the river downstream -- 4:00 p.m.

Camp was made for the night where two large trees blocked their progress at the head of a rapid

those who had walked to lighten the canoe did not arrive at the campsite until almost dark

they had had a difficult time crossing the very rugged countryside

Mackenzie sent two men ahead to survey to the river

they returned with fearful details of rapid currents, fallen trees and large rocks standing in the river

their guide, Sikannis, was frightened by some of the rapids they had descended and wanted to leave

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* MAKE SLOW PROGRESS

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget sailed only about a mile that night

before they were forced to anchor near the western shore where they remained

until 8:00 a.m. June 12, 1793

they were about three miles from their intended rendezvous point with Lieutenant James Johnstone

this distance was crossed and the ships were tied to trees on (Yeo Island) -- 6:00 p.m.

Vancouver found a note left by Lieutenant Johnstone stating he had decided to investigate

an arm that extended north-northwest of their location

Johnstone requested the ships wait for him at their present location

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* WAIT FOR THE RETURN OF LIEUTENANT JOHNSTONE

Weather turned gloomy and stormy with the result that no Indians visited the ship

efforts to fish with a seine net gave poor results

but mussels were found in plentiful supply -- June 13, 1793

Eventually two chiefs came to visit followed by many of the inhabitants who came to barter

during the time that *Discovery* and *Chatham* remained tied to the shore

they were visited by several hundred natives who were remarkably honest and friendly

NEAR DISASTER HITS THE MACKENZIE EXPEDITION

Early in the morning the men began to hack a trail around the rapids -- June 13, 1793

when the river was once again entered the swift current propelled them rapidly

Alexander Mackenzie thought he and his hunters would walk to lighten the load in the canoe

but those remaining in the canoe remembered the incident involving a broken tow line [May 20]

it was requested that everyone ride in the canoe so that if they were killed

Mackenzie would die with them

Accordingly they all set out in the canoe as Mackenzie recorded in his diary: **“We accordingly pushed off, and had proceeded but a very short way when the canoe struck** [the rocks], **and notwithstanding all our exertions, the violence of the current was so great as to drive her sideways down the river, and break her by the first bar. I instantly jumped into the water, and the men followed my example; but before we could get her strait, or stop her, we came to deeper water, so that we were obliged to re-embark with the utmost precaution.**

**“One of the men, who was not sufficiently active, was left to get on shore in the best manner in his power.**

**“We had hardly regained our situations when we drove against a rock, which shattered the stern of the canoe.... The violence of this stroke drove us to the opposite side of the river...when the bow met with the same fate as the stern.**

**“At this moment the foreman seized on some branches of a small tree in the hope of bringing up** (stopping) **the canoe, but such was their elasticity that, in a manner not easily described, he was jerked on shore in an instant, and with a degree of violence that threatened his destruction.**

**“But we had no time to turn from our own situation to enquire what had befallen him; for in a few moments we came across a cascade which broke several large holes in the bottom of the canoe, and started all the bars except one behind the scooping seat.... The wreck becoming flat on the water, we all jumped out, while the steersman, who had not yet recovered from his fright, called out to his companions to save themselves.”[[119]](#footnote-119)**

fortunately they came to shallow water where they could stand

and hold the wreckage to keep it from sinking

this terrifying scene had taken only a few minutes

soon the man who had been jerked from the canoe arrived

he assisted in carrying the baggage ashore

Amazingly no one drowned -- miraculously there had been no injuries of consequence

but the canoe was wrecked -- valuable equipment, including most of their musket balls, were gone

grumbling flared into open rebellion -- Sikannis their guide stated he wanted to return to his people

their ammunition was lost, and the voyageurs thought they would have to return home now

Mackenzie rested his men by a big fire and fed them a good meal

then he gave them a small amount of rum to raise their spirits

he listened to his men’s assessment of their situation until their panic had subsided

When they were warm, dry and their stomachs full, Mackenzie gave them a speech

he gave thanks for their narrow escape

he said they had lost their ammunition, but they still had some lead shot

which could be melted into musket balls

he noted the canoe was almost useless but could be repaired or a new one built

he reminded them that voyageurs were known for courage and resolution

he invited them to stay with him and share in the glory

Mackenzie told them that he would discuss with them the question of returning to Fort Chipewyan

but by that time no one could think of a good reason for going back

Mackenzie’s encouragement had generated sufficient courage to make them willing to continue on

Mackenzie sent two men with their guide Sikannis to look for bark to be used to repair the canoe

and also to look for the great river they were seeking -- 9:00 a.m.

Sikannis had told them it was not far distant

Sikannis returned to the campsite alone about 10:00 p.m.

tired and hungry, his clothes were torn to rags -- he had left the other two men at sunset

his report could not have been more discouraging

REPAIRS ARE MADE TO MACKENZIE’S CANOE

Mackenzie’s men who had gone with their guide Sikannis

now returned tired, hungry and cold -- 7:30 a.m. June 14, 1793

their clothes were torn and they were bleeding from lacerations acquired in the dense woods

these men also gave an unsatisfactory report -- but they added they thought they had seen a river

however it was so full of obstacles that the expedition would have to portage around

This day was spent in making repairs to the canoe

Sikannis, who had often expressed a desire to depart, suddenly became content

Mackenzie attributed this change of attitude to smoke seen in the distance

their guide expected that if natives were found he would be released from service

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION SETS OUT ONCE AGAIN DOWN THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

Alexander Mackenzie and some of his men began very early in the morning -- June 15, 1793

to build a road to carry part of their equipment because the canoe was not in good enough condition

to risk carrying all they own in it -- especially with the rocks and rapids being so prevalent

Repairs to the canoe were completed well enough for four of the men to paddle the canoe

which was loaded with only twelve packages while the remaining baggage was carried

progress in the canoe was slowed by driftwood and fallen trees

One of the voyageurs, Jacques Beauchamps, refused to travel any farther in the canoe

this was the first instance of disobedience that Mackenzie had faced

rather than discipline him Mackenzie made him the object of ridicule and contempt

As the day drew to an end the expedition members gathered around a blazing fire

their spirits were lightened by the beverage Mackenzie supplied

they forgot their exhaustion and fears

they began to anticipate the pleasure of leaving their present trials behind

and gliding onward down a strong and steady stream their guide Sikannis described

as the large river they soon expected to enter

HARDSHIPS CONTINUE FOR ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS EXPEDITION

Alexander Mackenzie’s nine men and their guide Sikannis were divided into three groups

some continued to work with Mackenzie on trail building -- June 16, 1793

others were occupied with carrying the equipment and supplies along the trail

four of the men took the canoe downriver

After progressing on the trail about half a mile it was discovered their camp had been placed

above several waterfalls that the canoe, even as light as it was, could not navigate

as it had once again been damaged with a hole in the bottom

this demanded a wider road be constructed to accommodate carrying the canoe

Mackay and two Indians who had been working the trail were assigned to find the great river

others worked on repairing the canoe as much as possible with the sparse materials they possessed

that done, four men were assigned to carry the canoe, now much heavier than it was originally

because of all of the patchwork that had been done

every one hundred yards through deep mud and swamp and over roots and fallen trees

the two men carrying the canoe had to be replaced by the other two

Mackenzie and two of the men carried the baggage as fast as they could

to add to their misery fleas and sand-flies tormented them all day long

Mackenzie’s expedition reached the end of the trail they had built -- 7:00 p.m.

less than two miles had been made that day

Mackenzie and his men were joined in camp by Alexander Mackay and the two Indians

they reported the river they were following was so full of fallen trees that it was impassable

but after trudging through swamps and almost impenetrable woods they came to the great river

they also brought back with them two geese they had shot

Mackenzie ignored the murmurings of his men as they rested from their labors in camp

he distributed the usual amount of rum and the expedition members soon retired for the night

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE RETURNS TO REPORT TO CAPTAIN VANCOUVER

Clear weather allowed Captain Vancouver to take observations of their latitude and longitude

Lieutenants James Johnstone and Spelman Swaine in *Chatham’s* large and small cutters

returned to the ships after completing a nineteen-day boat expedition -- June 17, 1793

Johnstone reported that on the first day of their investigation [June 8]

they had encountered natives who had some halibut

but the price the Indians demanded was so high none could be purchased

bad weather had impeded their exploration of bays, inlets and channels

but several contacts were made with the Indian people during which

who all proved hospitable and ready to trade

increasingly difficult weather forced the members of the boat expedition

to remain in camp for several days

Lieutenant Johnstone and Swaine were able to once again get underway [June 13]

sadly, the next day tainted mussels were eaten for breakfast [June 14]

sailor John Carter and two or three others suffered from the complications

Carter died but the others escaped the same fate

Johnstone named the scene of the tragedy “Carter’s Bay” after the victim

where the mussels had been eaten was identified as “Poison Cove”

and the branch of water leading to the cove was named “Muscle Canal” (sic)

because of the loss of a man and the weakened state of the party

Johnstone and Swaine took a southward route back toward the ships

very unfavorable weather had provided not one day

that was fair enough to ascertain their latitude

When the boat expedition returned to the ships the stricken men

were immediately taken to Dr. Archibald Menzies for care -- June 17, 1793

James Johnstone and Spelman Swain had explored todays (Spiller Inlet) and “Mussel Inlet,”

(Bullock Channel), “Mathieson Channel,” “Flaysion Channel”

they circumnavigated (Yeo Island) and visited (Pooley), (Roderick), (Susan)

and **(**Dowager**)** islands

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION CONTINUES THEIR TRUDGE OVER THE CONTINENTAL DIVIDE

Mackenzie, as was his usual practice, stayed awake watching his guide until midnight

when he was relieved by Alexander Mackay -- but during the early hours Sikannis deserted

Early in the morning everyone went to work cutting the trail though the forest -- June 17, 1793

after their canoe and cargo had been carried three-quarters of a mile it was launched into a stream

but in a short time their progress was stopped by driftwood

they were forced to portage once again

All through the morning their journey alternated between paddling and packing

this stream increasingly branched until it became impossible to navigate -- noon

they were forced to cut a trail across a narrow neck of land

They found themselves on the banks of a large smooth-flowing stream

located on the west side of the Rocky Mountains -- 8:00 p.m.

this was the north fork of the Indians’ “Tacoutche Tesse” (today’ Fraser River)

which Mackenzie believed was American Captain Robert Gray’s Columbia River

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* CONTINUE THEIR INVESTIGATION

No time was lost in following up on the investigation of lieutenants Johnstone and Swaine

*Discovery* and *Chatham* left their (Yeo Island) anchorage

being a calm day, all of the boats were employed in towing the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

about a mile from their anchorage -- June 18, 1793

Progress was slow and only six miles were made before anchoring for the night

better weather conditions allowed Vancouver’s expedition to sail through the islands to the north

TRAVEL ONCE AGAIN BECOME EASIER FOR MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN

Rain began and fell continually throughout the night until 7:00 a.m. June 18, 1793

after all of the exertions over the past three days

Mackenzie gave the members of his expedition an opportunity to sleep in

However, they were on the water by 8:00 a.m.

weather was so hazy they could not see across the river which was about 200 yards wide

as they passed mountains on their left, high, rocky cliffs covered with forest on the right

and islands in the river, the current was swift but perfectly safe

They reached a newly constructed Indian cabin at a branch in the Tacoutche Tesse (Fraser River)

here was the great fork where before he disappeared Sikannis had said to take the southeast fork this grew very slack and became a lake

but after five miles the river narrowed and the current increased

smoke along the bank of a merging river indicated Indians were in the vicinity

while Mackenzie would have liked to visit with these people several factors stopped him:

•paddling against the current up the tributary would unnecessarily tire the men;

•he had no guide to introduce them to the natives;

•progress was so favorable he felt compelled to continue forward

he decided to wait until his return trip to make their acquaintance

Traveling down the swift-flowing river Mackenzie’s expedition made about sixty miles before dark

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ATTEMPTS TO CONTACT THE LOCAL NATIVES

Although the morning was foggy, Mackenzie’s men were on the river by 3:00 a.m. June 19, 1793

thick smoke rose from the forest and there was a strong order of burning resin

As they continued down the Tacoutche Tesse (today’s Fraser River) rocks began to constrict the river

in such a way as to suggest a waterfall was rapidly approaching

Mackenzie landed his canoe and found a faded footpath

work was begun to widen the path enough to allow the canoe to pass over rocky, hilly ground

for about half a mile

as it was being carried on the shoulders of two men the canoe cracked and broke

once again repairs were made and the canoe was successfully launched into the river

As Mackenzie continued down the Tacoutche Tesse the expedition members saw smoke on the shore

but before they could reach land the natives had deserted their camp -- afternoon

Mackenzie’s two hunters were sent to search for the natives and they soon overtook two families

as Mackenzie’s Indians advanced the families fired five arrows but no damage was done

When the two hunters returned they told Mackenzie what had happed

he took Alexander Mackay and one of the hunters and went in pursuit himself

after discovering the natives had fled too great a distance to pursue

they returned to the expedition

Mackenzie reached his men and saw they were examining the goods the two families had left behind

such as fishing tackle, nets, line and bags of red earth used as body paint

some of the items were taken but Mackenzie left other useful things in exchange

Mackenzie’s expedition continued on -- 4:00 p.m.

they landed where a small river entered from the right and camp was made -- 7:30 p.m.

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS EXPLORATION ALONG THE CONTINENTAL COAST

*Discovery* and *Chatham* left their (Yeo Island) anchorage they preceded up Finlayson Channel

and along the east side of Captain Charles Duncan[1788] Princess Royal Island -- June 19, 1793

(where they anchored two days later off the eastern shore of the island)

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION CONTINUES ALONG THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

Fog this morning was so thick that they could not see the length of their canoe

but they continued along their dangerous river regardless -- June 20, 1793

Two red deer were sighted at the edge of the water -- one was killed and the other wounded

Mackenzie’s Indian hunters tracked the wounded animal and killed it

another deer might also have been killed but the dog frightened it away

Mackenzie wrote that these were **“not so large as the elk of the Peace River, but are the real red deer, which I never saw in the north, though I have been told that they are to be found in great numbers in the plains.”**[[120]](#footnote-120)

Natives here had stripped the bark from many of the spruce trees to use on the roof of their dwellings

members of the expedition noticed a house thirty feet long and twenty wide with three doors

intended for occupation by more than one family

with three fireplace an equal distance from each other and beds on either side of them

house walls were five feet high and made of spruce timbers

upright posts inside and outside the house support the walls

its roof was supported by a ridge pole resting on two upright forked pole ten feet high

spars were covered with spruce bark to form the roof -- all tied together with cedar strips

There also was a very large fishing machine that could be placed in the river

**“It was cylindrical in form, fifteen feet long, and four feet and a half in diameter; one end was square, like the head of a cask, and an** (sic) **conical machine was fixed inwards to the other end, of similar dimensions; as the extremity of which was an opening of about seven inches in diameter. This machine was certainly contrived to set in the river, to catch large fish; and very well adapted to that purpose; as when they are once in, it must be impossible for them to get out, unless they should have strength sufficient to break through it. It was made of long pieces of split wood rounded to the size of a small finger and placed at the distance of an inch asunder** (apart), **on six hoops; to this was added a kind of boot of the same materials, into which it may be supposed that the fish are driven, when they are to be taken out.”[[121]](#footnote-121)**

After a short visit to the fishing machine to satisfy their curiosity Mackenzie and his men

continued downriver but their damaged canoe became unmanageable

and was so heavy the men preferred attempting to shoot the rapids rather than portaging

four voyageurs attempted to shoot the rapids

they got about half way before the canoe filled with water but did not overturn

they managed to reach an eddy where they emptied the canoe and reached shore

they were half-drowned -- but they had reduced the portage distance by half

After three hours were spent again repairing the canoe

they once again entered the Tacoutche Tesse below the rapids

camp was made that night in the midst of a rain storm accompanied by thunder

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS

Captain George Vancouver reached British Captain Charles Duncan’s Milbank’s Sound [1788]

he named Cape Swaine” the northwest entrance to Milbanke’s Sound -- June 20, 1793

he named “Day Point” (on what Vancouver thought was British Columbia mainland

but is, in fact, the southern end of today’s Price Island)

snow-capped mountains came into view accompanied by forests of pine trees

Vancouver continued to seek a location where two boat parties could be sent out

LOCAL INDIANS BEGIN TO APPEAR ON THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

This morning dawned very cloudy -- Mackenzie took the time to cache ninety pounds of pemmican

even so, they were under way by 4:00 a.m. June 21, 1793

They passed a small canoe beached at the edge of the woods

soon another appeared with an Indian in it who, seeing them, gave a whoop to alert his friends

they immediately appeared on the bank armed with bows and arrows and spears

it became obvious they would attack if Mackenzie attempted to land

to prove the point a volley of arrows was discharged -- some fell short; others overshot

but no harm was done

Mackenzie had his canoe paddled down the river and landed across from the natives’ location

two of the hostile Indians were seen paddling a canoe downriver to acquire assistance

it was obvious the arrival of their friends would embolden them to attack

in an effort to show the natives that the members of the expedition were friendly,

Mackenzie remained on his side of the river

his interpreters tried to pacify the Indians but with no success

two more Indians went off in a canoe down the river apparently to obtain assistance

Mackenzie sent one of his hunters with a gun into the woods to remain out of sight but close by

he was given instructions to shoot anyone who might attack

Mackenzie then walked along the shore and invited the Indians to come over and see him

all the while his interpreter declared to them that these people were his friends

eventually two natives came over in a canoe but they stopped a hundred yards from shore

Mackenzie signaled to them to land and enticed them with attractive articles

such as looking-glasses, beads and other trinkets

very slowly they drew nearer to the shore but at first would not leave their canoe

at last they came near enough to collect some beads

they were persuaded to come ashore and to sit down

It was found the interpreters could talk with these people

Mackenzie tried to persuade them to come to his canoe -- but they would not

both natives asked for permission to go back to their own side of the river -- this was granted

their return to their friends was a matter of great rejoicing

while the articles that they took back with them were examined with the greatest curiosity

After a little time the white men were asked to come over to the Indians’ side which they did

although the Indians were still timid, the distribution of a few trinkets among them

and a little sugar to the children strengthened their confidence

these people reported the Tacoutche Tesse ran to the south

white people were said to be building houses at its mouth

they warned Alexander Mackenzie about an impossible canyon downriver

was filled with rapids and waterfalls

also they said very belligerent people who lived in underground houses along the shores

might attack the expedition and do them great harm

Mackenzie managed to hire two of the men to introduce them to their belligerent neighbors

before they could depart a small canoe with three men it was seen coming up the river

Mackenzie believed it a good idea to wait for these people who obviously had been summoned

although at first the new arrivals were very hostile, eventually they calmed enough to begin to talk

one middle-aged Indian told Mackenzie his friends downriver had been warned

they would not hesitate to attack the members of the expedition

he suggested Mackenzie wait until morning when proper arrangements could be made

for them to pass through this country

Mackenzie spent the rest of the day conversing with these seven families composed of eighteen men

who were clad in leather and handsome beaver and rabbit-skin blankets

they were preparing to build fishing machines for the summer salmon run

Mackenzie and his men camped for the night and the canoe was unloaded and the seams gummed

their canoe was so weak, leaky and unmanageable that it was utterly necessary to build a new one

two voyageurs and an Indian were sent out to find more of the necessary materials

to add to their supply

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION ENCOUNTERS MORE LOCAL NATIVES

Mackenzie and his nine men set out on the Tacoutche Tesse -- 6:00 a.m. June 22, 1793

they followed a canoe paddled by one of the local natives as another joined them in their canoe

this provided Mackenzie an opportunity to have their arrival announced to the local Indians

They landed near a house with only the roof above the ground but its inhabitants had fled in alarm

(they had arrived at today’s Alexandria, British Columbia later named in honor of Mackenzie)

in the mid-distance several men had taken a menacing stance

these men were approached by Mackenzie’s native emissaries

one of the fierce Indians was persuaded to approach

seven others soon followed with their bows and arrows at the ready

once the warriors were relieved of their concerns, ten women approached but without children

it was assumed they had been sent farther away out of danger

Mackenzie distributed presents and relayed the nature of his expedition

Mackenzie showed these natives how firearms could be used to oppose enemies or to assist friends

when the expedition members continued on about a half hour later

these people had a favorable impression

Progressing down the river another group of natives living in temporary huts were met and pacified

Mackenzie and his men were invited to spend the night with them

as the canoe was being prepared to be launched Mackenzie was surprised to hear a woman

who spoke several Knisteneaux Indians words -- she was a Rocky Mountain native

interpreters for the expedition understood her perfectly

as she explained she had been taken prisoner by the Knisteneaux across the mountains

after a summer there she managed to escape return home

but she was taken prisoner by a war party of the people she was now with

while she no complaints regarding her current husband she wanted to return home

Mackenzie arranged with her to meet again and went to take a latitude reading

About thirty-five Indians, including a large number of women, visited with the expedition members

among the natives were men from four various local tribes and a Rocky Mountain Indian man

who served as an interpreter allowing Mackenzie to acquire a great deal of information

Mackenzie selected an old man and asked him to draw a sketch of the country on a piece of bark

he began immediately and stopped frequently to ask the advice of others around him

he explained the river received many rivers and was full of waterfalls and rapids

some of these were dangerous and six were impassable with long portages

he identified the land of three other tribes in succession who spoke different languages

Mackenzie’s men were concerned about the report given by the Indians

it seemed insane to try to pass through so many hostile and barbarous tribes

but Mackenzie had only thirty days’ worth of supplies remaining

and no more than fifty rifle balls with about thirty pounds of lead shot

that could be made into ammunition -- but at a considerable waste of material

Mackenzie, himself, was concerned about the distance to the ocean

and the need to return to Fort Chipewyan before (winter)

not only was he rapidly running out of supplies but it obviously would take a long time

to get to the Pacific Ocean and return to Fort Chipewyan

Mackenzie requested the woman prisoner be brought forward so he could question her further

regarding the country ahead -- but he received only vague, evasive answers regarding her

as the Indians were concerned she would be taken away

Mackenzie’s expedition spent the night in the Indian camp of huts

where they were entertained with singing and dances

VANCOUVER SENDS OUT MORE TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

Captain Vancouver discovered a location beside Princess Royal Island -- June 22, 1793

where he could dispatch two boat expeditions to conduct detailed investigations

Master Joseph Whidbey in the *Discovery’s* cutter

accompanied by Midshipman Harry Humphrys in the launch were given a week’s supplies

and sent through an as yet unexplored opening south of their location

Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie took the *Discovery’s* small cutter

to investigate an opening to their west as far as a week’s supplies would take them

Clear weather allowed Captain Vancouver who remained with the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

to take several good observations to determine their exact latitude and longitude

Whidbey and Humphrys returned that night having found that the passage they followed terminated

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TAKES THE ADVICE OF LOCAL INDIANS

After a restless night spent by Mackenzie while he considered his situation

he called the Indians from their huts to gather more information -- morning June 23, 1793

These Indians informed him that parts of the river were virtually impassable

and that its mouth was still far to the south

in their view the best way to reach the ocean was by a considerably shorter route overland

taking this route would require returning back up the Tacoutche Tesse (Fraser River)

to the vicinity of a small tributary which fell from the west into the great river

they should follow its valley westward over a trail called the **“Great Road”**

this was the route the old Indian at Fort Chipewyan had identified for Mackenzie

they assured the members of the expedition the road was not difficult as it avoided mountains

they said this route required leaving the canoe behind

but another canoe might be acquired from their trading partners who went to the ocean

these people often traveled the route which was visible throughout the journey

it would take no more than six nights to reach the people

who bartered for dressed leather and beaver, bear, lynx fox and marten skins

in exchange for iron, brass, copper, beads and other goods

from there they said the distance would be only one day’s voyage with the current

to a lake whose water was nauseous (the Pacific Ocean)

where they had heard that great canoes came two (winters) ago

and people belonging to them brought great quantities of goods

Mackenzie decided his best route forward was to follow the natives’ advice although this required

returning back up the river for a considerable distance before striking out overland

Mackenzie had given a moose hide to some of the women to make shoes which were brought out

they were well sewn but poorly shaped -- a few beads was considered sufficient reward

Mackenzie hired a guide and was ready to set out

however, their guide announced he first wanted to return to his home to complete his preparations

Mackenzie was concerned about his loyalty but thought it unwise to oppose him

Alexander Mackay and two Indians were sent to accompany the guide to his home

they would rendezvous tomorrow at the sunken house beside the river

Mackenzie’s expedition began back up the Tacoutche Tesse in a rain storm -- 10:00 a.m.

after this day’s hard paddling they had not reached the where they were to meet Mackay

they stopped at a native encampment where the night was passed in complete safety

WHIDBEY AND HUMPHREYS ARE AGAIN SENT ON A BOAT EXPEDITION

*Discovery’s* cutter and launch entered a northwest running branch -- June 23, 1793

this lead terminated after five miles so they traced the continental examined by James Johnstone

but Whidbey concentrated on openings probably not explored by Johnstone

Dr. Archibald Menzies accompanied Whidbey seeking botanical specimens

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION INTERRUPTS THEIR VOYAGE UP THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

Alexander Mackenzie made his departure from camp -- 4:00 a.m. June 24, 1793

everyone met at the appointed rendezvous except Mackenzie’s newly-hired guide

who had explained to Mackay that the Indians were planning to attack the expedition

this information caused a general panic among Mackenzie’s voyageurs and hunters

Mackenzie ignored his men and ordered the canoe unloaded except for six packages

two voyageurs were left to protect the canoe and goods

all of the others returned to their former camp at the Indian encampment

where it was hoped the Indians might be found

on their arrival it was discovered the natives had gone leaving behind their possessions

there was nothing to do but return to the canoe and the two voyageurs left to protect it

In spite of his men’s fiercely expressed desires to leave immediately

Mackenzie sought out a position that could be defended

he distributed arms and ammunition to his men in anticipation of an attack

a native in a canoe stopped at the Indian huts where camp had been made

all efforts to have him meet with Mackenzie failed

Mackenzie ordered his canoe reloaded and staked to the river bank to allow for a quick escape

all through the cloudy, rainy night a watch was kept

INVESTIGATIONS OF CAPTAIN VANCOUVER BECOME TEDIOUS

As *Discovery* and *Chatham* remained at anchor the wind died down

but very heavy rains continued in the morning -- June 24, 1793

an unusually high tide carried off several water casks

efforts to catch fish using seine nets and hooks yielded little

unpleasant weather added to their irksome situation as they examined the inhospitable region

surrounding Princess Royal Island

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REMAINS IN THEIR DEFENSIVE LOCATION

Mackenzie’s nine men informed Alexander Mackay they would go no farther -- June 25, 1793

when he heard of it, this demand was ignored by Mackenzie

but while he was taking a latitude reading his men loaded the canoe without being ordered

this, too, was ignored as nothing good would come from a confrontation

Their defensive position was visited by a young woman the expedition had seen before at the huts

she was asked what had prompted the general alarm shown by the Indians

but communication with her was all but impossible

she was treated with great kindness in the hope she would return to her people

and the peaceful intent of expedition could be conveyed

Camp was again made at the defensive location and guards were posted

MACKENZIE DECIDES TO CONTINUE HIS RETURN UP TACOUTCHE TESSE

When a rustling noise was heard in the woods it generated a general alarm about midnight

Mackenzie was awakened and told of the possible intruder but nothing could be heard

Mackenzie took his turn at the watch -- 1:00 a.m. June 26, 1793

their dog constantly ran back and forth along the edge of the woods in restless vigilance

Mackenzie was replaced as the watchman but was soon awakened and informed

that something like a human was creeping along on all fours about fifty yards away

Mackenzie searched and found it was true but attributed the intrusion to a bear

When day broke it was discovered the intruder was a grey haired old blind man

who had been left behind by those who had fled from the huts

hunger drove him from his hiding place in the woods

when Mackenzie placed his hand on the man’s shoulder he shuddered with fear

he was guided to the fire and was fed as he had not eaten in two days

Mackenzie asked the old blind man what had alarmed his relatives and friends

he said that shortly after the expedition left natives had arrived

they identified the members of the expedition as enemies

when the expedition unexpectedly returned and their guide was gone they fled in panic

he said he would readily guide the expedition to the start of the overland route but he was blind

but he confirmed the information the explorers had regarding the proper place to begin

When another Indian appeared across the river in a canoe -- sunrise June 26, 1793

Mackenzie requested the old man call out to him but there was no answer

and the native set out paddling down the river as fast as possible

Mackenzie decided there was no purpose to be served by staying where they were

he compelled the old blind man to accompany them to introduce them to any Indians they met

camp was broken and they left what Mackenzie named “Deserter’s Creek” -- 7:00 a.m.

Soon their canoe became so leaky that one person was occupied bailing it out to keep it afloat

they asked the old man where materials could be found to build a new canoe

he reported that plenty of bark and cedar could be found further up the river

All day long the men were in ill humor -- they quibbled and quarreled among themselves

but did not vent their feeling on Mackenzie

Traveling up the Tacoutche Tesse Mackenzie’s canoe hit a tree stump in the river about sunset

this gave rise to outbursts of bad feeling among the voyageurs

Mackenzie turned his attention to finding a place to build a new canoe

They found a small island with plenty of spruce -- 5:00 p.m.

but before they could unload their canoe and pitch their tent a thunderstorm and rain arrived

and lasted all night

the next day was spent gathering materials for the construction of a new canoe

*DISCOVERY’S* SMALL CUTTER RETURNS CARRYING JOHNSTONE AND BARRIE

Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie returned to the *Discovery*

having completed their investigation in just six days -- June 28, 1793

Lieutenants Johnstone and Barrie gave a report to Captain Vancouver

they discovered the branch they had followed extended about twelve miles

before it united with two extensive arms -- one leading north and the other west

this western branch extended nearly six miles before it joined with two other branches

one running east and the other northwesterly

they followed the northern branch until an opening to the west was taken up

heavy rain and misty weather forced the boat expedition into camp [June 23]

three nights of uncomfortable conditions slowed their investigation

more moderate weather [June 26] helped them follow a spacious channel to the west

Johnstone and Barrie reinvestigated the region first explored by British Charles Duncan [1788]

they reached an island that Johnstone concluded was Banks Island

(previously identified by British Captain Charles Duncan [1788])

Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano named Isle de Gil [1792] (Gil Island)

these names were left by Vancouver

Johnstone decided a passage to the Pacific Ocean was certain to be found

so he decided to return to the ships by a more direct route

they had explored the northern reaches of (Princess Royal Channel)

as well as (Whale Channel)and (Squally Channel) and had circumnavigated Isle de Gil

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER DECIDES TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Lieutenant James Johnstone’s thorough report made remaining at Princess Royal Island unnecessary

Vancouver decided to explore the western arm where Johnstone had located

what appeared to be good anchorage that would be seen by Master Whidbey on his return

but in the event Whidbey passed by in the night or in bad weather,

Vancouver left a note in a bottle at the previously agreed-to location

Shore equipment was loaded as *Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed

in heavy squalls and rainy weather -- June 28, 1793

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION BUILDS ANOTHER CANOE

Everyone was up early and employed in preparations to construct a replacement canoe

different parties searched for wood, watap (thread from conifer trees)

and sap that could be used to produce gum to seal the canoe’s parts

they returned and work on the new canoe was begun -- 2:00 p.m. June 28, 1793

WORK PROGRESSES SLOWLY ON THE NEW CANOE

Alexander Mackenzie became so frustrated by the slowness of the canoe building effort

that the project’s leader incurred his wrath -- June 29, 1793

Mackenzie announced the man’s dedication to eating surpassed his dedication to work

Two natives in a canoe were seen as they came alongside the island -- 2:00 p.m.

Mackenzie was surprised to discover his recently hired guide was one of the occupants

this man immediately apologized and said he had been busy looking for his family

because they had scattered in the panic

friendly conversations among the old blind man and his two newly-arrived friends

took up all afternoon -- the old man reported Mackenzie had treated him very well

Work continued on the new canoe over the next several days

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S MEN CONTINUE TO WORK ON THEIR NEW CANOE

Construction on the new canoe progressed -- June 30, 1793

their newly returned guide and his friend maintained good humor throughout the day

they said that their friends should be found above and below the carrying place

where the overland trail began

Mackenzie took the time to establish his latitude and longitude

During the night the old Indian blind man attempted to run off but was easily returned to camp

where Mackenzie’s guide and his friend scolded him for his treachery

Mackenzie awakened Alexander Mackay and related what had happened

he requested Mackay remain watchful while Mackenzie slept

VANCOUVER ARRIVES AT A NEW LOCATION

After a slow and difficult passage from their previous anchorage at Princess Royal Island

*Discovery* and *Chatham* arrived at what proved to be a large cove

as Lieutenant James Johnstone had indicated it would be -- July 1, 1793

after anchoring the crewmen set about restocking their supplies

while fishing was unsuccessful, raspberries, red and black berries were plentiful

MACKENZIE’S GUIDE DISAPPEARS ONCE AGAIN

Alexander Mackenzie did not wake up until 7:00 a.m. July 1, 1793

when he left his tent Mackenzie was surprised to see their guide and his friend were missing

he was told by some his men that the guide had gone up the river and left the old man behind

Mackay also reported that while he was busy with the canoe he watched them leave

Mackenzie’s interpreter reported their guide had stated he planned to set out at sunrise

and go to wait for the expedition where he would find his friends

Mackenzie could only hope this was true

Work on the canoe was completed -- 5:00 p.m. July 1, 1793

she proved to be stronger than the old one

the rest of the day was spent by the men in preparation to travel and in cleaning themselves time also was dedicated to putting their weapons in order

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION IS AGAIN WATER BOUND UP THE TACOUTCHE TESSE

Rain had fallen throughout the night but final preparations for their departure were completed

Mackenzie offered to take the old blind man to where his friends might find him but he declined

they left him with a few pounds of pemmican

Mackenzie named “Canoe Island”(which no longer exists) they departed -- 3:30 a.m. July 2, 1793

he noted in his journal: **“During our stay there we had been most cruelly tormented by flies, particularly by sand-flies, which I am disposed to consider as the most tormenting insect of its kind in nature.”[[122]](#footnote-122)**

he also noted the river had fallen three feet in depth since their arrival

Mackenzie reduced their rations to two meals a day much to the dismay of his expedition members

their food now consisted chiefly of the dried salmon roe (eggs)

boiled with a little flour and grain to make a substantial and not unpleasant dish

Once again they arrived at a rapid -- 11:00 a.m.

one of the men refused to continue in the canoe although the water had fallen four and half feet

from the first time they had passed this spot

Mackenzie decided to cross to the west side of the river where the current appeared less swift

Alexander Mackay and two hunters were put on shore to search for game

while the remainder of the expedition paddled along the rocks

until they could go no further without a tow line

most of the men wanted to re-cross the river and try the other side but Mackenzie sent two men

with the line to climb the rocks, scramble down the other side, fasten the line to a roll of bark

and send it back down the river to the others

although this plan was difficult and dangerous, it worked

and the canoe was attached to the towline and cordelled up the rapids

doing this several times allowed them overcome the rapids

although at two of the cascades they were forced to portage

they hoped to meet their reluctant guide and his friends but there was no sign of them

As they continued on their way the current was not swift but fallen trees impeded their progress camp was made in the company of a great number of annoying sand-flies -- 8:00 p.m.

JOSEPH WHIDBEY’S BOAT EXPEDITION RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Master Joseph Whidbey and Midshipman Harry Humphrys in the *Discovery’s* cutter and launch

were seen approaching the ships -- July 2, 1793

When Whidbey reported on board the *Discovery* he informed Vancouver of his expedition’s results

after setting out from the vicinity of Princess Royal Island as they followed the coastal shore

in a northerly direction

extremely bad weather had forced the boat expedition to rest for the night

on a rugged rocky shore where there was scarcely a horizontal space to sleep [June 23]

in the morning [June 24] as they prepared to break camp

smoke was seen coming from stones on the shore

an investigation at low tide showed this to be steam from running hot water

as some of the men attempted to wash their hands they found the water to be very hot

Whidbey left a note for Vancouver indicating the route the boat party and taken pressing on to the northwest along the continental shore

Whidbey examined a small branch that terminated after two miles

retracing their journey they turned north again following the continental shore

lofty mountains rose nearly perpendicularly from the ocean

and were covered to the summits by pines and forest trees

several small bays and coves were filled with more driftwood than they had seen before

that night was very uncomfortable as the rising tide flooded their tents

while a heavy rain pounded on their heads

Whidbey named their location “Point Staniforth” (now Staniforth Point)

morning [June 25] after breakfast the boat expedition entered a channel running to the southeast

they passed mountains rising nearly vertically from the sea

that were heavily forested near the water but barren at the top

lunch was eaten on an island located at nearly mid-channel

continuing on Whidbey’s boat expedition arrived at what appeared to be a small bay

here they stopped for the night after passing through desolate and inhospitable country it was discovered that one of planks on the cutter had been caved-in and the boat was leaking

this was repaired by nailing a piece of lead over the damage making the boat watertight

daylight [June 26] showed Whidbey that he was not in a small bay as he had thought

but rather were within the entrance to a small river that wound itself between two mountains

hazardous rocks across the river barred further investigation so Whidbey turned up the arm

which terminated after about thirty miles

morning [June 27] Whidbey’s boat party returned down the arm they had traced the day before

(Vancouver later applied the name “Gardner’s Canal” to this body of water

in honor of Sir Alan Gardner -- today known as Gardner Canal)

this region was almost devoid of woods and plants and was nearly completely naked rocks

that rose into rugged mountains more lofty than they had seen before

ice and snow covered the towering summits and fed many waterfalls

Whidbey’s boat expedition [on June 28] returned to where they had been [on June 25]

that afternoon an investigation of an inlet on the unexplored southern shore was undertaken

as usual this terminated -- this time at a point about nine miles from Point Staniforth

seven miles up what appeared to be the main channel the expedition was met by eight Indians

these were the first natives they had seen on this expedition

two fine salmon each weighing about seventy pounds were traded for small pieces of iron

morning [June 29] dawned with heavy rain but calm weather both continued all day

Whidbey resumed his investigation along the continental shore in the afternoon

after traveling nine miles north Whidbey named “Point Hopkins” (Hopkins Point)

further along, the main channel divided into two branches running northeast and northwest

as the northeast branch followed the coastline that was the route taken

after traveling eleven miles the same Indians who sold them the huge salmon were met

when the boat expedition stopped for lunch

they were joined by about sixty natives in ten canoes

Whidbey invited the chief to have dinner (lunch) which the chief considered a great honor

he drank some grog and was very fond of bread and sugar

this was shared with his villagers who responded to the taste with pleasure

otter pelts and animal skins were traded for copper, blue cloth and blankets

as usual these Indians were civil and honest

continuing on, camp was made that night in a small cove within a bay

when signs were given that the members of the boat expedition were going to rest

the Indians immediately retired to another cove a little distance away

Whidbey set out at 4:00 a.m. [June 30] up the main channel accompanied by the Indians

after traveling nine miles the channel terminated but unlike the others the land here was flat

with a small river running through it that was navigable by canoe

this valley between two mountains was three or four miles wide and covered with tall trees

here the boat party had a late breakfast where they found the remains of an Indian village

after breakfast the Indians accompanying the expedition turned up the river in their canoes

contrary winds slowed Whidbey’s progress so that when they stopped for the night at 9:00 p.m.

only eleven miles had been made from the head of the inlet

Whidbey’s expedition set out once again --3:00 a.m. [July 1] and traveled down the western shore

along the continent passing an island or group of islands

Whidbey continued down the arm and reached what he named “Point Ashton”

by this time provisions were nearly exhausted

there was no assurance the ships could be reached following their present route

Whidbey decided to quit the investigation of the continental shore and return to the ships

they had breakfast at Point Ashton after which they made good time journeying to the south

continuing south Joseph Whidbey named “Point Cumming” [July 2] at the tip of (Gribbell Island)

here Whidbey had left a note [June 24] thus proving he had circumnavigated an island

Vancouver named this “Hawksbury Island” in honor of British Lord Hawkesbury

Master Joseph Whidbey and Midshipman Harry Humphrys returned to *Discovery* and *Chatham*

they had surveyed “Ursula Channel,” “Devastation Channel” and “Douglas Channel”

and “Kitimat Arm” and “Kildala Arm”

VANCOUVER AGAIN MOVES HIS SHIPS

Master Joseph Whidbey’s thorough investigation convinced Captain George Vancouver

than only small channels remained to be examined in this vicinity

Vancouver decided to proceed to where Lieutenant James Johnstone had ended his investigation

as Johnstone had identified a convenient anchorage for the ships there

Vancouver sailed the *Discovery* to the west accompanied by Lieutenant Peter Puget with the *Chatham*

they entered the passage exited by Johnston and arrived at “Nepean’s Sound” **--** July 2, 1793

when the favorable breeze died away it was replaced by a contrary wind

both ships had be towed by their smaller boats across (today’s Nepean Sound

located west of Bank’s Island an north of the Estevan Group)

after traveling only about four-and-a-half miles both ships anchored for the night

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE FACES A DILEMMA

It rained hard that night with rain squalls continuing in the morning

Mackenzie’s expedition entered the river to continue their journey -- 4:00 a.m. July 3, 1793

Ten days had passed since Mackenzie began his return up Tacoutche Tesse

they came to the small river which met the description given to them by the Indians

as the beginning of the overland “Great Road” they were to follow to the sea coast

this discovery, however, caused Mackenzie to become perplexed

he wanted to strike overland to reach the ocean sooner than if they traveled by water

but if they did not follow the main river they might miss their guide

and attempting to strike out overland through the woods without an Indian guide

to introduce them to the natives they met would be dangerous

Mackenzie called a council of his men and asked for their advice -- July 3

he said he wanted to reach the ocean by traveling overland because it would probably save time

but he noted he would not attempt to do this unless they would agree

that if the overland journey proved not to be possible they would return with him

and continue the journey up the small river, whatever the distance, to the ocean

some of the men agreed to follow Mackenzie but others suggested it might be better to travel

up the Tacoutche Tesse a little further hoping to find their guide or acquire another

if that failed they could always return to this spot and begin their overland trek

Mackenzie agreed with this plan

several men were sent into the woods in different directions to scout

while Mackenzie went up the small river to scout

he soon found his canoe was too large for this stream

two of his men found a well-worn path leading up a hill which seemed to be the Great Road

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY LEADS ANOTHER BOAT EXPEDITION

After a tedious night of difficulty keeping the ships anchored

Joseph Whidbey set out in the *Discovery’s* large cutter with provisions for ten days

accompanied by Midshipman Robert Barrie in the small cutter -- July 3, 1793

Vancouver had established a rendezvous point but he also gave Whidbey instructions

that if Vancouver was not there when he arrived Whidbey was to continue to follow the coast

MACKENZIE FINDS HIS RELUCTANT GUIDE

Alexander Mackenzie and his men again set out up the Tacoutche Tesse -- 4:00 p.m. July 3, 1793

within the hour two canoes were seen coming down the river these Indians’ beached their canoes

Mackenzie and his men followed them

they discovered these were his frequently disappearing guide and six relatives

their guide was hardly recognizable to the members of the expedition

as he was dressed in a beautiful painted beaver robe

their guide immediately explained he had not deserted them

he always intended to keep his word

Mackenzie accepted this explanation and gave him a jacket, a pair of pants and a handkerchief

as a reward for his honorable conduct

Their guide’s relatives examined the explorers and informed them they were the people

who lived in the sunken house and had fled in alarm when they first saw the whites

they said they were so terrified that they did not return to their homes for two days

and when they did return they found most of their property destroyed by a fire

these were, according to their account, a different people who were called “Nascud Denee”

their main village was some distance away on a small lake where they took fish

they said the road from their village was the shortest route to the sea

Mackenzie made camp with the Nascud Denee -- they were joined by the guide and his relatives

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE RELIES ON HIS RELUNCANT GUIDE

Mackenzie and his men, at the suggestion of their guide, set out early in the morning -- July 4, 1793

they proceeded up the Tacoutche Tesse to the village of his relatives

As they drew close to their destination Mackenzie wanted to hide some things

that he did not want to take to village but he had a great deal of trouble

putting some distance between his men and his guide’s people

Alexander Mackay and one of the expedition’s hunters were sent ahead with the guide

soon they were out of sight

Mackenzie and the remainder of his men hid a cache of about ninety pounds of pemmican,

two bags of wild rice and a gallon keg of gunpowder wrapped in oilcloth and dressed leather

in a second hiding place he placed two bags of Indian corn and a bale of trade articles

these also were securely wrapped

Mackenzie and his expedition then continued to where Mackay was waiting for them at a small river

here the explorers built a platform and left their canoe placed bottom-side up

covered with small trees and branches to protect it from the sun

next they built a ten-foot by five-foot hollow square out of fresh-cut logs

they placed everything they could not carry with them to the ocean in it

before they covered the whole thing with large pieces of timber

in the meantime, their guide and his relatives became impatient and set out without the explorers

it was only with some difficulty that another native was persuaded to remain and lead them

Mackenzie and his men entered the woods and followed a well-used path up a steep hill -- noon

they climbed for about a mile in extreme heat

they noted the surrounding country was rugged with ridges and full of woods

each voyageur had a burden of ninety pounds in addition to his gun and ammunition

these packs were composed of four-and-a-half ninety-pound bags of pemmican,

a case of scientific instruments, ninety-pound packs of trade goods for presents

and ninety pounds of ammunition

Mackenzie’s hunters each carried forty-five pounds of pemmican

along with their gun and ammunition

Mackenzie and Mackay each carried twenty-two pounds of pemmican,

some rice and sugar weighting about seventy pounds, their guns and ammunition

in addition Mackenzie carried the tube of his telescope awkwardly across his shoulders

rain hit and continued until evening and even when it stopped the trees and bushes

continued to drip on the members of the expedition

Mackenzie and his men arrived at the Indian camp which was lit by three fires -- 6:30 p.m.

they had traveled west about twelve miles since leaving their canoe

their guide announced they would stay for the night

these Indians were poor and only a few small, dried fish could be acquired

At sunset an elderly Indian arrived at the camp from the west

he said many Indians were returning from trading on the coast

according to him they were six days away from the land of those who bartered their pelts

for iron and trade goods and from there it was not quite two more days to the sea

It was proposed by the Indians that two young men be sent ahead of the explorers

to notify the various tribes of their approach so as to not surprise the people

and thus assure a friendly reception

Mackenzie agreed and set about befriending the young men who would represent the expedition

Mackenzie and his men retired for the night exhausted with the day’s efforts

as soon as they laid down the natives began to sing soft plaintive notes that were harmonious

without dancing, drums, or rattles -- this sounded somewhat like church music

VANCOUVER SEEKS BETTER ANCHORAGE

*Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed from Nepean’s Sound with a moderate breeze-- 10:30 a.m. July 4, 1793

as they entered Nepean’s Sound progress was so slow

that by evening they had only reached Point Cumming

when they turned the point the wind which should have become favorable shifted to unfavorable

both ships were forced stop and tie off to trees for the night

*Chatham’s* First Mate Thomas Manby was sent to locate better anchorage

when Manby returned he reported good anchorage could be found on the east side

of Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano’s Gil Island [1792]

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION STRIKES OUT OVERLAND

Indians had requested that Mackenzie not leave early in the morning so he waited until 5:00 a.m.

before he requested the two young men who were to proceed them to depart -- July 5, 1793

When their reluctant guide was called for he announced he would not accompany Mackenzie

as the young men who had been sent ahead could do his job

One of Mackenzie’s men had lost his long throwing knife during the night

Mackenzie informed his reluctant guide of this event and asked that it be returned

he knew it was important to maintain his status with the local natives

especially as he would travel this way again on his return trip

Mackenzie and his guide agreed the guide would receive a knife for his service

all of the Indians’ knives were gathered and the natives formed a circle with the guide in the center

when all was ready the guide began to sing and was joined by the others

after chanting for some time the guide produced the throwing knife

which was stuck in the ground in front of Mackenzie

Mackenzie’s overland journey began just above the mouth of the (West Road [Blackwater] River)

northwest of (today’s [Quesnel](http://www.bcadventure.com/adventure/explore/cariboo/cities/quesnel.htm), British Columbia) -- 7:00 a.m. July 5, 1793

members of the expedition carried about four hundred pounds of pemmican, scientific instruments,

some trade goods and their weapons and ammunition

every man was required to carry a pack besides his own gun and personal effects

suddenly their reluctant guide volunteered to lead them once again

but he refused to carry anything which lowed the morale of the entire company

he escorted them to a small lake where an encampment with three families was located

next they entered on a well-worn trail through open country sprinkled with Cyprus trees

During the morning the sky turned black -- rain started to about noon and continued for about an hour

using their oilskins to shield them, the expedition continued beside another lake and over a stream

Mackenzie took the lead to clear the branches of the rain water that hung on them

they crossed level country with only a slight amount of underbrush shielded by large fir trees

Mackenzie’s guide informed him the countryside abounded in beaver

and many traps that were set for lynxes and martins could be seen along the road

as they advanced about a quarter of a mile from where the rain had stopped,

the ground was covered with hail -- hailstones increased to the size of musket balls

Threatening rain caused them to stop and build a shed beside a lake -- 5:00 p.m.

rain increased in violence the remainder of the day and camp was made for the night

VANCOUVER EXPERIENCES EQUIPMENT FAILURE

As the *Discovery* made ready to sail the bower (small bow anchor) was found to be broken

one arm had been lost when the anchor hit a rock

Vancouver developed serious doubts about the condition of all of his equipment

*Discovery* anchored along the east side of Gil Island -- 3:00 p.m. -- July 5, 1793

*Chatham* had difficulty anchoring in a location some distance from *Discovery*

Lieutenant Peter Puget moved his ship closer to the *Discovery* and anchored -- 5:00 p.m. July 5

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S MEN HIKE ACROSS THE INTERIOR PLATEAU

When Mackenzie’s expedition was once again on the move -- 4:00 a.m. July 6, 1793

Mackenzie took the lead to clear the branches of raindrops

They reached a well-marked trail -- 8:30 a.m.

their reluctant guide told them the trail was very good and well used

he proposed to go ahead to inform the next tribe that the explorers were coming

Mackenzie was concerned he would run away again

so he suggest one of the guide’s relatives stay with the main party

while two voyageurs would accompany the guides to the next village

this was ignored and the guide and his relatives were soon out of sight

Mackenzie took Cancre, one of his hunters, and his weapon with him

he instructed his men to follow as quickly as possible

if Mackenzie found local natives familiar with the region he would wait for them

Mackenzie followed his guide until he discovered him talking with a native family

that consisted of one man, two women and six children

they displayed no fear and the family man willingly talked

they carried an old blind woman in turns on their backs -- these people respected old age he pointed to one of his wives who had come from the coast which he said was not far distant

she was decorated with various ornaments such as large blue beads,

pendants hung from her ears and encircled her neck

she wore bracelets of brass, copper and horn

her dress was a kind of tunic which was covered with a robe of matted bark

fringed at the bottom with sea otter pelt

she confirmed they were close to the sea

After Mackenzie’s men had rejoined their leader and eaten lunch they were once again under way

two hours later they came upon two men and their families who displayed their weapons

Mackenzie’s young emissaries immediately ran forward and spoke with the two men

who laid down their weapons and received the explorers as friends

soon a woman and a boy came from the river with water which was shared by everyone

Mackenzie’s reluctant guide once again informed the expedition leader that he would go no further

but he would be replaced by the two men they had just met

there was little apparent concern when the two men left their families to join the expedition

one of these men could be understood by Mackenzie’s interpreter

he had lived on the coast until a short time ago

he (incorrectly) reported they were approaching a river which was neither large nor long

this short river emptied into a bay at the ocean where a great wooden canoe

with white people had arrived about the time the leaves began to grow

Continuing their overland trek across an uneven, hilly, swampy region led by two new guides

Mackenzie’s progress was slowed by a large number of fallen trees

heavy rain and hail fell -- about 5:00 p.m.

Mackenzie chose to camp because the men were tired

they had come about twenty-four miles that day

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE LEADS ANOTHER BOAT EXPEDITION

*Discovery* and *Chatham* remained anchored off Gil Island

anchors on both ships were replaced as a precaution

in the event they were needed to save the ships from destruction in a storm

*Chatham’s* launch required some repairs which detained Lieutenant James Johnstone’s departure

he did not set out with a week’s supplies to examine the coastline toward the ocean

until -- 4:00 a.m. July 6, 1793

Johnstone was to stop at the place previously arranged for a rendezvous with Joseph Whidbey

Thick weather and unfavorable winds kept the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at anchor off Gil Island

Vancouver allowed his men to take advantage of the abundant berries

and interesting woods to investigate

Lieutenant Johnstone returned to the ships -- about 9:00 p.m. July 6

when he arrived at the rendezvous location he had found a note left by Whidbey

stating the supposed opening to the ocean in fact terminated

because Whidbey had pressed on exploring the coastline, Johnstone’s efforts were unnecessary

but Johnstone had succeeded in finding a better anchorage for the two ships

MACKENZIE’ EXPEDITION MEETS SERVERAL NATIVE FAMILIES

Camp was broken -- 5:00 a.m. July 7, 1793

Mackenzie’s expedition proceeded across two mountains

covered with spruce, poplar, white-birch and other trees

they then descended into a level country where a good road, through woods of cypress was found

When Mackenzie’s guides observed people coming toward them, they rushed forward to meet them

this party consisted of a man, two women and three children

one of the men stepped forward with a axe in his hand but soon was pacified

an elderly woman, probably the man’s mother, was busily clearing a spot about five feet around

where her husband and a son were buried

she stopped to clear the area every time she passed by as a tribute of her affection

After a brief rest Mackenzie’s expedition set out once again

seven men, as many women, and several children were seen -- about 3:00 p.m.

they showed great alarm which was overcome by Mackenzie

who hired one of the men to serve as a guide

later in the afternoon the river they had been following was crossed where it was only knee deep

and about a hundred yards wide

Mackenzie reached the home belonging to friend of his two new guides

here the members of the expedition were welcomed by the family

and they stopped for the night -- 7:30 p.m.

they had covered about twelve miles, part of it across a large knee-deep swamp

it had rained several times during the day

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ENTERS THE SOUTHERN EDGE OF THE (RAINBOW RANGE)

Rain that had continued through the night greeted the explorers that morning

Mackenzie kept his men in camp until 7:00 a.m. -- July 8, 1793

when their guide brought them five small boiled fish served on a bark platter

after drying their clothes by the fire they set out -- 8:00 a.m.

they were cheerfully accompanied by their newest guide

Mackenzie learned from him that this lake, through which the river passed

extended to the foot of the mountain and he expected to meet nine men

from the tribe that lived north of the river

Mackenzie was surprised to discover several basins whose twelve-foot-high banks were steeply sloped

some held water and others were empty

here the ground they crossed was uneven and was covered with poplar trees

there was little underbrush but lots of grass could be seen underneath the trees

rivulets ran through the valleys, but no animals of any kind could be seen

Rain continued as they ascended the (Rainbow Mountains), a very colorful small extinct volcanic range

northeast of the coast range proper

some of the slopes were creamy white striped with red

Indians called these “the mountains that bleed”

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION CONTINUES TO CROSS THE (RAINBOW MOUNTAINS)

Heavy and continual rain fell most of the night -- thus time was required to dry their clothes

Mackenzie sent most of the members of his expedition

and his Indian guide forward -- 7:30 a.m. July 9, 1793

two of his men remained with him as he cached half a bag of pemmican buried under the fire pit

in anticipation of their return trip

soon after setting out Mackenzie and his companions overtook the expedition

Mackenzie and his men continued on their journey for sixteen miles

when they came across the largest river they had seen since leaving their canoe -- 2:00 p.m.

since it was full of fish Mackenzie guessed (today’s Dean River)

must empty into a great river further downstream

(in fact, it empties into Dean Channel -- an arm of the Pacific Ocean)

Mackenzie eventually reached a place where a raft had been left by Indians to serve as a ferry

they killed a bald eagle and a grey eagle and three partridges

and saw two otters in the river along with several beaver lodges

when the rain stopped they caught several small fish and repaired the raft for use the next day

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER SHIFTS HIS POSITION ONCE AGAIN

When Lieutenant James Johnstone had returned to the ships he pointed out a location

that provided better anchorage which Vancouver now sought

both ships anchored off the northern point of Gil Island -- July 9, 1793

This new location offered the advantage of good fishing and an abundance of berries

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE IS ONCE AGAIN FORCED TO HIRE NEW GUIDES

Preparations on the newly found raft were completed early morning -- July 10, 1793

at this point the ferry crossing was about thirty yards wide

it required five trips to get their supplies and men across

Walking on for only a short distance a stream running from the west entered the river

beyond which three hundred yards of rapids had to be passed before the river expanded

into a lake along which the trail continued beneath beautiful hills covered with green

they reached the end of the lake -- 8:30 p.m.

there two houses occupied a most delightful scene

nearby were several graves well maintained by the natives

thirteen men occupied the houses but their language was difficult to understand

it seemed some of these people were of the opinion the ocean was four days away

while others seemed to say six or eight

however, all were in agreement they had visited the coast

Mackenzie, one of his men and his guide visited some huts about a mile away

when they arrived the natives served them boiled trout which would have been excellent

had it not tasted of the cooking utensil which was made of white spruce bark and dried grasses

these people appeared to live quite comfortably

Mackenzie’s guides refused to travel any further so two of the local Indians were hired

but they could not leave their families until the following day

Mackenzie distributed a few trade goods to the wives and children of his new guides

Mackenzie and his men left the huts and passed by two buildings about fifteen feet in the air

that had been constructed among four trees and were intended to store provisions for the winter

They struck out along a less worn trail and stopped for the night -- 7:30 p.m.

Alexander Mackenzie and his men had covered about nineteen miles that day

but the night proved to be very uncomfortable due to flies and, later, a deluge of rain

MACKENZIE PASSES THROUGH COUNTRY LAID WASTE BY FIRE

Weather cleared, clothes were dried, their two guides arrived and the expedition set out -- July 11, 1793

fire had ravaged this region’s plateau and fallen trees added to their frustration and pain

Mackenzie’s new guides took cover under nearby trees when the rain returned -- noon

their journey was continued when the rain stopped two hours later

They came within sight of a lake where the land rose gradually toward mountains covered with snow

fresh tracks of people who had probably came to the river to fish surprised the guides

continual rain and cold forced them to stop for the night -- 5:00 p.m.

they had traveled more than fifteen miles that day

Mackenzie’s two new guides complained about the long hours and hard work

they announced they intended to leave and were joined in their discontent by the two Indian hunters

Since the distance to the ocean seemed greater than anticipated rations were cut by one-third

this was as unwelcomed as it was necessary

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S TWO GUIDES CONTINUE IN THEIR RELUCTANCE

Travel for the expedition began under cloudy weather -- 5:30 a.m. July 12, 1793

when Mackenzie and his men reached the end of the lake they had been following

several footprints were seen that led to the water’s edge

Mackenzie concluded that local natives had been fishing along the lake shore

As they continued on their way four smaller lakes were passed (in the vicinity of today’s Tanya Lakes)

they crossed a small stream using a beaver dam and another larger lake stretched ahead

When they reached still another river their guide informed them

this was same river they had ferried across two day before (the Dean River)

and that it was navigable by canoe except for two rapids -- once of which had already been seen

here the river was twenty yards across and deep

one of the guides swam across to bring back a raft from the opposite side

it took two trips to ferry the men and supplies over except for two men who preferred to swim

Once again their guides threatened to leave

Mackenzie had to give them several articles, and promise them more, to induce them to stay

until other natives could be found to replace them

Yet another river had to be crossed -- 4:00 p.m.

Mackenzie and his guides were well ahead of the expedition so he sat down to wait for his men

when the expedition arrived the guides fled with so much speed

that Mackenzie could not catch them

one of Mackenzie’s Indians, who was not carrying a pack, overtook them

when the guides were brought back they explained the only reason they left

was to prevent people they expected to find from shooting arrows at the whites

Mackenzie and his men were so tired that camp was made -- 7:00 p.m.

thirty-six miles had been covered although the land was barren and stony

and lay in ridges with cypress trees scattered over the terrain

several swamps had been passed but few deer tracks were seen

snow-covered mountains (of the Coastal Range) appeared directly in front of them

As the men gathered firewood a crossroad was found which confused Mackenzie

he suggested the ocean must be near and probably only a few Indians would pass by

before they met natives who traded at the ocean and would treat the explorers well

although Mackenzie himself had grave doubts, his men accepted this proposition

MACKENZIE MAKES CONTACT WITH THE LOCAL NATIVES

Dawn broke clear but cold and the expedition’s coverings were inadequate to the need

after they warmed themselves by the campfire

they proceeded on their doubtful way -- 5:00 a.m. July 13, 1793

An hour’s walk brought them to the edge of the forest where they saw a house

located beside a small river -- smoke indicated the house was inhabited

Mackenzie immediately set out for the home reluctantly followed by his men

he rushed so quickly that he was near the house before the women and children inside

became aware of his presence and issued the most horrible shrieks

as the only man who appeared to be with them escaped out of the back door

Mackenzie arrived at the house quickly enough

to prevent the women and children from following the man

these people were extremely distressed and believed their massacre was at hand

their fears raised similar reactions among Mackenzie’s guides and interpreters

who believed the man would return with his friends and seek vengeance

Three women and seven children occupied the house which apparently held three families

calmly and quietly Mackenzie managed to reassure the natives

one of the women stated that from these mountains the sea could be seen to the west

she then offered the explorers a couple of dried fish

after a little time the man who had fled was discovered in the woods and returned to the house

assured by the women and the interpreters he would not be harmed, he agreed to serve as guide

Mackenzie told the woman he wanted to visit the fishing machines these people were using

she readily consented to show him

when they reached the machines twenty small fish were seen

Mackenzie gave her a large knife for her consideration to him which she immediately treasured

An old Indian man talking loudly came down a hill toward the fishing machine

at the same time the first man brought a young lad along with him to the fishing machine

both of whom were the sons of the old man

the old man threw himself on the mercy of the members of the expedition

and was rewarded with small gifts

when everyone arrived at the house the old man presented Mackenzie several half-dried fish

these were considered as a peace-offering

Mackenzie’s prospects for success had improved a great deal since this morning

MACKENZIE ATTEMPTS TO LEARN OF THE NATIVES’ BURIAL CUSTOMS

On this morning bright sky and an east wind greeted the explorers -- July 14, 1793

when the local natives visited their fishing machines a great number of small fish had been caught

members of Mackenzie’s expedition were offered as many as they could eat

Camp was not broken until 7:00 a.m.

they set out accompanied by the old Indian man and two of his sons

Mackenzie’s men trudged along a lake five for miles then crossed a river and passed through a swamp

before beginning a gradual ascent to the top of a hill where a large river could be seen

to the southeast about three miles away

hills and valleys were crossed until a range of mountains covered with snow could be seen

according to their guide these (Coastal) mountains dropped directly into the ocean

As they continued their overland trek they came to another house

about the same size and construction as the one inhabited by their new guide

except this one was better constructed and beautifully finished

timbers were squared on two sides and the bark removed from the other two

its ridge pole was shaped the same way and extended about eight or ten feet

beyond the gable end of the house and supported a shed over the door

ends of the ridge pole were carved in the form of a snake’s head

hieroglyphics and figures painted with red earth decorated the interior of the building

its inhabitants had left only a short time before and several bags and bundles remained

these were not disturbed by the explorers

near the house were two tombs surrounded neatly with boards and covered with bark

beside them several painted poles had been erected -- one of which was squared

from each pole were suspended several rolls or parcels of bark

their guide tried to explain what they were seeing but he was difficult to understand

apparently it was the practice of these people to burn the bodies of their dead

except for the larger bones which were rolled up in bark and suspended from the poles

or, perhaps, they actually buried their dead and when another family member died

the remains of the last person to be interred was taken from the grave and burned

so that members of the family were successively buried and burned

to make room for each corpse

this one tomb proved sufficient for the family through succeeding generations

no house in this region was without a tomb

Alexander Mackenzie and his men had traveled ten miles that morning

they continued along the lake and crossed a river flowing out of it

they found a weir (barrier) in the river where Indians could place a fishing machine

many of these of various sized were laying along the river bank

They came to a well-marked trail which led to a small lake with a river running out

their guides expected to see other natives at any time

they rafted across the river -- 9:00 p.m.

Mackenzie’s exhausted men made camp -- they had traveled more than thirty-two miles that day

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY REACHES THE SHIPS NOW OFF GIL ISLAND

*Discovery’s* large cutter returned to the ships carrying Master Joseph Whidbey

accompanied by Midshipman Robert Barrie in the small cutter -- 7:00 a.m. July 14, 1793

they had investigated the continental shore as far as (Chatham’s Sound)

(named by Vancouver [1793] for John Pitt, 2nd Earl of Chatham)

lofty mountains covered with snow stood on the mainland

while groups of small islands were divided by two channels that led to the Pacific Ocean

from Whidbey’s report Vancouver named “Point Lambert” after a navy commissioner,

“Port Essington” to honor British Captain Essington,

“Cape Ibbetson,” named after Admiral John Ibbetson,

“Pitt’s Archipeligo” and “Pitts Island” after the British Prime Minister,

“Stephens Island” in honor of Admiral Sir Philip Stephens,

“Grenville’s Canal” (today’s Grenville Channel) after the Right Honorable William Grenville

(this is Caamano’s Canal del Principe),

“Gilttoyees (local Indian for ‘long’) Inlet”

in addition Whidbey and Barrie visited today’s (Hunt Point), (Raspberry Islands),

(Point Pearce) and(Porcher Island)

VANCOUVER CHANGES LOCATIONS ONCE AGAIN

Master Joseph Whidbey’s very complete report convinced Captain Vancouver to move once again

Vancouver ordered the equipment on Gil Island to be gathered and stowed on board the ships

he intended to proceed following the route investigated by Lieutenant James Johnstone

this channel had already been explored by Caamano and named Canal del Principe

(this is today’s Principe Channel)

As preparations to sail were underway, three canoes came into sight

these were the first natives to be seen while the vicinity of Nepean Sound was being investigated

these Indians differed slightly in appearance than others who had visited before

Light winds held the *Discovery* and *Chatham* in place until noon -- July 14, 1793

as they set sail Captain Vancouver named their anchorage off the northern tip of Gil Island

“Fisherman’s Cove” in celebration of the success enjoyed with their seine and hooks

Fisherman’s Cove had proven to be a safe and convenient anchorage

two rivers had provided drinking water and the forest provided firewood for cooking

*Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed up Grenville’s Channel

inclement weather followed them as they passed through Pitt’s Archipelago

sailing became increasingly treacherous as they came within sight of the Queen Charlotte Islands

(today’s Haida Guai)

gloomy weather and impeding winds hampered their progress

because the continental shore had been investigated

Vancouver turned toward the intricate and inhospitable maze of channels

in search of secure anchorage

MACKENZIE MEETS A GROUP OF INDIANS GOING TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN TO TRADE

Mackenzie and his men set out following a river -- 5:00 a.m. July 15, 1793

they crossed where it was only knee deep and about thirty yards wide with a rocky bottom

the old man who guided them expected to meet other Indians

so he went ahead by himself to give them warning

Mackenzie came upon his guide -- 11:00 a.m.

as he talked with five men who called themselves “Neguia Dinais” and part of their families

Mackenzie and his men were greeted with great kindness

as the Indians examined the explorers in minute detail

Neguia Dinais said they were on their way to the sea and appreciated the explorers joining them

because women and children could not travel fast it would take three days to their destination

members of Mackenzie expedition were given some fish recently taken from a nearby lake

Mackenzie’s new traveling companions were quite pleasant looking

these women tied their braided hair parted with great neatness from the division of the head

ending in large loose knots of hair tied over their ears

some of the women wore beads in their hair to a very pretty effect

these men were clothed in leather, their hair nicely combed

one man was at least six feet four inches tall and his manner was sociable

he was about twenty-eight years old and was treated with particular respect by other Indians

Neguia Dinais peoples’ complexions were fairer than other natives

their eyes were not the usual deep brown but rather were grey and tinged with red

every man, woman and child carried a proportionate burden

consisting of beaver coat and parchment as well as the skins of otter, marten, bear and lynx

and dressed moose skins acquired from the Rocky Mountain Indians

After half an hour’s rest the leader of the Indian party called out and his people moved on

as they traveled a winding trail over hills and through swampy valleys they moved south and west

Mackenzie’s usual demanding pace was slowed by the Indians

who stopped to rest several times during the day

After crossing a deep, narrow river they stopped for the night -- 5:00 p.m.

even so about twenty miles had been made that day

Everyone sat down on a very pleasant green spot

no sooner were they seated than their guide and one of the Neguia Dinais began a game

each had a bundle of about fifty small sticks

these were neatly polished, the size of a quill and five inches long

some of these sticks had red lines around them

as many of these as one of the players might find convenient

were curiously rolled up in dry grass

his opponent guessed at the number of sticks and won or lost

the loser parted with his bow and arrows, and several articles

which Mackenzie had given him

MACKENZIE’S INDIAN TRAVELING COMPANIONS DECIDE TO TRAVEL ALONE

Alexander Mackenzie’s Neguia Dinais traveling companions were in no hurry to begin the day’s trek

Mackenzie explained his expedition was running low on supplies

and speed was important -- July16, 1793

however, the natives assured him that after a night’s sleep

they would arrive at a river where fish would be plentiful

although supplies were running low Mackenzie cached about twenty pounds of pemmican

for their return trip

When the Neguia Dinais stopped to rest Mackenzie was informed they had changed their minds

they now intended to follow a slower, longer route beside a small river to the north

that flowed from the nearby lake and would take them to the mouth of the (Dean River)

some people from another tribe had been sent for as they wished to see the whites

two of whom would accompany the explorers over the (Coastal Mountains)

Alexander Mackenzie again noted the shortage of supplies he and his expedition faced

one of the Indians said he was preparing a kettle of fish roe (eggs)

if the explorers would stay with them for the night he would give it to them

Four new people from tribes unknown to Mackenzie arrived as expected

after a little discussion they promised to guide the expedition through a mountain pass

Mackenzie and his men set out south after a very friendly parting with the Neguia Dinais-- 4:00 p.m.

guided by the four newly-arrived natives Mackenzie’s expedition entered a forest

soon they arrived at the banks of another river flowing from the (Coastal Mountains)

this country became swampy and a number to trees had fallen in a recent fire

which added to their difficulties as they began to climb into the mountains

Camp was made -- they had traveled fourteen miles that day -- 9:00 p.m.

although they were in mountains covered with snow, the mosquitoes became a serious problem

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN CROSS THE COAST MOUNTAINS

Before sunrise Mackenzie’s four new guides were summoned -- July 17, 1793

they were to go in advance of the expedition to warn the local natives of the whites’ presence

Mackenzie and his men descended into a beautiful valley watered by a small river -- 8:00 a.m.

when they reached the end of the river they were following they saw a great number of groundhogs

their whistles could be heard in every direction

Mackenzie’s guides went in pursuit of these animals and soon returned to the expedition

carrying a female and her little family almost grown to their full size

they stripped off their skins and gave the carcasses to the explorers

Indians also pulled up a root which appeared like a bunch of white berries the size of a pea

it was shaped like a fig while it was colored and tasted like a potato (this was camas root)

Mackenzie’s expedition continued on and they began to ascend as they followed a creek

when the explorers reached the summit they found themselves surrounded by snow

this circumstance was caused by drifted snow in the pass rather than by the height of the spot

as the surrounding mountains rose to much higher elevations

snow had become so compact that their feet hardly made an impression as they walked

they observed the tracks of a herd of small deer which must have passed by a short time before

and the guides and hunters went immediately in pursuit

Mackenzie’s expedition reached nearly level ground

there was no snow but not a tree was to be seen either

grass was very short and the soil, a reddish clay, was intermixed with small stones

these hills, where they were not covered with green, appeared as if fire had passed over them

it began to hail, snow and rain, but no shelter could be found except the leeward side of a huge rock

wind rose to a gale and the weather was as distressing an any they had experienced

Mackenzie noted one stupendous mountain directly ahead that rose so high

its snow-clad summit was lost in the clouds (today’s 8,390-foot Kalone Peak)

Hunters and Indians returned after being gone an hour carrying the carcass of a small reindeer doe

this was all they had killed although they had fired twelve shots at a large herd

their poor result was attributed to the weather

Mackenzie proposed to leave half of the carcass in the snow

but although they were exhausted the men preferred to carry it

they had been shivering with cold for so long that they were glad to renew the march

Scattered crowberry bushes which had not yet blossomed and willow shrubs were seen

ahead of them in the distance flowed a stream which their guides said was the one had been seeking

(this was today’s Burnt Bridge Creek)

Indians informed them that it was not a great distance away

As they traveled downhill the members of the expedition gathered wood for a fire

when enough had been acquired to dress some of the venison they stopped for dinner

they enjoyed a heartier meal than they had done for many long days

Mackenzie took the time to shave his beard and change his linen

his example was followed by his men

Mackenzie and his men continued on and came to a large pond

on the bank they found a recently made tomb with a pole beside it

on which two figures of birds were painted

one of the guides recognized the tribe to which the deceased belonged

he very unceremoniously opened the bark and showed the bones which it contained

while another guide threw down the pole and took the feathers tied to it

he placed them in his own hair

Mackenzie assumed these funeral memorials belonged to a tribe hated by his four guides

Departing once again Mackenzie’s expedition continued their route with some speed

they continued to descend out of the mountains until they came to the brink of a cliff

where the guides showed a river to the expedition with a village on its banks

This cliff was rather a series of cliffs covered with large hemlock, birch and other trees

their guides informed them the area abounded with animals

which sounded like mountain goats to Mackenzie

In about two hours they arrived at the bottom of the cliffs where there was a confluence of two rivers

they were both very rapid and Mackenzie’s men crossed the (Talchako River)

(Burnt Bridge Creek) united with the (Talchako River) and formed a river about twelve yards wide

this was (today’s Bella Coola River of British Columbia)

here the timber was very large and the hemlock trees were stripped of their bark to the top

Mackenzie concluded the natives tanned their leather with liquid made from hemlock bark

here also were the largest and loftiest cedar trees that Mackenzie had ever seen

now the climate had changed and the berries were quite ripe

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION ARRIVES AT “FRIENDLY VILLAGE”

As the sun was about to set on the western slopes of the mountains -- evening July 17, 1793

their four guides left the expedition to warn the next village of their arrival

they were to be followed as well as Mackenzie and his men could

because they were hemmed it on both sides by mountains Mackenzie could not go far wrong

his guides had marked the route for them by breaking branches as they passed

there were large quantities of driftwood lying twelve feet above the level of the river

showing the uncommon height and strength of current probably acquired with melting snow

it was not dark but it was impossible to see beyond twenty yards because of the thick forest

Members of the expedition demanded to stop for the night

but anxiety compelled Mackenzie to continue to follow the route marked by his guides

until they reached the edge of the woods

Mackenzie continued on more by feeling rather than seeing until he arrived at a house

soon small fires in small huts with people busily cooking their fish were discovered

this village was located where (today’s Burnt Bridge Creek enters the Bella Coola River)

Mackenzie walked into one of the houses without the least ceremony and threw down his burden

he shook hands with some of the people near him and sat down

these Indians received him without the least appearance of surprise but soon made signs

that he should to go to a large house which was built on upright posts

several feet above the ground

there a broad log with steps cut in it led to a scaffolding even with the floor

using this curious ladder Mackenzie entered the house at one end

Inside the house were three fires at equal distances apart in the middle of the building

Mackenzie was received by several people sitting on a very wide board

he shook hands with them and sat beside an old man who appeared to be the village chief

this was in fact the case as Mackenzie had seated himself beside “Soocomlick”

Mackenzie discovered one of his guides was seated at the place of honor next to the chief

in a short time Mackenzie’s men arrived and placed themselves near Mackenzie

at this Soocomlick quickly rose and obtained roasted salmon from behind a four foot wide plank

this plank also served as a screen for the beds where the women and children slept

Soocomlick then directed a mat be placed in front of Mackenzie and Alexander Mackay

who was now seated beside the expedition leader

when this ceremony was performed Soocomlick ordered a salmon be brought for both of them

and one-and-a-half salmon was placed before each of the other members of the expedition

After eating Mackenzie had his men move outside to make a camp

Soocomlick delivered boards to them so they would not have to sleep on the ground

Not long after the men were seated around their campfire they received a large dish of salmon roe

that had been pounded fine and mixed with water so it looked like cream

some kind of seasoning gave this a bitter taste

another dish soon followed made up principally of salmon roe with a large portion of gooseberries

and an herb that appeared to be sorrel

after eating the men laid down to rest under the stars

Alexander Mackenzie had been so taken by these “Nuxalk” natives

that he named their community “Friendly Village” (today’s village of Bella Coola)

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REMAINS IN “FRIENDLY VILLAGE”

Mackenzie awoke at 5:00 a.m. and discovered the natives had lit a fire and were sitting beside it

they brought Mackenzie gooseberries, hurtleberries and raspberries, the best he had ever tasted,

to eat with dried salmon roe and roasted salmon -- July 18, 1793

Salmon was so abundant in the river that these Indians had a constant and plentiful supply

this was the only flesh they ate

with great labor they had built a weir (barrier) that blocked two-thirds of the river

it rose four feet above the present water level and nearly level with the top of the bank

it was constructed with great labor and considerable ingenuity

small tree branches were placed in the bed of the river in a slanting position

with the thick parts placed downward

over these was laid a bed of gravel on which were placed a stack of smaller trees

and so on alternately until the work was brought to its full height

fishing machines were placed above and below the weir

on either side of the weir there was a large frame built of timber

in which passages were left for the salmon leading directly to the fishing machines

salmon fell into the machine when they attempted to leap over the weir

also dip nets were successfully employed below the weir where the salmon gathered

These people were extremely superstitious regarding their salmon

when Mackenzie asked to visit their weir the Indians refused to allow him to go near

out of fear the fish would become upset and leave

failure to completely burn the bones of the fish in a campfire was offensive to salmon

it was possible they would not return to the river if they were ill-treated

an Indian’s dog swallowed part of a fish bone left at the campfire

the dog was beaten by his master until he disgorged it

when one of Mackenzie’s men threw a bone into the river a young Indian dived after it

retrieved the bone, put it in the fire and then ceremonially washed his polluted hands

Mackenzie asked the chief for a canoe to carry them to the Pacific Ocean still some distance away

various excuses regarding why this was not possible were provided by the chief

at last Mackenzie understood the chief’s concern was that they would carry venison in the canoe

fish would instantly smell the meat and abandon them so the people would starve

Mackenzie soon eased his apprehensions and asked what he must do with the remaining venison

he was told to give it to one of the strangers in the village whom he pointed out

he was from a different tribe that ate meat

Mackenzie now requested to be provided with uncooked salmon to take with him -- this was refused

but two large roasted salmon were provided out of fear the explorers would not roast the salmon

but rather would prepare them in a manner offensive to the fish

Soocomlick assured the explorers the river’s current was very strong and would carry them

to the next village where they would be abundantly supplied

he asked Mackenzie to depart quickly before they mistakenly offended the salmon

Fifteen armed men who were friends and relations of the Nuxalk people arrived by land -- 8:00 a.m.

(during the night before they had been sent notice of the arrival of white people)

their language was completely unknown to the members of the expedition

they appeared to be peaceful people who never attacked their neighbors

men’s clothing consisted of a single robe tied over the shoulders falling down behind to the heels

and a little below the knees in front with a deep fringe around the bottom

this was generally made of the inner bark of the cedar tree which they prepare as fine as thread

men unceremoniously took off the robe when they found it inconvenient

some of their garments were interwoven with strips of sea otter skin

which give them the appearance of a fur on one side

other clothing had strips of red and yellow threads fancifully introduced toward the edges

which, in Mackenzie’s eyes, had a very agreeable effect

men wore their hair in braids smeared with oil and red earth

instead of a comb they carried a small stick that hung by a string from a lock of hair

this was used to scratch their head

women also wore a robe but they added a fringe in front about a foot wide and two feet long

when they sat down they tucked this fringe between their thighs

they wore their hair so short that it required little care or combing

both men and women had grey eyes with a tinge of red

they had high cheekbones which were more apparent in the women than the men

Mackenzie presented Soocomlick with several articles

he also distributed gifts among other natives who had been attentive to his men

one of the guides had been very helpful in acquiring a canoe for the expedition

he appeared also to have given the Nuxalk people a favorable impression of the explorers

Mackenzie was concerned he would leave without giving notice of his departure

and would not receive the presents that were prepared for him

this was, in fact, what happened

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN DEPART FROM FRIENDLY VILLAGE

Seven Nuxalk paddlers with two forty-five-foot native canoes

left Friendly Village -- 1:00 p.m. July 18, 1793

they travelled fast carrying the explorers and their baggage down the (Bella Coola) river

They reached a fishing weir in the river where the paddlers stopped

and the members of the expedition stepped ashore before the paddlers returned to the river

and shot over the weir without taking a drop of water

they then beached the canoe and reloaded the expedition to continue their voyage

Mackenzie was so impressed by the skill of the Indians he wrote: **“I had imagined that the Canadians who accompanied me were the most expert canoe-men in the world, but they are very inferior to these people, as they themselves acknowledge, in conducting those vessels.”[[123]](#footnote-123)**

Many canoes were passed along the river -- some carried people and others were beached

they continued at a very great rate of speed for about two-and-a-half hours

before Mackenzie was told they would have to land as a village was only a short distance away

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE “GREAT VILLAGE”

Mackenzie and his men took up their bundles and walked along a well-worn path away from the river

as the Friendly Village Indians ran ahead to announce their approach -- July 18, 1793

when the expedition reached a thicket of trees they heard loud and confused talking

from the inhabitants of the village

as they arrived almost within sight of the first house, the Friendly Village natives

accompanying Mackenzie indicated that he should take the lead and they would follow

noise and confusion of the local natives seemed to increase

they arrived within sight of the village and saw Indians running from house to house

some were armed with bows and arrows, others with spears and many with axes

this very unpleasant and unexpected reception was attributed to the explorers sudden arrival

and the very short notice that the villagers had been given

Mackenzie had no choice but to walk resolutely up to them showing no signs of apprehension

as he approached the houses this produced the desired effect

most of the people laid down their weapons and came forward to meet the explorer

however, Mackenzie was soon forced to stop as he was surrounded by natives

he shook hands with those nearest to him when an elderly man broke through the crowd

and took Mackenzie in his arms -- then another man, the village chief, came forward

and turned the elderly man away without the least ceremony

the chief himself hugged Mackenzie

next Mackenzie was hugged by a young man who, the chief explained, was his son

Mackenzie at first was rather surprised by these actions

but he soon discovered they were signs of regard and friendship

Indians formed a large crowd to get a look at the explorers

they pressed in so tightly that Mackenzie and his men could not move in any direction

an opening was finally made to allow another man to approach Mackenzie

he was the chief’s eldest son

Mackenzie instantly stepped forward to meet this man and offered his hand

immediately the Indian untied the string of a very handsome robe of sea otter skin he was wearing

and placed it over Mackenzie’s shoulders

this was the most flattering reception that could possibly be had

Mackenzie concluded the crowd had formed to give the man time to collect the robe

Next the chief made signs for Mackenzie to follow him as they traveled through a thicket of trees

several hundred yards distant they came to a house built on the ground which was larger in size

and constructed of better materials than any they had seen before -- it was the chief’s residence

when they arrived at the house the chief directed mats be placed on the ground

where the explorers were designated to sit

some men of the village came to indulge their curiosity and were told to stay behind the whites

other mats were placed for the chief and his advisors who took their seats in front of the explorers

between the two groups very clean mats of beautiful workmanship were spread

these mats explained why the hemlock trees were stripped of their bark

in front of each member of the expedition a small roasted salmon was placed

Mackenzie and his men remained at dinner for upwards of three hours

this feast illustrated that here was a land of abundance and stability

Mackenzie realized he was among a people who had attained a high degree civilization

communication, however, was difficult and awkward as only sign language could be used

not one of the curious natives left during all that time except for a party of ten or twelve of men

whom the chief ordered to go and catch fish

which they did in great abundance with dip nets at the foot of their weir

after a time the chief ordered a lodge set up to protect the explorers from the staring crowd

this was to be used as a resting place for the night

Mackenzie presented “Young Chief” with a blanket in return for the beautiful sea otter robe

along with several other articles that appeared to be very gratifying to him

gifts were also presented to the old chief, among them was a pair of scissors

Mackenzie explained they were to trim his beard which was very long

this was immediately tried by the old chief

other gifts were distributed to those who had been considerate to the whites

Mackenzie asked for fresh salmon that he could prepare himself but this was not provided

even though in the river there were thousands of swimming fish strung on cords fastened to stakes

Mackenzie and his men were not even allowed to approach the spot

where fish were cleaned and prepared by the Indians

Mackenzie’s iron kettle was taken from him as, it was explained, fish disliked the smell of iron

water tight wooden boxes were provided for their use

MACKENZIE TOURS THE GREAT VILLAGE

Mackenzie took a tour of the village, the largest he had seen -- July 18, 1793

this consisted of four elevated houses and seven others built on the ground

all were built of the same materials and on the same plan

they were constructed of cedar planks divided into apartments seven feet square

there were boards about three feet wide in the front which were stepped over to enter

seven- or eight-foot high walls rested on beams that stretched across the building

chests containing provisions, utensils and possessions were mounted on the walls

there were a considerable number of other buildings or sheds

which were used only as kitchens and as places for curing fish

roasted fish hung on 100-120-foot long poles that ran along the beams

these racks were on posts about twelve feet above the ground

drying sheds were about forty feet wide

in the center were three, four or five hearths to give warmth and dry the fish

boards and bark covered the whole building except for a few inches above of the ridge pole

where open spaces were left on each side to let in light and to emit smoke

Those natives from Friendly Village who had accompanied Mackenzie and his men

had given to these people a detailed account of everything they knew about the explorers

it was requested that Mackenzie show them his astronomical instruments which he did

these added to the explorer’s status among the natives

Mackenzie saw several twenty foot by eight-foot rectangles made of thick cedar boards

they were joined together so neatly that they appeared at first to be one piece

they were painted with hieroglyphics and figures of different animals

with a degree of accuracy that was unexpected by the explorers

although Mackenzie could not discover their use he concluded they were for religious purposes

to conduct ceremonies that all of the Northwest tribes performed in the (spring) and (fall)

This thought was confirmed by a large building in the middle of the village

that sat on a plot of ground fifty feet by forty-five feet

at first glance the building looked like the half-finished frame of a house

this building was formed by four stout posts set perpendicularly in the ground

its corner posts were plain and supported a beam running the whole length of the building

three posts were placed along each side -- but of a larger size and eight or nine feet in height

two center posts placed at one end of the house were two-and-a-half feet in diameter

these were carved into human figures supporting a ridge pole twelve feet above the ground

on each of their heads

these figures represented two people with their hands on their knees

standing as if they supported the weight with pain and difficulty

two other center posts placed at opposite end also were two-and-a-half feet in diameter

these two carved human figures also supported a ridge pole twelve feet above the ground

one on each of their heads but they stood at ease with hands resting on their hips

posts, poles and figures were painted red and black

but the sculpture of these carvings was superior to the painting

within the perimeter of the building were the remains of several fires

Mackenzie named this settlement “Great Village”

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE VISITS WITH THE NATIVES OF THE GREAT VILLAGE

Early in the morning Mackenzie was visited by the village chief accompanied by a son -- July 19, 1793

the younger man complained of a pain in his chest

Mackenzie gave him a few drops of Turlington’s Balsam (a patented cure-all medicine)

on a piece of sugar to relieve his pain

that he took it without the least hesitation surprised Mackenzie

after he had taken the medicine, the young man requested Mackenzie follow him to a shed

where several people were gathered round a sick man -- another of the chief’s sons

he had a terrible ulcer in the small of his back in the foulest state that can be imagined

one of his knees was also ulcerated

he was reduced to a skeleton and appeared to be near the end of his life

Indians requested that Mackenzie touch him and the old chief urged that medicine be administered

it would have been reckless of Mackenzie to do more

than give a few drops of Turlington’s Balsam

Mackenzie left but was soon called back by the loud weeping of the women

Mackenzie feared this outburst might be related to the treatment he had just provided

concerned, he reported: **“On my return I found the native physicians busy in practicing their skill and art on the patient. They blew on him, and then whistled; at times they pressed their extended fingers, with all their strength, on his stomach; they also put their forefingers doubled into his mouth, and spouted water from their own with great violence into his face. To support these operations, the wretched sufferer was held up in a sitting posture; and when they were concluded, he was laid down and covered with a new robe made of the skins of the lynx. I had observed that his belly and breast were coved with scars, and I understood that they were caused by a custom prevalent among them, of applying pieces of lighted touch-wood to their flesh, in order to relieve pain or demonstrate their courage. He was now placed on a broad plank, and carried by six men into the woods, where I was invited to accompany them. I could not conjecture what would be the end of this ceremony, particularly as I saw one man carry fire, another an axe, and a third dry wood. I was indeed, disposed to suspect that, as it was their custom to burn the dead, they intended to relieve the poor man from his pain, and perform the last sad duty of surviving affection. When they advance a short distance into the woods, they laid him upon a clear spot, and kindled a fire against his back, when the physician began to scarify the ulcer with a very blunt instrument, the cruel pain of which operation the patient bore with incredible resolution. The scene afflicted me, and I left it.”**[[124]](#footnote-124)

When Mackenzie returned to his lodge he noticed that in front of the door to the chief’s house

were four heaps of salmon each of which consisted of between three hundred and four hundred fish

sixteen women were employed in cleaning and preparing them

they first separated the head from the body and boiled the heads

they then cut the fish down the back on each side of the spine

leaving one third of the fish adhering to it -- then they removed the entrails

next the bone was roasted for immediate use

other parts were also roasted but with more attention to provide future provisions

while the fish were before the fire, troughs were placed under them to receive the oil

salmon roe was also carefully preserved and provided a favorite native food

Mackenzie took out his astrological instruments to discoverer their latitude

but the old chief requested that he not to do so

although Mackenzie did not know why this request was made he complied

Mackenzie had asked the chief several times for canoes to take his expedition to the ocean

little attention was paid to this request until noon

when he was told a canoe was equipped and ready for his voyage

in addition, the Young Chief would accompany them to the sea

Mackenzie learned the natives were apprehensive that the use of the scientific instruments

might frighten the salmon from that part of the river

either his cooperation had been appreciated, or his immediate departure was demanded

Mackenzie instructed the members of his expedition to place their bundles along the river bank

in the meantime he went to measure the large canoe offered for his use

using signs the chief indicated that about ten winters ago he had gone a considerable distance

toward the west with forty of his people

there he saw two large vessels full of white men who had received him kindly

(these were probably *Resolution* and *Discovery*

commanded by British Captain James Cook [1778])

Mackenzie noted the canoe offered to him was built of cedar

forty-five feet long, four feet wide and three-and-a-half feet deep

it was painted black and decorated with white figures of fish of different kinds on the gunwale

for and aft were inlaid with sea otter teeth

(which Captain Cook had confused with human teeth as they look somewhat similar)

Mackenzie’s men and Young Chief, who would accompany them, got into the canoe

when it was discovered an axe was missing

Mackenzie informed the village chief they would not leave without it

after some turmoil and confusion among the Indians,

and no small amount of fear among the explorers, the axe was discovered and returned

Mackenzie’s men were unhappy with the show made by their leader,

but he believed this was necessary to maintain his status (and safety) among the natives

during their return trip

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION IS WATERBORNE AGAIN

Mackenzie and his men renewed their journey to the Pacific Ocean in their forty-five-foot canoe

accompanied by Young Chief and four other Great Village natives -- 1:00 p.m. July 19, 1793

(Bella Coola) river was almost a continual rapids

in about an hour they arrived at two houses where they were obliged to go on shore

Mackenzie was informed by their companions that the owner of the houses was a person of importance

Mackenzie and his men were received in a very friendly manner

this homeowner of importance produced many European articles

among them were at least forty pounds of copper

anxious to again get underway, Mackenzie stayed for as short a time as possible

when they set out once again their host accompanied them

Soon a very large house partitioned into different apartments with doors on the side was reached

these natives received the explorers with great kindness

but instead of fish they were given a long, clean and well made trough full of berries

in addition to the usual variety there were some blackberries

that were larger than the hurtleberry and with a richer flavor

there were also white berries that resembled the blackberry in everything but color

here the explorers saw a woman with two pieces of copper in her upper lip

as had been described by British Captain James Cook in his journal

Mackenzie offered presents, as usual, in return for their friendly reception and entertainment

When they continued on their travels, the (Bella Coola) river became more difficult

as it divided into numerous channels

Soon they reached another house of a common size where they were well received

but although these natives were hospitable they did not offer any refreshment

Mackenzie could not determine if this was from inclination or necessity

(in fact these Indians had been visited by Lieutenant James Johnstone [June1]) these people were in a state of busy preparation

some of the women were beating and preparing the inner rind of cedar bark

which took on the appearance of flax

others were spinning with a rod and spindle

another was weaving a robe of the thread intermixed with stripes of sea otter pelt

on a frame that was placed against the side of the house

men were fishing on the river with dragnets between two canoes

these nets were staked to the river bottom by poles

salmon coming up the river were captured in the nets

there were no weirs in this part of the river because of the numerous channels

fishing machines were placed along the banks

but these people were not well supplied with fish

Inhabitants of the house accompanied Mackenzie’s expedition down the (Bella Coola) river

in a large canoe of their own

they recommended Mackenzie leave his canoe because the water became increasingly difficult and the expedition was approaching a very difficult rapids

they also informed Mackenzie the next village was only a short distance away

rather than leave their canoe, Mackenzie and his men disembarked

he instructed Young Chief and his companions to shoot the rapids

Mackenzie and his men walked downstream and re-entered the canoe

Traveling with great speed they reached a waterfall where Mackenzie’s expedition left the canoe

they carried their baggage along a road through the woods for about a hundred yards

when they came to a village consisting of six very large houses

constructed on posts that rose twenty-five feet in the air

these houses were built much like other houses along the (Bella Coola) river

they contained only four men and their families as the other villagers

were in the small houses that had been passed higher up the river

in the houses were several chests or boxes that contained different articles

(Lieutenant James Johnstone of the Captain George Vancouver’s expedition

had visited these people [June 1, 1793])

At this location Mackenzie noted, **“I could perceive, personally, the termination of the river and its discharge into an arm of the sea.”**[[125]](#footnote-125)

in this singularly undramatic notation he chronicled the conclusion

of the first journey across North America

tide marks on the rocks proved this body of water was connected to the Pacific Ocean

they had reached North Benedict Arm after crossing 279 miles of wilderness in twelve days

(three weeks are usually allowed to make the crossing by hikers today)

Alexander Mackenzie decided to remain in this village for the night -- 6:30 p.m.

he and his men occupied an empty house

they used the last of their provisions as not one fish could be obtained from the natives

here the expedition lost their dog, “Our Dog” -- an incident that Mackenzie very much regretted

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE SETS OUT FOR THE PACIFIC OCEAN

Mackenzie and his men arose in the village at a very early hour -- July 20, 1793

he again requested Indians accompany him or that he be given a canoe to complete their journey

both requests were ignored by the local natives who believed seeing the ocean was enough

all of the local Indians refused to proceed with the exception of Young Chief

and one other native who consented to continue

Mackenzie obtained a larger canoe -- even though it was leaky they were glad to have it

they continued down the (Bella Coola) river -- 8:00 a.m.

guided by Young Chief from the Great Village

as they advance a large number of sea otters were seen

several shots were fired but without success as the animals quickly dived under water

small porpoises were also seen as were eagles, small gulls, cormorants and a few ducks

They entered North Bentinck Arm which led to Labouchere Channel

(on the northeast side of King Island) and entered Dean Channel

(which had previously been investigated by lieutenants James Johnstone

and Spelman Swaine of Captain George Vancouver’s expedition [June 1])

(Mackenzie had unknowingly missed meeting George Vancouver by forty-nine days)

They landed in a small cove on the right side of the bay ten miles from North Bentinck Arm

no further progress could be made in their leaky canoe

because of the swell of the tide and the high wind facing them -- 2:00 p.m.

directly across the bay was another small bay in the mouth of which was an island

their guides displayed a desire to leave and in the evening Young Chief’s companion did disappear

Alexander Mackay and a native pursued him and brought him back

but Mackenzie decided it was not necessary to retain either of their guides

especially as supplies were low

Mackenzie gave them a small portion of food, a silk handkerchief

and a pair of shoes which were necessary for the journey back to their village

Mackenzie told them to go and inform their friends

that the explorers would return to Great Village in three nights

When Mackenzie landed the tide was going out -- 4:15 p.m.

now the water was slack after falling eleven and a half feet in a short time

with the return of the tide, high water was reached -- 10.00 p.m.

but the rising water had made it necessary to shift the baggage several times

even so, some of their gear got wet

fresh water was in plentiful supply as streams ran down from the (Coastal Mountains)

Mackenzie wanted to get a sighting of the moon and stars, but the cloudy weather prevented this

he was concerned that he would fail in this important task as their provisions were very low

they had only twenty pounds of pemmican, fifteen pounds of rice and six pounds of flour

to share among ten half-starved men, in a leaky canoe on a hostile coast

During the night Young Chief returned to the expedition carrying a large porcupine on his back

he cut it open, disemboweled it, threw the entrails into the salt water and singed the skin

because the cooking pot was not large enough for the animal, it was cut into pieces and boiled

with the help of two of Mackenzie’s men who were awake it was completely devoured

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS ANOTHER BRITISH SHIP

Captain Vancouver’s expedition experienced a violent storm

which put the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at great risk -- July 20, 1793

they were saved only by the timely arrival of a whaleboat sent from the British ship *Butterworth*

sailed by William Brown out of London

Captain Brown informed Vancouver his fleet of three ships was safely anchored

off the north coast of Stephens Island

Captain Vancouver immediately set out to follow the whaleboat to the *Butterworth’s* anchorage

accompanied by Peter Puget on the *Chatham*

when Vancouver’s ships reached the *Butterworth* he discovered the *Prince Lee Boo* and *Jackall*

at anchor there -- all belonged to the same business concern as the *Butterworth*

William Brown, who commanded the three-ship expedition, saluted his fellow British sailors

with seven guns and Vancouver returned the honor

Vancouver learned from Captain Brown that *Butterworth* had run on a rock and damaged her rudder

while repairs were being made an investigation of the region was undertaken

Vancouver also learned from Captain Brown that a “large opening” to the north (Clarence Strait)

had been explored

MACKENZIE ENCOUNTERS HOSTILE LOCAL NATIVES

It was low water when the men awoke -- 4:40 a.m. July 21, 1793

the tide had fallen fifteen feet from the high-water mark of the night before

Alexander Mackay collected a quantity of small mussels which were boiled

Mackenzie’s voyageurs did not partake as they were completely unacquainted with shell life

Young Chief was again missing and it was assumed he had once again fled

but as preparations were being undertaken to depart he fortunately made his appearance

he walked out of woods where he had gone to sleep after his feast of the night before

Mackenzie and his men were again on the water -- 6:00 a.m.

they cleared the small bay which Mackenzie named “Porcupine Cove”

they traveled west-southwest for seven miles, entered a channel for about two-and-a-half miles

and could see further ahead for another ten or twelve miles

they saw great numbers of animals they thought were sea otters

but as they drew closer they could be seen to be seals

Mackenzie looked for a place to take a sighting

as they traveled along Captain George Vancouver’s North Bentinck Arm

when they reached Vancouver’s Point Menzies

Mackenzie took a reading and noted his location as 52º 24’ 48” north latitude

he was east of Vancouver’s King Island

Three canoes were met carrying fifteen “Heiltsuk” Indian men

they carried their possessions as if proceeding to a new home or returning to a former one

these people showed no mistrust of fear and began talking with Young Chief

Heiltsuk people spoke the language of Young Chief but with a different accent

Heiltsuks examined everything in the expedition’s canoe with an air of apathy and contempt

one of them in particular made Mackenzie understand by his insolence that a large canoe

had lately been in this bay with white people and that one them, “Macubah”(Vancouver),

had shot at him and his friends, and that “Bensins” had struck him on the back

with the flat part of his sword (Bensins was an attempt at Archibald Menzies’ name)

he also produced several European articles which he could not have owned for very long

because of his conduct and appearance Alexander Mackenzie wanted to be rid of him

when the explorers prepared to leave, these Indians turned their canoe around to follow

and persuaded Young Chief to join them

Mackenzie continued for six miles traveling beside what Vancouver had named King Island

they met a canoe with two boys in it

they were sent away to bring their people to visit the expedition

now the troublesome man forced himself into Mackenzie’s canoe

he pointed out a narrow channel that led to his village and requested Mackenzie steer toward it

since it was probable that Europeans had been there Mackenzie complied

this man became very irritating and demanded to see everything the explorers had

particularly the scientific instruments which he had learned about from Young Chief

he asked for Mackenzie’s hat, a handkerchief and everything else he saw

at the same time he frequently repeated that he had been shot at by white men

after some distance, the channel opened and the aggressive native used signs

to make them understand that Macubah came there with his large canoe

many sheds or the remains of old buildings were seen on the shore

When they landed the ruins of the Heiltsuk village were apparent as it was overgrown with weeds

in the center of the houses there was a temple like those seen in other coastal villages

soon ten canoes followed Mackenzie -- each carrying three to six men

they told Mackenzie they were expected at their village where they would see many Indians

it appeared some hostile activity had been prepared -- Mackenzie warned his men

that if any violence occurred they were to defend themselves to the last man

As soon as they landed Mackenzie took possession of a large rock

at the mouth of (Elcho Harbor) across Dean Channel from King Island

there was not enough room for more than a dozen more people -- it was easily defended

they were surrounded by ten canoes loaded with natives who appeared to be restless those who had been in the first three Heiltsuk canoes did all they could to generate trouble

after their efforts failed they went away taking Young Chief with them about sunset

however, a hat, handkerchief and several other things also went with them

remaining members of the village requested the expedition accompany them to their homes

but, seeing that Mackenzie had no intention of doing this they left about sunset

Another canoe soon arrived with seven handsome men who wanted to trade

they brought a box that contained a beautiful white goat skin and a very fine sea otter pelt

their goat skin was so bulky that Mackenzie made no offer to purchase it

for the sea otter they demanded Mackenzie’s short sword which could not be spared

they refused to take a yard and a half of broad cloth with some other articles for the skin

when they turned down the offer for the sea otter they shook their heads and said, “No, no.”

this proved to Mackenzie they had been exposed to European traders

these local natives also told Mackenzie that Macubah had been there

he had left his ship behind a point of land in the channel southwest of where they were

he had come to their village in boats which these people demonstrated

by imitating the motions of rowing

Another canoe arrived and carried a seal that Mackenzie wanted to buy but they would not part with it

they also carried fish about eighteen inches long and shaped like a trout with strong sharp teeth

When the local natives left, Mackenzie made a fire to warm the members of the expedition

however, there was little to be had for supper

what had been their allowance for the day was barely be enough for a single meal

That night was clear and moonlit -- Mackenzie established two-man watches and fell asleep

VANCOUVER SAILS AWAY FROM THE SAFE HARBOR AT STEPHENS ISLAND

Although the weather improved a thick haze kept the *Discovery* and *Chatham* at anchor

until it was possible to get a clear view of their surroundings -- early afternoon July 21, 1793

both ships left the *Butterworth* and *Jackall* and entered a passage

that Vancouver named “Brown’s Passage”in honor of *Butterworth’s* Captain William Brown

*Discovery* and *Chatham* were guided through the difficult waters by the *Prince Lee Boo*

Vancouver continued on until he reached an island (off today’s Prince Rupert, British Columbia)

that he named “Dundas’s Island(Dundas Island) in honor of the Right Honorable Henry Dundas

to the west of this island the ocean could be seen through a spacious channel

Vancouver entered the channel at a point he named “Point Maskelyne” (Maskelyne Point)

to honor the Great Britain’s astronomer royal Reverend Doctor Nevil Maskelyne

here Vancouver anchored for the night

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION IS THREATENED BY LOCAL NATIVES

Mackenzie’s expedition had not been bothered during the night

morning dawned clear and pleasant -- July 22, 1793

One single Indian came with about half a pound of boiled seal’s flesh and the head of a small salmon

for which he asked a handkerchief -- he accepted a few beads

because this man came alone Mackenzie concluded there was no general plan of attack

but his opinion was not universally accepted by the members of his expedition

Mackenzie took five latitude readings -- 8:00 a.m.

two canoes arrived from the vicinity of the Heiltsuk village with several men and Young Chief

they brought a few very small sea otter skins with some pieces of raw seal’s flesh

although the skins were of no value, hunger forced some of Mackenzie’s men

to pay an extravagant price for the seal meat

Alexander Mackay lit a bit of touch-wood with a burning glass in the cover of his tobacco box,

this so surprised the natives that they exchanged the best of their otter skins for it

Young Chief was very anxious to persuade Mackenzie to depart

he said these natives were as numerous as mosquitoes and of a very mean character

Mackenzie’s men were in a great rush to get away, but the leader was determined not to leave

until he was absolutely compelled to do so

While he was taking another latitude sighting two canoes of a larger size and well-manned appeared

they seemed to be the first of others who were coming to cooperate with the Heiltsuk people

as a result of the message that had been delivered the day before by the two boys

Young Chief, who understood them, demanded Mackenzie leave immediately as these natives

would soon come to shoot their arrows and hurl their spears at the expedition members

in explaining their danger his protest was so violent that he foamed at the mouth

Mackenzie’s men were panic-stricken and asked if it was his intention to remain and be sacrificed

he replied he would not leave until he had taken more readings to determine his exact location

(they were at Vancouver’s Cascade Canal)

however, Mackenzie did consent to putting everything in the canoe for a quick departure

Two canoes approached the shore and in a short time five men with their families landed very quietly

Mackenzie’s scientific instruments were exposed

they examined them with admiration and astonishment

these Indians were from a different tribe -- Young Chief did not understand their language

Mackenzie wrote in his Journal: **“I now mixed up some vermilion** (salmon roe) **in melted** (bear) **grease, and inscribed, in large characters, on the South-East face of the rock on which we had slept last night: ALEXANDER MACKENZIE, FROM CANADA, BY LAND, THE TWENTY-SECOND OF JULY, ONE THOUSAND SEVEN HUNDRED AND NINETY-THREE”.[[126]](#footnote-126)**

(at the time the name Canada was an informal term for the former French territory

in what is now southern Quebec)

he was within three hours of paddling to open water but he never actually saw it

Because they were so close to the hostile Heiltsuk village Mackenzie consented to leave

they landed on a point of land in a small cove where they could not be readily seen by the natives

and could not be attacked except from the front

Five native men with their families followed Mackenzie’s men in their two canoes

as these Indians prepared to leave Young Chief tried to leave with them

Mackenzie used force to bring him ashore because it was better to incur his anger

than for him to have an “accident” at the hands of hostile Indians

and suffer his father’s anger against the expedition

or even for him to return to his father before the explorers did

and relate what stories he might

Indians in the canoes made signs for Young Chief to go over the hill

they would take him on board on the other side

Mackenzie’s men refused to assist in holding Young Chief against his will

this forced Mackenzie to watch him by himself

In order to relieve tension, Mackenzie allowed a move eastward up the channel

they landed near the mouth of Cascade Inlet where he managed to get a reading from the stars

with great pleasure he recorded his location as longitude 128.2° west -- 10:00 p.m.

Mackenzie’s and his men returned the way they had come and although the tide was running strong

they maintained speed by keeping close to the rocks

VANCOUVER LOOKS FOR A PLACE TO ANCHOR AND LAUNCH TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

Vancouver weighed anchor and set out from Maskelyne Point -- 7:00 a.m. July 22, 1793

he was now beyond the region investigated by Captain William Brown

*Prince Lee Boo* returned to join Captain Brown and his trading expedition

Captain Vancouver expressed regret that he did not have one or two smaller vessels

of the size of the *Price Lee Boo* which was capable of sailing or being rowed

as this would have made his investigation easier and safer

MACKENZIE ONCE AGAIN GETS AN EARLY START BACK UP THE RIVER

Setting out from camp the expedition saw several fires to the south -- early July 23, 1793

when the sun rose smoke was clearly visible

They arrived at Porcupine Cove where they had camped two nights before -- 4:30 a.m.

the tide was out but the high-water mark caused by wind in the narrow channels

had elevated the water considerably above where they had previously built their campfire

because the tide was out it was necessary to land more than a mile below the Heiltsuk village

natives had driven stakes into the ground along the bay to trap seals and sea otters

some of the stakes had fishing machines attached

Mackenzie named this bay “Mackenzie’s Outlet”

Young Chief instructed the expedition to beach their canoe above the reach of the tide

but while this was being done the native guide walked into the woods

Mackenzie followed the Indian along a difficult trail filled with brush

as he left the woods houses came into view -- Young Chief was about fifteen steps ahead

two Heiltsuk men came rushing out of the houses armed with daggers intent on killing the Indian

Mackenzie dropped his cloak and aimed his rifle -- they immediately dropped their daggers

which were tied to their wrists by a string

Mackenzie lowered his rifle and drew his short sword as several other men joined the attackers

among them Mackenzie recognized the man who had been so much trouble

who repeated the names Macubah and Bensins

this man had obviously motivated the others

as the attackers approached, one attempted to get behind Mackenzie and grab the explorer

there was something of a scuffle but Mackenzie, uninjured, manage to escape from his grasp while he had certainly been vulnerable to being killed for

some reason his attacker did not take advantage -- nor did the others attack

One of Mackenzie’s men came out of the woods and the attackers fled back to their houses

others of the expedition arrived one at a time but still the Heiltsuk warriors did not approach

had they attacked, all of the members of the expedition surely would have been killed

Mackenzie explained to his men what he had just encountered

and that he was determined to make the natives aware of the impropriety of their actions

he insisted that his hat and cloak which had been taken during the scuffle must be returned

along with all of the other articles that had been taken by the three men in the canoe

who were now in the village

Mackenzie told his men to ready their weapons and prepare to use them if it became necessary

Mackenzie approached the nearest house and made signs that someone must come outside

Young Chief appeared and told Mackenzie the men in the canoes had informed their friends

that Young Chief had been mistreated

and the explorers had killed four of their companions near (King Island)

Mackenzie explained to the Heiltsuk as best he could that this was a lie

he again insisted his belongings be returned and that a supply of fish must be provided

if these things were done, Mackenzie promised to depart

as hoped, the possessions were returned and a few dried fish were given to the explorers

but Young Chief was so terrified he refused to stay any longer

he left in his father’s canoe telling the explorers to follow him when they could

Mackenzie was determined to take another observation which was done at noon

he named the location “Rascal’s Village”

he told the natives he and his men wanted something more to eat and demanded dried fish

they were given two salmon

he next told the Heiltsuk he had no canoe or poles to use to push up the (Bella Coola) river

these were quickly provided because the natives were anxious for the explorers to leave

Mackenzie paid for everything he received

Mackenzie’s men wanted to travel by land back to Friendly Village

Mackenzie chose to take the canoe borrowed from the Heiltsuk people

because one of his Indian hunters was so weak an overland journey was impossible for him

he had been ill for some time; and indeed, most of the men caught colds along the coast

Mackenzie and his men began their journey up the (Bella Coola) river with the canoe

they soon discovered the current was so strong that walking would have been easier

it took an hour to journey half a mile up the river

In the meantime, four Heiltsuk Indians, including the troublemaker, had gone up the river

using a canoe they had left above the rapids with four additional Heiltsuk Indians

Mackenzie feared they would cause the same problems in the upper village as they had below

also Young Chief had not left the expedition under favorable terms

and he would not give a positive report to his father and friends in the Great Village

Fearing what might await the expedition at the villages along the (Bella Coola) river

Mackenzie’s men became determined to leave the river

and travel overland directly across the mountains

to make their point, they threw everything they had into the river except their blankets

Mackenzie sat patiently waiting for them to calm down and then explained their situation

they had two days’ worth of food, snow would cover the mountains and they would die

he said it was foolish to be threatened by a danger that might not exist and if it did exist

they could deal with it

he also pointed to the inhumanity and injustice of leaving the sick Indian to suffer and die

finally, he noted he had accomplished his goal and was now focused only on their safety

One of the men who had been with Mackenzie for five years announced he would follow Mackenzie

but he would not reenter the canoe -- all but two of the men agreed they would not use the canoe

Mackenzie, Alexander Mackay with the two volunteers and the sick Indian hunter took to the canoe

but the current was so strong it had to be slowly and tediously pulled up the river

Mackay’s gun, which was in the canoe, was lost in the river at a time when it was badly needed

just as two canoes with sixteen or eighteen men was seen coming downstream

anxiety intensified until the natives rapidly passed the expedition

As they approached the first house on the river, Young Chief and six others natives

were seen coming to meet them

this was a very good sign the troublemakers had not been believed

when the expedition landed, the explorers received a friendly reception, acquired some fish

and continued their upriver journey

They reached the next house near dark and were met by the troublemaker and four of his companions

nevertheless, they were well received by the inhabitants who gave them fish and berries

Mackenzie learned the troublemakers lived on the islands to the west and were traders

selling cedar bark prepared to be woven into mats, copper, iron, fish roe and beads

for these they received roasted salmon, hemlock bark cakes

and other cakes made of salmon roe, sorrel and bitter berries

after acquiring enough salmon for supper and the next day’s meals the men went to sleep

Mackenzie and one of his men took the first watch until midnight

VANCOUVER FINDS A COVE IN WHICH TO ANCHOR

*Discovery* and *Chatham* anchored in a cove where three Indians were found fishing -- July 23, 1793

tents, the observatory, chronometers and instruments were carried ashore in the afternoon

Lieutenant James Johnstone took the *Discovery’s* small cutter with Midshipman Robert Barrie

and ten days’ worth of supplies to survey the continental coast north of Point Maskelyne

Captain George Vancouver decided to lead the primary boat expedition himself

as he was intrigued by the reports of the region given to him by Captain William Brown

and would have Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano’s ([1792] charts to guide him

*Discovery’s* yawl and launch were loaded with supplies for two weeks -- all they could carry

Vancouver, Lieutenant Peter Puget and Dr. Archibald Menzies took the yawl

Lieutenant Spelman Swaine sailed the launch as the expedition set out to explore the coastline

Master Joseph Whidbey was left in charge of the observatory beside the anchorage

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE CONTINUES UP THE (BELLA COOLA) RIVER

Alexander Mackenzie was the first awake in the morning -- July 24, 1793

he sent Alexander Mackay to see if their canoe remained where it had been left

Mackay returned to tell Mackenzie the troublemakers had loaded it with their articles

and they were ready to depart

Mackenzie hurried to the canoe and grabbed it by the stern

he was ready to overturn it along with the three men inside and all of their merchandise

when one of the residents of the house told him this was their canoe

Mackenzie’s guide, Young Chief, had taken his canoe

two other native traders nimbly leaped into the canoe and hurriedly pushed off

now Mackenzie had no guide and no canoe

but two local natives were easily convinced to guide the expedition with their own canoe

Because the house where they spent the night was located on an island

those five members of the expedition who had chosen to walk were ferried to the river bank

Mackenzie, Alexander Mackay, two of his voyageurs and the sick Indian also set out in the canoe

soon they met the chief of the village with six very large houses

he was fishing with considerable success using a seine between two canoes

Mackenzie was told that Young Chief had passed by on foot very early in the morning

the chief took Mackenzie and his four companions upriver in a canoe with great speed

Mackenzie was surprised by the natives’ skill paddling against the strong current

Mackenzie was landed at the chief’s house in the village

he immediately placed a prepared fish before each of the five men

Mackenzie’s men who were walking appeared on the opposite bank and were ferried across

as soon as they had eaten, they set out once again on their route up the river

Mackenzie, Mackay, their two companions and the sick Indian followed in the canoe

accompanied by the chief and one of the natives as they served as guides

Mackenzie came to two houses not seen when they had passed traveling downriver -- 5:00 p.m.

because of the lateness of the hour Mackenzie’s guides refused to go on

it became necessary to gather the walking party and lead them to camp

one of the men in the walking party had been attacked by a female bear with two cubs

another man came to his rescue and shot the bear but the meat was indifferent

they received enough fish and berries from the people living in the two houses

to completely satisfy their appetites

three kinds of gooseberries surpassed any they had tasted

in addition to salmon another fish was taken that weighed from fifteen to forty pounds

this fish was wider than the salmon with a grayish color and with a hunched back

its jaw and teeth were like those of a dog

larger and stronger than any fish Mackenzie had seen before

these teeth bent inward like the claws of a bird of prey

this fish, which the locals gave the name “Dilly” lived in shallow water

(today these are known as humpback or pink salmon)

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION BEGINS ITS INVESTIGATION

Captain Vancouver’s yawl and Lieutenant Spelman Swaine’s launch

set out -- 5:00 a.m. July 24, 1793

to investigate the region north and west of (today’s Prince Rupert, British Columbia)

in thick, rainy, unfavorable weather which continued all morning

they advanced rapidly with a favorable southerly wind and a flood tide assisting their progress

the channel they investigated terminated in a low shoreline

breakfast was eaten about a mile short of the terminus

there they were visited by seven Indians who cautiously approached in a canoe

some of the natives landed a little distance away from the boat expedition

as the other continued their wary advance

distribution of some trinkets dispelled the natives obvious concerns

all of the Indians, now without hesitation, joined the British sailors

these people were well supplied with long spears, bows and arrows and iron daggers

the natives’ chief indicated he wanted to join in the meal

he was given some bread and dried fish and a glass of brandy -- these were relished

the Indians expressed a desire for the sailors to visit their village

but this was away from the route selected by Vancouver so the offer was rejected

when it became apparent the British were not interested in trade, the Indians departed

Camp was made that night at the head of the arm they were tracing -- 8:00 p.m.

they had traced a relatively low shoreline whose interior rose suddenly into high mountains

VANCOVUER TAKES UP HIS INVESTIGATION

Members of Vancouver’s boat expedition set out through think, cloudy weather

with some rain showers -- 4:00 a.m. July 25, 1792

they traveled up what appeared to be the main arm of the inlet through a narrow passage

several channels were investigated but all ended -- usually in low swampy ground

small bays and coves sometimes filled with sunken rocks were seen

they halted at the deepest of these coves and made camp for the night among pine trees

at a site twenty feet above the waterline -- even so, their tents were flooded -- 2:00 a.m. July 26

Vancouver’s boat party was forced to move into their boats for the remainder of the night

Vancouver explored to the end of “Portland Canal” (today’s British Columbia-Alaska border)

he named this body of water in honor of William Cavendish-Bentinck, 3rd Duke of Portland

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION CONTINUES UP THE (BELLA COOLA) RIVER

Mackenzie awoke to fine weather before sunrise -- July 25, 1793

natives brought plenty of fish from their machines -- these were strung on a rope in the river

Mackenzie’s expedition was taken to the south bank where the walking party departed

thick underbrush slowed their progress

Mackenzie and the remainder of his men were taken upriver

as the boating skilled of the Nuxalk people once again impressed the explorers

They reached two deserted houses located at the foot of a rapid in the (Bella Coola) river

here the native paddlers refused to attempt to travel further by water

a road was found but before setting out along that route Mackenzie satisfied his curiosity

by visiting the two houses that were built on posts

their doors were covered with fleas and immediately so were the men

the grass around the buildings also was full of fleas

Mackenzie and his men leaped into the water

Mackenzie’s guides proposed the expedition follow them along the well-beaten path

but they traveled so fast the explorers could not keep up -- especially the sick Indian

soon the guides were out of sight which was a concern to Mackenzie who wanted them

to accompany his expedition to the next village to remove any misgivings

the villagers held as a result of Young Chief’s report to his father

following the road Mackenzie viewed the finest cedar trees he had ever seen

several had trunks twenty-four feet around and were of proportionate height

alder trees also were of enormous size -- several were seven-and-a-half feet around

and rose forty feet in the air before any branches grew

hemlock, white birch, two species of spruce trees, willows and other trees were plentiful

remains of bones in certain spots indicated the natives occasionally burned their dead in this woods

Mackenzie was unsure what reception awaited them at the Great Village

every man’s weapon was made ready and Mackay was given one of Mackenzie’s pistols

one of their guides had said that if the sick man who had received Turlington’s Balsam had died

there was a strong possibility Mackenzie would be held responsible

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE ARRIVES AT THE GREAT VILLAGE

Mackenzie and his men reached the river bank opposite the Great Village -- 1:00 p.m. July 25, 1793

everything appeared peaceful as several natives were fishing above and below the weir

they readily took the explorers across the river in their canoes to the village

people hurried to the river bank to greet the whites but none of chief’s family could be seen

It was indicated that Mackenzie was to go to the chief’s house

determined to go alone, Mackenzie gave his rifle to Mackay and left him and his men behind

he instructed them to remain alert

if they heard the sound of pistols it would be useless to attempt to save him

they were to get away as quickly as possible

Mackenzie struck out with his loaded pistols in his belt and his throwing knife in his hand

he passed through a woods that was intersected by various paths

he took the one leading to the back rather than the front of the chief’s house -- and became lost

he saw the chief’s wife who told him the chief was in the next house

since none of the village men could be seen Mackenzie sat near some of the women

who were eating salmon roe and berries

Mackenzie was about to join them when Alexander Mackay appeared

After some time the chief appeared and his son, Young Chief, followed him

it was obvious the old man was displeased -- he held Mackay’s beaded tobacco box

at a distance of about three or four yards the chief threw it at Mackenzie

and walked away with great indignation

Mackenzie followed him walking past Young Chief taking him by the hand

Young Chief did not respond in a friendly manner

Mackenzie and Young Chief joined the village chief who explained

he was in a state of deep distress over the death of his son

he had cut off his hair and blackened his face in commemoration

he also indicated he had feared his son, Young Chief, had been killed by the whites

or they had all perished together in a native attack

When the chief had finished, Mackenzie led him and his son to were the explorers were waiting

when they arrived there was a great deal of rejoicing as Mackenzie had been gone so long

Mackenzie paid Young Chief for his company and his service in their journey to the sea

gifts of cloth and knives and a portion of all that was left was given the son and his father

these restored Mackenzie back into good stance with the Indians

he also traded for three robes and two sea otter pelts

Mackenzie explained the distance he must travel to return to Fort Chipewyan

and requested some fish for their journey

at this, the chief led the expedition members to his house where mats were arranged

fish was placed in front of each man

Mackenzie learned his lost dog had been howling outside the village ever since they left him

Alexander Mackay and a man were sent to find “Our Dog”but they returned without him

Mackenzie announced his intention to proceed on his journey

to this the chief responded with ten roasted salmon

Alexander Mackenzie was quite taken with these people

he went into great detail in his journal describing their housing and furnishings

their food and how it was acquired and their great skill with canoes

he discussed their form of government and attempted to understand their religion

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN DEPART FROM THE GREAT VILLAGE

Mackenzie was accompanied by the chief, Young Chief and a number of people

as far as the last house in the village -- 3:30 p.m. July 25, 1793

Mackay was instructed to take the lead and Alexander Mackenzie brought up the rear

back in the village there was great deal of confusion and noise which caused Mackenzie alarm

on looking back he saw a large number of Indians running after them

some made signs for them to stop -- others rushed forward

Mackenzie soon saw they were attempting to tell the explorers they were on the wrong trail

he learned the confusion and noise were debates whether or not to stop them

As the expedition continued along a well-worn path made difficult by large rocks along the way

they saw “Our Dog” who appeared to have lost his level-headed disposition

he ran wildly back and forth and would not approach the expedition members

he had been reduced to a skeleton

Mackenzie occasionally dropped food as the expedition progressed

slowly, the dog regained his confidence

When night came the men were not completely sure of their safety

no fire was built and each man laid down off the path by a tree with clothes on and his gun ready

no watch was posted as each man was responsible for his own safety

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH FRIENDLY VILLAGE

After a restless night, the expedition set out at first light -- July 26, 1793

they walked as quickly as possible until 8:00 a.m.

when they reached Friendly Village on Burnt Bridge Creek

in their absence five additional sheds had been built and filled with salmon

and more people were present

Mackenzie sent a messenger to inform the chief, Soocomlick, of their arrival

Soocomlick immediately returned to the village from the weir where he was fishing

he took the explorers to his house and entertained them

Mackenzie responded with gifts of an axe, two yards of blue cloth, knives

and various other articles

Nuxalk women of Friendly Village were occupied with preparing food for the winter

they boiled sorrel and different berries with salmon roe in a large kettle

this was ladled into frames about twelve inches square and one inch deep

its bottom consisted of a large leaf

this was set out in the sun until it became dried cakes

dried and roasted salmon were being packed into cedar chests

VANCOUVER RETURNS TO HIS SHIPS AND SETS OUT AGAIN

After spending a wet night Vancouver’s boat expedition set out at daylight -- June 26, 1793

traveling back to where the *Discovery* and *Chatham* were located they arrived about noon

Resupplying, Captain George Vancouver took the yawl and launch once again

this time to investigate the western shore of the inlet to the south

an unpleasant rainy night was spent in a small cove about twelve miles from the ships

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE SETS OUT TO EXPLORE ALASKA’S INSIDE PASSAGE

(Johnstone’s expedition set out once again with *Chatham’s* launch [July 25, 1793]

he and his men took all day to reach Point Maskelyne)

At Point Maskelyne they began their survey of the continental shore in earnest -- morning July 26

their investigation of the vicinity showed this to be only a spacious bay

they rowed across the shallow bay until they arrived at the northeast end where the water

suddenly deepened from five feet to fifteen feet and then became shallow again

they turned along the northeast shore and entered a narrow opening about dark

this was found to be irregular in shape with a steep, rocky westerly shore

that becomes an island at high tide

here was a large Indian village that had fallen into decay

they were forced to spend the night in the boats as they could not reach shore

(During the next four days they entered a series of small arms of the inlet

Johnstone’s progress was greatly slowed by strong winds

natives who had visited the ships now visited the boat late into the night

causing some alarm to the sailors)

MACKENZIE AND HIS NINE MEN SET OUT TO RETURN TO FORT FORK

Alexander Mackenzie’s expedition left Friendly Village -- 11:00 a.m. July 26, 1793

each man was provided about twenty pounds of salmon for his journey

they also had a little flour and some pemmican

they were accompanied by every member of the village for about a mile

who then parted from the members of Mackenzie’s expedition with signs of regret

Mackenzie’s men exited the woods and saw a high mountain ahead that was necessary to climb

when they reached a river the sick Indian was still too weak to make the attempt

Mackenzie carried him on his back

They had to ascend the first mountain before night came on so they could to look for water

Mackenzie left the sick Indian with his hunting companion and one of the voyageurs

they were to follow as the sick man’s strength allowed

climbing the mountain was a great challenge and a place where water could be found

was not reached until 5:00 p.m.

Camp was made that night at the edge of the snow fields

Mackenzie’s men were so tired they could hardly crawl about to get firewood

their anxiety regarding the sick Indian and his companions increased

until they came into camp about 7:00 p.m.

After a hearty supper of roasted salmon they sat about the fire and talked of their adventures,

delighting in the feeling of being almost out of danger and on their way home

Mackenzie was struck by the wonder of their situation high in the mountains

viewing the magnificent scenery all around them

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS UNFRIENDLY INDIANS

Morning’s dawn provided fair weather -- July 27, 1793

Captain Vancouver’s boat expedition was assisted by a rapid tidal flow

they soon reached a point that Vancouver named “Point Ramsden” (today’s Ramsden Point)

where Portland Canal had been entered [on July 25]

this location held dangerous rocks that could only be seen at low tide

continuing up northwest the arm they were connected with another arm entering from the east

after breakfast they followed the new branch north-northeast toward the continental shore

“Fillmore Inlet,” surveying “Fillmore Island” and “Nakat [fox in English] Inlet”

(in today’s Alaskan panhandle) were each identified

Fifteen well-armed Tlingit natives in two canoes joined Vancouver’s boat expedition

these people seemed quite confident and expressed a ferocity not seen in this region before

their faces were painted in a frightful manner

offers of the usual trinkets were rejected by the natives or were received only with disdain

Vancouver’s yawl was well ahead of the launch

time was rapidly approaching to take a sighting to determine their exact latitude

when the launch arrived both boats made for the shore where they were joined by the natives

by the time the boat expedition was again under way the Indians’ behavior was much more civil

As Vancouver’s party continued on their survey the Indians again approached rapidly

they waved their pelts which was extraordinary

as all of the British goods had previously been rejected or accepted only with scorn

as they approached the natives began to sing -- Vancouver noticed they had set aside their weapons

but they began to conduct themselves in such a way that he became suspicious

signs were made that the Indians should depart and they reluctantly complied

Cloudy weather prevented any sighting of latitude and longitude being taken

Vancouver’s boat expedition continued in a north-northeast course until they camped -- 8:00 p.m.

ALEXANDER MACKENZE MAKES GOOD PROGRESS ON HIS HOMEWARD JOURNEY

Mackenzie and his men continued their journey up the Tacoutche Tesse -- July 28, 1793

they arrived at the place where they had cached about twenty pounds of pemmican

and had camped with the Neguia Dinais Indians [on July 16]

it was here the Neguia Dinais decided to travel an alternative route to the Pacific Ocean

Mackenzie continued his eastward trek in pleasant weather -- no Indians were met for several days

VANCOUVER BECOMES DISCOURAGED WITH HIS INVESTIGATION

The next two days provided fair and pleasant weather -- July 28-29, 1793

they had reached 55° 25’ north latitude -- noon July 29

An abundance of salmon, seals and sea otters were seen in all directions

a great deal of time and energy had in effect achieved little geographic result

Vancouver turned south back toward his ships

AMERICAN CAPTAIN ROBERT GRAY RETURNS TO BOSTON

Captain Robert Gray completed his final return trip to Boston -- July 29, 1793

Captain Gray’s arrival in Boston was greeted with artillery and great cheering

Gray came off the boat arm in arm with the Hawaiian crewman Attoo

Attoo was a handsome young man, tall and straight

he wore the dress of his station: a helmet of gay feathers

and an exquisite cloak of yellow and scarlet

Captain Gray gave America its first claim to the Pacific Northwest

the claim of discovery of the Columbia River

soon America became second only to Great Britain in trade

sea otters help put the new republic on its feet financially

*Columbia Rediviva*’s log book showed she had sailed 50,000 miles

though the trip enabled the owners to recoup their earlier losses,

they did not send their diligent captain back to the Pacific Northwest

Captain Robert Gray retired and sank into obscurity

he died in poverty in Charleston, South Carolina [1806]

his widow appealed to Congress to rescue her from poverty

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE RETURNS TO THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Lieutenant Johnstone and his men entered the only opening remaining unexamined which ended after about six miles

Having completed their assigned task of investigating (today’s Alexander Archipelago)

Lieutenant James Johnstone and his men returned to the ships -- 9:00 p.m. July 30, 1893

they had investigated (later named Work Channel, Khutzeymateen Inlet and Quottoon Inlet)

and investigated Alaska’s Alexander Archipelago naming “Duke of York’s Island”

(named after his Royal Highness and known today as the Duke of York Archipelago

this is in reality Wrangell, Zarembo, and Etolin islands near today’s Wrangell, Alaska)

Johnstone and Barrie also sighted (Mitkof Island, the location of St. Petersburg, Alaska,

charted the (Kupreanof Islands) and explored to the head of Duncan Canal)

they surveyed (Work Channel) located northeast of (Tsimpsean Peninsula),

(Khutzeymateen Inlet) which lies between the mouths of the (Skeena) and (Nass) rivers

and (Quottoon Inlet) northeast of (Work Channel)

VANCOUVER IS AGAIN VISITED BY THE LESS THAT FRIENDLY INDIANS

Vancouver’s boat expedition stopped for lunch -- July 31, 1793

three Tlingit natives in a canoe approached with little hesitation

they seemed pleased to receive a few trinkets that were offered to them

by using signs the Indians indicated the sailors should follow them up a little arm

to where their chief lived as he had an abundance of furs to barter

however, this was out of Vancouver’s way and the offer was declined

Continuing their investigation the boat expedition entered a narrow channel that ended ahead

here camp was made for the night

soon they were visited by the Indians they had met while having lunch

this time a large canoe carried their chief

an exchange of gifts was made and the Indians retired to a small cove about half a mile away

with the promise of further trade in the morning

about an hour later a canoe was seen approaching the boat expedition’s camp

this was turned around when a pistol was fired in the air showing the sailors were on guard

TRADE WITH THE TLINGIT NATIVES PROVES TO BE UNSUCCESSFUL

Daylight saw the arrival of the sixteen or eighteen Indians as had been arranged -- August 1, 1792

one of the natives was a woman with a large lip ornament who possessed great authority

her demands to her companions were given in a surly manner

but were immediately responded to

these Indians offered sea otter pelts and a freshly killed black bear fur

but the goods offered by the British were rejected as they had been previously [July 27]

only firearms and ammunition were of interest to the natives and these were not offered After camp was broken the Indians followed the boat expedition about two miles

before they departed expressing their disappointment

Vancouver continued his investigation of the coastal shoreline following a narrow channel

to the north-northwest keeping the coastline to his starboard (right)

they reached a larger channel which terminated by a low but steep rocky shore

many little bays and coves abounded with rocks and islets

here sea otters and seals were found in far greater numbers that seen before

Vancouver took readings to determined their latitude and longitude

Lieutenant Spelman Swaine’s launch continued their survey work

but was drawn into the current of a waterfall

only by great effort was disaster avoided

Vancouver’s investigation continues in a south-westerly direction

following this channel they returned to that morning’s campsite where they stopped for the night

they had circumnavigated an island about ten miles in circumference

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION CONTINUES FOLLOWING THE COASTLINE

Captain George Vancouver, Lieutenant Peter Puget, Dr. Archibald Menzies,

Lieutenant Spelman Swaine and their crews began again early in the morning -- August 2, 1793

following the continental shore they passed through a maze of inlets and rocks

and discovered the land to their north was one or more islands

Vancouver continued north as his boat expedition passed a deserted Indian village

they observed the land was of moderate height but their hope of reaching the Pacific Ocean

vanished as the arm they were following terminated in a small fresh water brook

Vancouver was mortified that he had been absent from his ships for a whole week,

had enjoyed the finest weather of the season, and had only surveyed forty miles

that night’s camp suffered from a deluge of rain

BAD WEATHER IMPEDES THE PROGRESS OF THE BOAT EXPEDITION

Weather in the morning was gloomy and hazy -- August 3, 1793

wishing to achieve better results, Vancouver got an early start along the continental shore

which was dented with numerous small bays and innumerable rocks and islands

bad weather which became increasingly hazy and rainy forced the boat expedition to stop

Vancouver named their location “Cape Fox” after the Right Honorable Charles James Fox

Vancouver’s men retired to an unsheltered cove where they stayed for several hours

starting again the sailors made only a mile and a half

before they were again forced to stop for the night in a large well-sheltered cove

that protected them from an excessively heavy rain and strong winds

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION OF THE COASTLINE

When the weather moderated the boat expedition once again set out -- 8:00 a.m. August 4, 1793

they were aided by a favorable wind although it continued to rain and was unpleasant

after seven miles they reached what Vancouver named “Foggy Point”

Vancouver’s boat expedition continued northward

landings were not only difficult but was made dangerous by hidden rocks

as fog shortened their sight distance to fifty yards

ocean swells had disappeared making reaching the Pacific a less optimistic goal

time was lost exploring a narrow opening for about two miles

before a maze of rocks and shoals was entered and a large island was reached

there camp was made on a large island across from Foggy Point

strong winds and heavy rains remained through the night

EXPLORING THE NORTHERN COASTLINE BECOME TIRESOME AND TEDIOUS

Once again the weather abated as the boat expedition set out -- August 5, 1793

islets and rocks made reaching the shore very hazardous

however, the coastline could be established by only careful examination

of every channel, arm, inlet, creek or corner

this extraordinarily inhospitable region made this investigation extremely exasperating

in addition the weather continued unpleasant and rainy

From the shape of the shoreline Vancouver believed he was in Canal de Revillagigedo

as represented on Caamano’s charts with Revillagigedo Island the port (left) side

the inlet they had visited for two days was Bocas de Quadra

“Port Stewart”(Alaska) across the channel from Revillagigedo Island was named

Vancouver named “Point Alava” in honor of the Spanish governor at Nootka Sound

on landing and conducting an investigation on foot, Vancouver gave the name “Slate Islets”

Vancouver left Canal de Revillagigedo to the east and again focused on the continental shore

after four miles “Point Sykes” was named and then “Point Nelson” was identified

honoring British Vice Admiral Horatio Lord Nelson

Vancouver’s boat expedition continued their detailed investigation of the region

but difficult weather caused delays and progress remained slow

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE MEETS A NEW GROUP OF NEGIUIA DINAIS INDIANS

Mackenzie’s expedition reached a small stream that entered the Tacoutche Tesse -- August 4, 1793

they had camped in this same place a month before [July 4]

Across the water from them was a large number of Nascud DeneeIndians

rainy weather had made Mackenzie guns and ammunition useless causing the expedition concern

but the rain also kept the Indians confined to their lodges for the most part

Mackenzie remained on his side of the creek but called to the natives

who turned out with weapons in hand and threatened destruction if their lodges were approached

these were strangers to Mackenzie but they said their relatives had told them of the whites

a messenger was sent to the relatives who were camped on an island some distance away

to inform the other Nascud Denees of the arrival of Mackenzie’s expedition

MACKENZIE VISITS A CACHE HE HAD LEFT BEHIND ON HIS WESTWARD JOURNEY

When Mackenzie arrived at the cache of about twenty pounds of pemmican he had hidden [July 4]

he found everything to be in good order -- not even footprints could be seen -- August 5, 1793

after they pitched their tents Mackenzie rewarded himself and his men with a taste of rum

but found they had been without liquor for so long they had lost their taste of it

Nascud Denees Indians from across the creek visited

they were rewarded for not disturbing the caches while there remained in the area

MACKENZIE DELIVERS A FEARFUL THREAT TO THE NASCUD DENEE INDIANS

Mackenzie sent five men with the canoe to collect the goods buried in the caches

only one bale of goods which had gotten wet was damaged

none of the provisions, which were now desperately needed, had been damaged

Nascud DeneeIndians wearing beaver robes arrived in large numbers from all directions

Mackenzie purchased fifteen of these

oddly, these people, who could have without fear taken everything that had been left behind,

now pilfered several items from the expedition

Mackenzie became aware of the pilfering and told the Indians the salmon they relied on for food

came from the ocean which belonged to white men who possessed the power

to starve the Indians and their children

if they did not return everything that had been stolen all of the salmon

would be stopped from coming upstream

greatly concerned by such a drastic and vile threat everything that could be found

was returned by the Indians

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION IS AGAIN UNDER WAY

Camp was broken and Mackenzie set out in good weather -- 9:00 a.m. August 7, 1793

but frequent showers persisted throughout the day raising the level of the water a foot and a half

Camp was made that night in the dark as falling rains swelled the Tacoutche Tesse

their clothes and baggage had to be moved twice before dawn

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS INVESTIGATION

Vancouver’s boat expedition navigated a channel that split in three directions

he chose the eastern course and spent a rainy unpleasant day in its investigation

it was found to terminate in the usual manner

the surrounding area was composed of huge masses of steep, barren, rocky mountains

with steep cliffs that ran almost perpendicularly to the water’s edge

there was no soil and only a few scattered dwarf trees could be seen at the lower levels

while the summits were covered in snow

Returning to the main inlet Vancouver named “Point Trollop”

VANCOUVER AGAIN MAKES CONTACT WITH THE INDIANS

After breaking camp at Point Trollop Vancouver’s boat expedition

proceeded along the continental shore north about a mile -- August 9, 1793

Vancouver entered a very narrow channel

landing they climbed a remarkable rock that resembled a ship under sail

this provided an excellent view of the inlets

they stopped for breakfast at what Vancouver named “New Eddystone”Rock

here they were approached by a dozen natives in three small canoes

unarmed, they accepted the trinkets that were presented to them in good humor

as the Indians had nothing to trade they invited the British sailors to their village

but as this was not in the direction Vancouver required the offer was rejected

Vancouver investigated yet another insignificant branch that terminated in the usual manner

before returning to the main inlet where camp was made -- 10:00 p.m.

VANCOUVER SHIFTS HIS ATTENTION TO FINDING A LARGE CHANNEL

Vancouver’s investigation of the continental shore was again taken up -- August 10, 1793

their supplies were low and they were 120 miles from their ships by the best route they knew

Vancouver was mortified that nowhere had been found a place

where the *Discovery* and *Chatman* could be anchored

to allow boat expeditions to be sent out and the region still needed to be explored

Vancouver decided to stop his exploration of the coastline to the east

rather he would search the main channel for a passage large enough for his ships

calm and pleasant weather made their investigation more pleasurable

they reached 55° 56’ north latitude and 228° 54½’ longitude

although it was too late at night to see clearly around them Vancouver detected a sea breeze

coming from a branch of water leading to the southwest

Vancouver regretted he had left unexamined the small branch seen in the morning

and the bay they had passed in the afternoon

if these had been investigated the continental shore would have been surveyed to this location

Vancouver named his location “Point Fitzgibbon”

(located at the north end of Revillagigedo Island)

Vancouver decided to examine a northeast running branch

if this terminated it was reasonable to assume the others would also

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE REACHES THE LONG RAPIDS

Mackenzie and his nine men were under way in clear weather once again -- 5:00 a.m. August 11, 1793

They came to the foot of the long rapids of the Tacoutche Tesse

here Mackenzie had been forced to construct Rocky Mountain Portage -- 10:00 a.m.

they entered the long rapids using poles to maneuver their canoe with little difficulty

they could hardly believe this was the same violent torrent

they had faced while traveling west [June 19]

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SETS OUT FROM POINT FITZGIBBON

Vancouver took his two boats up a northeast running branch -- morning August 11, 1793

to investigate Alexander Archipelago (first visited by Alexei Chirikov [1741])

After passing small bays they arrived at the terminus

small streams were strewn with dead or dying spawned-out salmon

this was a familiar scene repeated at nearly every run of fresh water

sailors harvested those in the best condition although they knew these were of poor quality

Vancouver named “Burrough’s Bay” before turning north along the coastline

next Point Lees” and “Point Whaley” were named on Revillagigedo Island

Pressing on they reached a place on the southern shore where the water became ocean colored

and the channel they were following turned sharply south and widened -- 8:00 p.m.

camp was made for the night about an hour later

JUAN MARTINEZ Y ZAYAS REACHES SPAIN’S NUNEZ GAONA (NEAH BAY)

Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza sailing the *Activa*, was delayed from carrying out his newest assignment

by bad weather

he ran out of food in the vicinity of southern Oregon

and was forced to turn back to San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

Having heard nothing from his commander Lieutenant Francisco Eliza,

Lieutenant Juan Martines y Zayas continued to sail north

Zayas waited in the vicinity of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay) aboard the *Mexicana* until August

Lieutenant Zayas arrived at the Spanish colony of Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

to find nothing there as the colony had been deserted

he waited for the arrival of Lieutenant Francisco Eliza but heard nothing

Zayas sailed south and entered the Rio San Rogue (Columbia River) -- August 11, 1793

he encountered shallow water and was surrounded by Indians

fearing treachery on the part of the natives, he sailed upriver only fourteen miles

before deciding it was unwise to continue

having inspected both sides of the river for that short distance

he concluded this was not a safe place for a Spanish colony

Zayas sailed the *Mexicana* for San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

he investigated Grays Harbor managed to travel fifteen miles up the Columbia River

before running aground

VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS HOSTILE TLINGIT INDIANS ON REVILLAGIGEDO ISLAND

Calm hazy weather greeted the members of Vancouver’s boat expedition

as the set out from Port Whaley -- August 12, 1793

Two openings could be seen to the west but only with great difficulty through the haze

Vancouver selected the southernmost lead

several inlets and small bays were disregarded due to lack of time and supplies

Several canoes appeared and four large canoes turned toward the launch behind the yawl

singing by the Indians indicated they were peacefully inclined

another canoe carrying two men approached the yawl without hesitation

they accepted a few trifling presents in good humor

additional Indians were standing on shore and at the insistence of their friends set out in two canoes

they reached the boat expedition just as Vancouver went ashore to establish their location

these people were well satisfied with the presents they received and offered skins in return

Vancouver landed and left Lieutenant Peter Puget in charge of the yawl

quickly the natives became loud and rowdy shouting to their friends near the launch

when Vancouver returned Puget reported the Indians had become thievish

he suspected they might be troublesome

Vancouver took the yawl away from shore in an effort to gain some space from the Indians

but the Indians in four or five canoes grabbed on to the boats

an old woman they recognized from other encounters by her extended lower lip that held a piercing

grabbed the lead line of the yawl and tied it to her canoe

quickly a young man who appeared to be the chief seated himself in the bow of the yawl,

put on a mask that resembled a wolf’s face

another Indian seized an opportunity to grab a musket out of the boat

Vancouver’s situation in the yawl was critical and the launch was too distant to be of help

their only chance was to talk with the Indians until the launch could arrive

Vancouver picked up a musket and walked to the chief

surrounding Indians, about fifty, seized their daggers and spears

the chief left the boat and returned to his canoe

he made signs that if Vancouver laid down his musket

the Indians would lay down their weapons also -- this was done

at this point the woman with the unique features berated her companions to attack

Indians in a canoe near the stern of the yawl became very agitated by the encouragement

an old man seized hold a sailor’s oar -- again the spears were brandished

Vancouver returned to the stern of the yawl -- he and Puget once again laid down their guns

this time the result was less friendly as several spears were thrust and passed close by

Indians grabbed at everything that was movable in the yawl

by this time the launch had arrived within pistol shot -- Vancouver order both boats to fire

Indians in the small canoes jumped into the water while those in the large canoes

moved to the far side of their canoe and thus raised the near side to provide protection

from the gunfire of the yawl although they were exposed to gunfire from the launch

all of the canoes scrambled toward the shore taking with them

three muskets and a fowling piece (a light gun that fires small shot) and other items

Vancouver planned to destroy their canoes in retaliation but he learned two men were badly wounded

Robert Betton was badly wounded by a spear to the chest a

George Bridgeman was less injured by a spear to the lower thigh

When the Indians reached the shore they climbed a cliff and harassed the launch by throwing stones

they also fired the muskets they had taken and other weapons of their own

Vancouver made a retreat for about a quarter of a mile where they stopped so Dr. Menzies

could attend the wounded

Vancouver named the scene of battle “Escape Point”

and a small opening about three miles away where the Indians first appeared “Traitor’s Cove”

Vancouver at first suspected his men had provoked the attack in his absence

but his inquiry showed this to be not so

possession of muskets and other goods by these Indians showed they were familiar with trade

Vancouver suspected they had been ill-treated by other white explorers

Vancouver set a course across an extensive bay with several small openings

they reached “Betton’s Island” named after one of their wounded shipmates

that night camp was made near a conspicuous point of land named “Point Higgins”

in honor of his Excellency Senior Higgins de Vallenar, the president of Chile

across Cape Caamano from Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano’s Point Caamano

VANCOUVER USED CAAMANO’S CHARTS GIVEN TO HIM BY COMMANDANT QUADRA

Leaving Point Higgins they passed an opening that proved to be Caamano’s Nostra Sen del Carmin

Vancouver paused to reflect on the valuable and kind service done him for by his friend

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega Quadra who gave him Caamano’s charts

Vancouver was very confident a passage to his ships would be found in this direction

he had investigated the land north of what he named “Canal de Revillagigedo”

to honor the Viceroy of New Spain and the island to the north “Island of Revillagigedo”

which is separated from the mainland by “Behm’s Canal”

Vancouver followed the main channel back although an alternative route

that appeared to be a more direct way to his ships

they stopped for the night at what was named “Point Davison” to compliment Alexander Davison

the owner of Vancouver supply ship *Daedalus*

here a disagreeable night was spent with strong gale winds accompanied by heavy rain

(at the entrance to today’s Ketchikan, Alaska)

they had circumnavigated Revillagigedo Island

MACKENZIE AND HIS MEN REACH THE CONTINENTAL DIVIDE

Although the weather was cold, raw and rainy Mackenzie’s expedition pressed on -- August 14, 1793

they reached the swampy portage between the Tacoutche Tesse and a small river -- 5:30 a.m.

as the temperature dropped the men could not keep warm even with all of their physical exertions

Mackenzie provided the last of their supply of rum

their canoe was so heavy and the portage across the Continental Divide so difficult

that the lives of the men were placed in danger

SPANISH COMMANDER CAAMANO’S CANAL DE REVILLAGIGEDO IS EXPLORED

Vancouver’s boat expedition continued back toward the *Discovery* and *Chatham* --August 14, 1793

as attention was focused on Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano’s Canal de Revillagigedo

“Point Percy” was named at the end of a long narrow cluster of low islands

“Cape Northumberland” was named in honor of an illustrious British family

Vancouver’s expedition passed south through a cluster of dangerous rocks at this location

“Portland’s Canal” (today’s Portland Canal) was named

their supplies were so exhausted that each member of the expedition dined on half a pint of peas

even so the men continued to row or sail the boats all through the night -- August 15

MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION COMES TO THE PLACE WHERE THEIR CANOE HAD WRECKED Members of Mackenzie’s expedition continued their portage across the Continental Divide

cold weather chilled the men when they were forced to wade in the icy waters of a small stream

as they dragged their loaded canoe many obstacles in the stream slowed their progress

Camp was made about sunset where they had camped on their westward journey [June 13]

they were at the scene of the accident that had nearly taken their lives

although the feet and legs of the men were numb with cold they searched the stream

for the musket balls that had been lost-- without success

VANCOUVER’S BOAT EXPEDITION REACHES THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

After rowing and sailing all night Vancouver reached his ships -- 7:00 a.m. August 16, 1793

they had investigated the northern coastline for twenty-three days and covered 700 nautical miles

although they had not gone more sixty miles from where the ships were anchored

this was a result of the perplexing, tedious and laborious route they had traced

Vancouver ordered everything brought from the shore to the ships in preparation for sailing

MACKENZIE REACHES THE (PARSNIP RIVER)

Setting out from the stream that had nearly taken their lives, Mackenzie and his nine men

arrived at the 175-pace long carrying place that led to the second small lake [visited on June 12]

the lake was so full of driftwood that a great deal of time and energy was required

they reached the (Parsnip) river -- what Mackenzie considered the headwaters of the Peace River Mackenzie took a reading and noted their location as 69.30° north latitude, 135° west longitude

Mackenzie considered transferring some live spawning salmon from westward flowing waters

across the Continental Divide and placing them in the Peace River

to discover if salmon could migrate to the Arctic Ocean -- August 16, 1793

however, he and his men were badly worn down from their many adversities, labor and cold

Mackenzie himself was suffering with swollen feet and ankles and walked with great pain

he decided to forego the experiment

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S EXPEDITION REACHES THE PEACE RIVER

Mackenzie and his men broke their lakeside camp -- 5:00 a.m. August 17, 1793

they began their 817-pace portage across a neck of land from the lake to the (Parsnip) river

Mackenzie’s foot and ankle hurt so badly that he submitted to being carried

Mackenzie’s expedition traveled down the (Parsnip) river and entered the Peace River -- 7:30 a.m.

they passed the place where they had met the Shuswap Indians [June 9]

here Sikannis had drawn a map of the route to the ocean

VANCOUVER AGAIN SHIFTS THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Captain Vancouver completed his nautical and astronomical observations

he named his location “Observatory Inlet” and the anchorage “Salmon Cove”

Vancouver’s expedition sailed from Salmon Cove -- 6:00 a.m. August 17, 1793

they followed a route toward Spanish Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano’s Cape Caamano

rather than the intricate channels Vancouver had followed on his most recent excursion

even so, bad weather and hazardous sailing impeded their progress

MACKENZIE MAKES RAPID PROGRESS

Once again under way at daylight -- August 18, 1873

Mackenzie’s expedition rode the current of the Peace River which had diminished considerably

they landed where camp had been made [June 7] and sealed their canoe to make it watertight

they reached the place where Mackenzie had lost his journal in the river [June 4]

for the next several days Mackenzie kept detailed notes to replace those that had been lost

their progress was now very rapid -- they traveled in one day what had taken seven days before

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE TRAVELS QUICKLY DOWN THE PEACE RIVER

Mackenzie was required to start at a later time than usual as they had camped at the foot of a rapid

that required daylight to pass through safely -- August 20, 1793

Mackenzie continued his detailed note taking

Food became scarce for the members of the expedition

Mackenzie reduced the men’s rations to make the available supplies last as long as possible

Alexander McKay and the two Indians were sent ahead to hunt

while the remainder of the expedition began working to repair the canoe

and to carry the baggage around Rocky Mountain Portage [first passed May 24]

McKay returned with buffalo meat about sunset greatly raising the morale of the men

Mackenzie’s journey down the Peace River continued swiftly

they were careful to land at the head of each rapids and inspect it

however, the canoe being light, they passed over most places without difficulty

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION VISITS HAIDA GWAII (QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS)

After sailing less than forty miles from Observatory Inlet in two days,

*Discovery and* Chatham reached “Point Wales” which was named by Captain Vancouver

thus honoring a good friend -- August 20, 1793

Once again reaching Chatham’s Sound during the night they sailed past Cape Fox and Dundas Island

reaching “Moira’s Sound” and nearby “Wedge Island” -- August 20

MACKENZIE AND HIS EXPEDITION MEMBERS NEAR THE END OF THEIR STRENGTH

Alexander Mackenzie Alexander Mackay and his six voyageurs and two Indian hunters

once again set out -- dawn August 21, 1793

but fire had passed through the portage they had taken and finding their way was difficult

using all of their strength to continue on, they did not return to the river until 4:00 p.m.

Mackenzie’s swollen feet and ankles were better but still hampered his efforts

traveling down the Peace River with their canoe seemed almost as trying as traveling up

Mackenzie called a halt for the day

their canoe required maintenance and new poles, both long and short, needed to be cut

these tasks kept them occupied until late into the night

Alexander Mackay was sent with the two Indian hunters to find game

arrangements were made for a rendezvous down the river

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* REACH CHOLOMONDELEY’S SOUND

Sailing on with light winds Vancouver entered “Cholmondeley’s Sound”

on Alexei Chirikov’s Prince of Wales Island -- August 21, 1793

Vancouver named “Cape Caamano” (Caamano Point) to commemorate the Spanish officer

whose charts he had been following

Calm weather gave a good opportunity for a party of local Indians to visit the ships

one of these men requested permission to board the *Discovery* and this was granted

he said his chief, whose name was Ononnifloy, was a very leader powerful he lived up a nearby northwest running branch

he also said the northeast running branch was the home of very bad men

(this information had already been tragically confirmed by Vancouver)

not being more than a dozen miles from Escape Point kept the expedition alert

when Vancouver sailed up the northeast branch the Indians declined to remain with him

ALEXANDER MACKAY HAS GREAT SUCCESS WITH HIS HUNTING PARTY

Because of the weakened physical condition of his men and the nature of the task facing them

Mackenzie got a start that was later than usual on this cold, clear morning -- August 22, 1793

His expedition spent their time traveling either by rapidly with the strong downriver current

or by shooting the many rapids that filled this stretch of the Peace River featured

frequently they would land their canoe and investigate to rapids before running them

however, the lightly burdened canoe made the task, even at the portages, easier

Mackenzie arrived at the rendezvous place and found Alexander Mackay had plenty of meat

they had killed two elk only a few hundred yards away and had already roasted the venison

after a hearty meal each man was given as much meat as he could carry

When they once again took up their journey they arrived at the location

where their canoe had been damaged by a tree stump [May 18]

Arriving on the Great Plains they found animals grazing in every direction

good hunting provided an opportunity for the men satisfy their appetites

Mackenzie made note of the quantity that could be consumed by his men

he reported that an elk was killed which weighed two hundred and fifty pounds

this provided a very hearty dinner -- 1:00 p.m.

supper later consisted of a kettle full of the elk flesh that was boiled and eaten

and the kettle was replenished -- all that remained, the bones and various parts,

were placed in the fire and roasted

what remained was consumed the next morning by all ten people and their dog

VANCOUVER FINDS SAFE ANCHORAGE FOR THE *DISCOVERY*AND *CHATHAM*

Captain George Vancouver found small convenient bay to his liking -- August 22, 1793

which was located about four miles and across the channel from Traitor’s Cove

several small islands protected the *Discovery* and *Chatham* from the wind

and excellent supply of fresh water was readily available

moderately high banks covered with pine trees, berry bushes and shrubs

added to the positive prospects offered by this location

Two long boat excursions were prepared

Master Joseph Whidbey would take the *Discovery’s* large cutter accompanied by

Lieutenant Baker in the launch with supplies for two weeks

they would finish what was left unexplored by Vancouver

Lieutenant James Johnstone with two cutters took ten days’ worth of supplies

to investigate the waters of Cape Caamano near Point Caamano to the northwest

VANCOUVER IS ONCE AGAIN VISIT BY THE FRIENDLY INDIANS

Both boat expeditions set out to begin their survey of remaining uncharted waters -- August 23, 1793

Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget remained with the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

because no smoke or others signs of habitation were seen

Vancouver concluded the inhospitable Indians had departed for the season

friendly natives who previously had visited returned in the morning

their spokesman said his powerful chief, Ononnifloy, planned to visit in a day or two

but a gift of molasses and bread would assure the sailors’ friendship

this was presented to the spokesman along with several other small gifts

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE AND HIS NINE MEN ARRIVE AT FORT FORK

Mackenzie and his expedition rounded a point of land and saw Fort Fork -- August 24, 1793

Mackenzie reported, **“We threw out our flag and accompanied it with a general discharge of firearms, while the men were in such spirits, and made such an active use of their paddles, that we arrived before the two men whom we left here in the spring could recover their senses to answer us. Thus we landed at four in the afternoon at the place which we left on the 9th of May. Here my voyages of discovery terminate. Their toils and their dangers, their solicitudes and sufferings have not been exaggerated in my descriptions. … I received, however, the reward of my labors, for they were crowned with success.”**[[127]](#footnote-127)

Their remarkable return journey from the Pacific Ocean took only thirty-three days

RESULT OF ALEXANCER MACKENIE’S SECOND EXPEDITION

Alexander Mackenzie was a man of extraordinary physical strength, determination and perseverance

his route to the Pacific Ocean and back proved too difficult for others to follow

but that did not diminish the value of his great 117-day expedition across the American wilds

Mackenzie was twenty-nine years old when he and his nine companions

his cousin Alexander McKay, Canadian voyageurs Joseph Landry, Charles Ducette,

Francois Beaulieux, Baptiste Bisson, Francois Courtois and Jacques Beauchamps

made their extraordinary overland journey to Bella Coola and Dean Channel

Landry and Ducette had accompanied Mackenzie on his [1789] adventure to the Arctic

but as he noted in his later book *First Man West,* Mackenzie considered his achievement

to be **“**at least in part a failure” (page 281)

because he had failed to find a useable commercial route

Twelve years later the discoveries he made on his “failed” journey played a key role

in President Thomas Jefferson’s decision to send Lewis and Clark

on their two-year journey to the Pacific Ocean

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER REMAINS WITH THE ANCHORED SHIPS

Fair weather provided an opportunity to take several good readings of their location -- August 25, 1793

these agreed with the calculations Vancouver had taken during his boat expedition to this area

About midnight the crewmen were disturbed by party of singing native as they entered the harbor

it seemed a large number of people but when they arrived

they proved to be only seventeen natives in a single canoe

after paddling around the ships they landed not far away

there they sang until daybreak -- August 26

these visitors were highly decorated with their faces fancifully painted

their hair was powdered with the white down of sea birds

With great ceremony the Indians came alongside the ships

their chief, named Kanaut, requested permission to come on board which was immediately granted

he presented Vancouver a sea otter pelt and indicated they wished to trade

they proved to be good, honest, cheerful, friendly traders

pleasant and successful trade was conducted with the natives until they disposed of everything

they were inclined to part with and took a most friendly departure [August 28, 1793]

MASTER JOSEPH WHIDBEY’S BOAT EXPEDITION RETURNS TO THE SHIPS

Master Joseph Whidbey returned from tracing the continental shore -- August 28

they had circumnavigated an island named “Bell’s Island” (today’s Bell Island) by Vancouver

rainy unpleasant weather with adverse winds made progress slow [August 24]

Whidbey reached the first unexamined opening and entered [August 25]

what Vancouver named “Walker’s (Walker) Cove” was named in honor of *Chatham’s* surgeon

this inlet terminated in the usual manner

they returned to the main channel and continued on passing three small bays and coves

each of these was examined

breakfast was eaten at Point Fitzgibbon [August 26]

here some very cautious natives were seen -- one Indian man invited the sailors to come ashore

soon four canoes containing about ten natives appeared from a small cove

they sang and made speeches but not approach

when the boat expedition prepared to depart the Indians retired back to their cove

as the sailors continued their survey the canoes were seen to follow

now carrying fifteen to twenty natives

looking glasses and other trifles were attached to wood pieces and dropped in the water

these were carefully picked up by the Indians but they would not approach

Master Whidbey decided to continue with his survey work

he was convinced these were some of the hostile natives who had attacked the yawl

Whidbey entered the third opening left unexplored by Captain Vancouver [August 27]

here they met another small party of seven Indian men near a small miserable hut

they put on their war clothes and approached the boat

one carried a musket and another a pistol which they cocked

natives were armed with bows and carried many arrows

an old man appeared without any weapon and held the skin of a bird in one hand

he began a long speech and plucked feathers from the skin

stopping occasionally to blow the feathers into the air

Whidbey considered these to be friendly gestures

some spoons were thrown in the direction of the orator

Whidbey indicated they were hungry which had the desired effect

as the old man told the armed Indians to leave and some salmon was brought

Whidbey decided nothing more could be accomplished and once again began his survey

two additional openings were examined that day

rain and unpleasant weather had accompanied the boat expedition during this examination

which continued as they approached the last unexamined opening [August 28]

after they entered they found an extensive bay with numerous bays and an island were seen

when their investigation was completed they began their return to the ships

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* REMAIN AT ANCHOR

Vancouver took an interval of fair weather as an opportunity to make further celestial observations

About twenty-five Indians in three canoes visited the ships that afternoon -- August 30, 1793

these were strangers to the British and they appeared to be people of some consequence

Captain Vancouver presented them with gifts appropriate to their apparent rank

these were accepted with some indifference

as the natives paddled to the shore where they camped for the night

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ENCOUNTERS THE GREAT CHIEF

Both ships were again visited by Indians in three canoes -- morning August 31, 1793

they now appeared more social and each chief presented Vancouver with a sea otter pelt

they requested an opportunity to trade as they had brought many items to barter

fresh salmon was immediately purchased

Several of these friendly natives were on board the *Chatham* when they were surprised

by the appearance of a large canoe full of singing natives keeping time with their paddles

who approached the *Discovery* -- much to the distress of the Indians on the *Chatham*

whose companions in the nearby canoes immediately equipped themselves in war clothes

and took up their spears from the bottom of their canoes

and crouched in a hostile posture looking toward the newcomers

all this time the newcomers continued their approach toward the *Discovery*

both groups of Indians expressed their hostility in songs and menacing speeches

when natives in the large canoe stood pistols and blunderbusses could be seen

these were all bright and in good working order

a conversation took place between both groups of Indians and all appeared to be reconciled

at this point the chief in the large canoe requested permission to board the *Discovery*

he came on board accompanied by a man who appeared to be of some importance

after a few words between the two groups of Indians an assurance of peace seemed to be agreed on

the minister, as this appeared to be his role, who accompanied the chief on board the *Discovery*

informed Vancouver this was Ononnifloy, the great chief

this identification was confirmed by the messenger who had earlier visited the ships

as he arrived at the *Discovery* in a smaller canoe

Ononnifloy received the presents offered to him with great cheerfulness and satisfaction

the chiefs in the smaller canoes came on board and also received presents

a great deal of good will was demonstrated among all of the natives and the sailors

toward the end of the day the great chief noted he had nowhere to sleep on the beach

he requested permission to spend the night on the ship which was granted

when it was dark the crew of the *Discovery* displayed some fireworks to amuse the Indians but they paid little attention

bread and molasses with rum and wine were better received by the chief

who retired for the night completely composed

TRADE IS CONDUCTED WITH THE INDIANS VISITING THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Ononnifloy joined his people on the beach early in the morning -- September 1, 1793

who were busily occupied adorning themselves

After breakfast the great chief attended by all of the other chiefs took a canoe out to the *Discovery*

where they sang as they paddled around both ships

they came along side the *Discovery* and performed more songs while displaying wild gestures

during the principal parts each chief each in succession performed the role of hero of the song

at various pauses Vancouver was presented a sea otter pelt

this was all done to the great amusement of the Indian spectators

Ononnifloy let it be known that since peace and goodwill now prevailed he desired to trade

several otter pelts were presented for barter for firearms and ammunition

when Ononnifloy found these would not be offered

pewter spoons, looking glasses, beads and other trinkets were accepted

About sixty or so natives were visiting the ships

one of these men was especially intriguing to Vancouver and the crewmen

he was dressed in a blue jacket and pants and appeared to be Spanish

oddly he was familiar with pockets which usually confounded the natives

he also was familiar with the Spanish custom of smoking cigars by exhaling through the nose

and appeared at to be familiar with snuff

he may have taken a snuff box from a cabin -- the only theft attempted by these Indians

he was accustomed to European food and gleefully ate and drank everything he was given

while he did not look at all European he could have been from New Spain (Mexico)

and may have deserted from a Spanish ship

he was familiar with the various channels of water that interlaced the region

he knew the opening northwest of Cape Caamano led to branches that terminated inland

and that Cape Caamano itself led to the ocean at a far distance

Vancouver’s men questioned him in Spanish but he did not appear familiar with the language

whether or not this was a ploy could not be determined

Vancouver offered to take him on the *Discovery* when it sailed but he declined

this individual’s background remained a mystery

PREPARATIONS ARE MADE BY VANCOUVER TO CHANGE LOCATIONS

Lieutenant Johnstone was due to return from his boat expedition at any time -- September 2, 1793

brewing utensils, scientific equipment and other gear on land were gathered together

to provide for a speedy start to follow up on Johnstone’s investigations

Vancouver named his location across from Revillagigedo Island “Port Stewart”

honoring the sailor who surveyed its waters

Indians watching the activities asked if Vancouver would visit their village

when it was discovered this would happen the natives appeared quite pleased

they left and paddled south to prepare their trade goods for the visit

LIEUTENANT JAMES JOHNSTONE FAILS TO RETURN

Concern for the boat expedition grew rapidly

Ononnfloy and his people reported the area assigned to Lieutenant Johnstone for exploration

was inhabited with Indians who possessed firearms

However, James Johnstone and his party arrived at the ships -- about noon September 4, 1793

although he had investigated the northern portion of the Duke of York Archepelago

he had not found a passage to the ocean, but there was little doubt the last channel he followed

would eventually would make that communication

Johnstone reported on the day he had set out [August 23] he had reached Cape Caamano about dark

their progress had been slowed by a strong southerly wind and a deluge of rain

their boat’s mast was carried away and most of the possessions became very wet

time was lost in making repairs and drying their equipment and supplies

once again they were underway examining the channel [August 25]

as was their custom they kept the continental shore to their starboard (right)

reading Johnstone’s charts Vancouver named “Point Mesurier,”

the point opposite was identified as “Point Grindall” after British captain Grindall

one of the inlet was named “Prince Ernest’s Sound” after his Royal Highness

and the point opposite was called “Point Onslow”

Johnstone continued to follow the continental shore passing several bay and scattered rocks

what Vancouver named “Point Warde” was identified

here the continent took a sharp turn to the north and the arm divided into two branches

they investigated the eastern branch which terminated after about five miles

Vancouver named “Bradfield Canal” which had been reached [September 26] setting out to explore Bradfield Canal a canoe with three Indians was seen

they accompanied the boat expedition for some distance

when the sailors turned up Bradfield Canal the Indians indicated the passage terminated

and signed they would wait for the return of the British sailors

on their return in the evening the members of the boat expedition found the Indians

rainy and unpleasant weather was faced by the boat expedition in the morning [September 27]

they began an investigation of the branch that ran north-northwest

this branch divided once again to the north and west

this westerly branch was taken as far as what became known as “Point Madan”

where once again the channel branched south-southwest and north

even harsher weather impeded the boat expedition’s progress [September 28]

after traveling about sixteen miles [September 27] “Point Highfield” was reached

bad weather made viewing their surrounding difficult

but three extensive branches were seen

the third branch followed the continental shore and its entrance became “Point Rothsay”

they set out toward this point but were soon stopped by shallow water

they left the continental shore and turned west along the shallow water

travel was difficult but “Point Blaquiere” was reached opposite Point Rothsay

this investigation took most of the day

nine Indians in three canoes accompanied the British but they departed that evening

exploring the shallows was given up as attention was focused on the continent [September 29]

“Point Howe” (later named by Vancouver) was reached as was “Point Craig”

and “Point Alexander” from Johnstone’s charts

passing through a narrow channel “Point Hood” honoring Admiral (later Lord) Bridgeport

“Duncan’s Canal” stretched to the west and ultimately ended in a shallow bay

to the west a great branch appeared running to the southwest

“Point Mitchell” was named after British Navy Captain William Mitchell

there was no doubt they had reached an arm of the sea which divided into three branches

the easternmost branch had been investigated

main branch extended to the west and southwest but the third branch also seemed significant

as it appeared to connect with channel running past Cape Caamano

because supplies were running low and the southwest channel seemed intricate and hazardous

Johnstone decided to investigate the main branch that ran to the west

Johnstone’s boat expedition proceeded up the main channel [September 1]

Vancouver later named the northeast point of entrance “Point MacNamara”

and the west point became “Point Colpoys” at the northern end of Prince of Wales Island

following the eastern shore of the island “Bushy Island” was reached

continuing down the channel they rested for the night

entering the channel once again [September 2] Johnstone’s boat party reached “Point Nesbitt”

pressing on, a wide opening was reached and “Point Harrington” was charted

after ten miles “Point Stanhope” came into view at noon where a reading was taken

afternoon and evening were taken passing by broken shores in waters filled with islets

“Point Onflow” was reached at midnight

since this location was familiar to Johnstone he knew he had circumnavigated an island

Johnstone set out once again [September 3] in tolerable weather

southerly winds slowed their progress so Cape Caamano was not reached until sunset

they were surprised by the arrival of twenty canoes that approached from around a small point

there seemed to be no less than 250 Indians -- all probably well-armed

as these people approached the boats Lieutenant Johnstone ordered a musket fired -- to no effect

a swivel gun loaded with buckshot was fired ahead of the canoes

this caused a temporary halt but soon the Indians advanced once again

another musket shot over the heads of the Indians caused them to paddle to the shore

because of the very large number of Indians and the impossibility of deterring their intentions

Johnstone turned away from the natives and traveled all night in an effort to distance themselves

*Discovery* and *Chatham* were reached about noon [September 4]

VANCOUVER AGAIN CHANGES THE LOCATION OF THE *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Calm weather kept *Discovery* and *Chatham* at anchor at Port Stewart until September 5, 1793

when a course was set toward Cape Caamano using the boats to tow the ships

Vancouver intended to investigate the channel Lieutenant Johnstone believed reached the ocean but no safe anchorage could be found for the night

which resulted in an uncomfortable night of sailing through a narrow channel

impeded by dark, gloomy, misty and rainy weather filled with many dangerous rocks

VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION AVOIDS A NEAR DISASTER

After a hazardous night of sailing a wide, navigable opening was found where two branches joined

here the hawser rope used to tow the *Discovery’s* launch broke -- 4:00 a.m. September 6, 1793

had this occurred during the night the boat would certainly have been destroyed on the rocks

when safer water was reached the boat was recovered

Vancouver was grateful that Lieutenant Johnstone had investigated these waters

and found a safe passage to the northwest

When the weather cleared and necessary repairs were complete both ships again sailed -- 10:00 a.m.

with favorable winds great progress was made until dark

when they anchored off the Duke of York’s Islands

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SEND OUT TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

After spending the night off Duke of York’s Islands in squally weather, Vancouver set a course

toward Point Nesbitt at the southern tip of Zarembo Island -- 4:00 a.m. September 7, 1793

They passed beside a group of low rocks in the middle of the narrow channel

these were very dangerous as most could be seen only at low tide

as Vancouver sailed along the passage between the Duke of York’s Islands and “Bushy Island”

an ebb tide helped them reach a spacious branch leading south and south-west about 3:00 p.m.

they were encouraged by the strong ebb tide that a passage to the ocean would be found

although they would have to pass through dangerous and intricate waters

both ships anchored that night about four miles beyond “Point Colpoys” off (Kosclusko Island)

During the day a few Indians had visited the ships

by evening their numbers had increased to six or seven canoes of very orderly natives

when informed it was time to rest they immediately retired to the shore where they remained

VANCOUVER SHIPS ARE VISITED BY A GROUP OF MOSTLY FEMALE INDIANS

Indians, this time mostly women, visited the ships early in the morning -- September 8, 1793

they managed two or three midsized canoes expertly singing as they approached

most of the grown women wore large lip ornaments

but as they were all ages it was possible to see the progress of several stages of this deformity

infants had a small slit in the center of the lower lip and brass or copper wire was inserted

as this corroded the flesh was consumed increasing the opening

until a piece of wood was inserted in the lip of young girls

judging from their appearance this was excruciatingly painful for a long time

adult women displayed an extended lower lip as an obvious deformity

Lack of wind forced the ships to remain at anchor providing an opportunity to purchase a large supply

of very good salmon and a few otter pelts in exchange for spoons, blue cloth, tin kettles and trinkets

most of the trade was conducted very capably by the women

With the arrival of a fresh breeze Vancouver set a course to the west away from the continental shore

however, the rocky channel and threatening weather forced them to search for safe anchorage

this was found and “Point Baker” on the northern shore of Prince of Wales Island

was named after the *Discovery’s* Lieutenant Joseph Baker

that night a violent storm hit and lasted all night

but both ships remained sheltered from the fury and its potential destructive power

Vancouver named his anchorage “Port Protection”

on the northwest coast of Prince of Wales Island in Russian-American (Alaska) waters

Vancouver decided to remain at anchor here and send out the boat expeditions

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER VISITS POINT BAKER

After breakfast Captain Vancouver, Master Whidbey and Lieutenant Johnstone rowed

out to Point Baker on Prince of Wales Island to investigate the land

they had been prevented by bad weather from previously visualizing -- September 9, 1793

here the inlet seemed to be divided into three branches

they had arrived through the first passage

the second took a northerly direction through very broken country

the third evidently communicated with the ocean in a south-southwest direction

Vancouver decided to remain in Port Protectionand send out two boat expeditions

VANCOUVER SENDS OUT TWO BOAT EXPEDITIONS

Master Joseph Whidbey in the cutter with Lieutenant Spelman Swaine in the launch

took two week’s provisions to complete the survey of the continental shore -- September 10, 1793

they were to investigate the western shore from where Lieutenant Johnstone had stopped

until he reached the Pacific Ocean

Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie took *Discovery’s* small cutter

with instruction to begin their investigation of the northern channel

JOHNSTONE AND BARRIE RETURN TO THE SHIPS

After one night away Lieutenant James Johnstone and Midshipman Robert Barrie

returned to the ships -- September 11, 1793

they had surveyed the supposed continental shore

and found it took an irregular course to the southeast

to a place Vancouver named “Point Barrie”

Johnstone decided it was prudent to move away from the rocks and conclude his survey

“Conclusion Island” was the name given to his final location before he returned to the *Discovery*

Gale force winds with squalls and a great deal of rain lasted through the night

and continued until [September 15, 1793]

JOSEPH WHIDBEY AND SPELMAN SWAIN RETURN TO THE SHIPS

Captain Vancouver, Lieutenant Peter Puget and the crews of the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

had become increasingly concerned regarding the safety of their last boat expedition

*Discovery’s* cutter and launch came into view -- afternoon September 20, 1793

Whidbey reported that after leaving the ships they had made for Conclusion Island [September 7]

and began their examination to the south when the launch struck a rock and lost her rudder

they were forced to steer with an oar which drastically slowed their progress

passing by scattered rocks and inlets [September 11]

they found an entrance leading northwest into Kuiu Island

this formed an extremely good harbor which Vancouver named “Port Beauclerc”

nine miles further on they reached “Point Amelius” in the northeast point of the bay

here a clear passage to the ocean was seen -- this was divided by an island at the entrance

which Vancouver named “Warren’s Island” (today’s Warren Island)

named after British Captain Sir John Borlase Warren

violent weather forced the boat expedition to remain in the bay [September 12-15] although the wind was so strong a man could not stand without hold a rock or tree

during this time some repairs were made to the launch’s rudder

with a break in the weather the boat expedition members turned south [September 15]

after nearly three miles the reached “Point St. Alban’s” (Point St. Alban)

they were prevented from landing by violent surf and rocks that constantly threatened them

Whidbey decided to move outside of the rocks and proceed around Point St. Albans

rocks made landing impossible until after about six miles where the rocks terminated

camp could made on the shore of a canal named “Affleck’s Canal” (Affleck Canal)

Whidbey sailed south along Affleck Canal [September 16]

its western shore had three large bays which were all examined

during the foggy and unpleasant day

although the rain stopped the weather remained very hazy and unfavorable [September 17]

as they proceeded among the islands of the Alexander Archipelago in a southerly direction

fog obscured their vision when suddenly they were hit by a very heavy rolling swell

coming from the west which indicated the ocean was very near

they stopped from 8:00 a.m. to 2:00 p.m. waiting for the fog to lift

giving up they retired to a sheltered cove about a mile to the north

fog kept the members of Whidbey’s boat expedition in the cove until [7:00 a.m. September 18]]

when the weather cleared up somewhat they returned to the point of land

and found it to be a conspicuous promontory

having concluded their survey of this portion of the Alexander Archipelago

Master Joseph Whidbey made his way back to the ships

they stopped for the night in a cove where heavy swells during the night forced them

to make the utmost exertion to prevent the boats from being dashed against the rocks

rough water forced the boat expedition to remain in the cove until [10:00 a.m. September 19]

with great difficulty they managed to escape from the surrounding rocks and breakers

continuing through the difficult weather Master Joseph Whidbey in the cutter

with Lieutenant Spelman Swaine and their expedition

returned to the *Discovery* and *Chatham* in Port Protection[afternoon September 20]

VANCOUVER’S EXTENSIVE SUMMER SURVEY COMES TO AN END

Members of Vancouver’s expedition had accomplished the principal object of their assignment

harsh weather, hazardous sailing conditions and the advance of the season

forced Vancouver to leave the waters of Russian-America (Alaska)

although he was unsatisfied with vast expanse of space left to the examined

even so, Chatham’s Sound and Fitzhugh’s Sound to the east of the Queen Charlotte Islands

(Haida Gwaii) had been surveyed

continental shore from “Point Staniforth” and the entrance to “Gardner’s Canal”

to “Desolation Sound” the northern extend of “New Georgia”

was investigated and named “New Hanover”

“The Duke of Clarence’s Strait” bounded on the east by “Duke of York’s Islands”

and part of the continent around Cape Caamano and the “Isle de Gravina” was visited

the western shore, although not visited, was believed to be broken islands

this was named “The Prince of Wales’s Archipelago” and the adjacent continent

was identified as “New Cornwall”

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LIEUTENANT PETER PUGET SAIL FOR NOOTKA SOUND

At a place named “Cape Decision” by Captain Vancouver at the southern tip of Kuiu Island

the expedition concluded for the season -- September 21, 1793

British Captain George Vancouver had stopped his exploration of North Pacific waters

*Discovery* and *Chatham* reached Sitka, Russian-America (Alaska) as winter storms were brewing

these storms convinced Vancouver to sail to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii)

by way of Nootka Sound where he would receive further instructions

from the British government

SPAIN’S SCIENTIFIC EXPEDITION CONCLUDES THEIR INVESTIGATIONS

After their stay in Tonga Captain Alejandro Malaspina’s corvette *Descubierta*

andJose de Bustamante y Guerra’s corvette *Atrevida* sailed to Peru

then around Cape Horn and on to Spain

Spain’s scientific expedition arrived in Cadiz

after a voyage of over four years -- September 21, 1793

Malaspina’s report was very large -- seven volumes with seventy maps and seventy other illustrations

but this report was never published because after his return to Spain

Malaspina became involved in a conspiracy to overthrow

Spanish Prime Minister Manuel de Godoy

Captain Alejandro Malaspina was thrown in jail by the Prime Minister

and the captain’s report and supporters were scattered

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER’S EXPEDITION ARRIVES AT NOOTKA SOUND

Captain Vancouver’s supply ship *Daedalus* under the command of Lieutenant James Hanson

had returned and waited at Nootka Sound

for the arrival of *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- September 1793

Vancouver called on Nootka Sound for the last time -- October 1793

there he learned that the Spanish garrison had received no instructions

regarding the abandonment of the colony

he also learned there had been no answer from the British government regarding his dispatches

relating to the resolution of the Nootka dispute

Vancouver waited vainly for six weeks

as no new orders were received, *Discovery, Chatham* and *Daedalus* sailed for California

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE RETURNS TO FORT CHIPEWYAN

Mackenzie spent the winter of 1793-1794 at Fort Chipewyan

he had traveled more than 2,300 miles across the North America wilderness

averaging more than thirty-six miles a day without losing anyone in his group -- or his dog

more than a decade before the Americans Lewis and Clark undertook a similar effort

Mackenzie spent the (winter) at Fort Chipewyan

where he turned his attention and energies to trapping

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER ARRIVES AT MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Captain George Vancouver sailed the Discovery from Nootka Sound

and into the Spanish harbor at Monterey, California

accompanied by Lieutenant Peter Puget with the *Chatham* and Lieutenant James Hanson

in command of the supply ship *Daedalus* -- December 1793

Captain Vancouver took this opportunity to visit with his good friend

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra and to survey the southern California coast

Vancouver learned from Spanish officials that the European powers were at war with France

although France was actively involved in the French Revolution,

war had been declared against Great Britain and the Dutch Republic [1793-1802]

Spain allied herself with Great Britain putting the Nootka Sound conflict in an odd position

Vancouver set out on his third (and last) visit to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) -- winter 1793-1794

NOOTKA SOUND CLAIMS CONVENTION IN SIGNED IN MADRID, SPAIN

“Third Nootka Convention” was signed -- January 11, 1794

this third treaty signed by Kingdom of Spain and the Kingdom of Great Britain

to resolve the Nootka dispute triggered by the seizure of British ships

by Spanish Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza at Nootka Sound on Vancouver Island

was also known as the “Convention for the Mutual Abandonment of Nootka”

there had been two previous attempts to resolve the Nootka Sound Crisis:

•Nootka Sound Convention, known as the Nootka Agreement,

had been signed [October 28, 1790];

•Second Nootka Sound Convention, known as the Nootka Claims Convention,

had been signed [February 12, 1793]

Terms of the third convention called for mutual abandonment of Nootka Sound:

•all buildings and districts of land once owned by British subjects shall be returned to Britain;

•a British official would unfurl the British flag over the returned land;

•after these formalities were completed the officials of the two Crowns

would withdraw their people from the port of Nootka Sound;

•subjects of both nations would be free to visit the port whenever they wished

and construct temporary buildings for use during their stay;

•neither Spain nor Great Britain could form any permanent establishment at Nootka Sound

nor could they claim any right of sovereignty to the exclusion of the other;

•both nations pledged to mutually aid each other to deny access to any other nation

that might attempt to establish sovereignty over Nootka Sound

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEAVES THE SANDWICH ISLANDS FOR ONE LAST TIME

After completing his survey of Southern California waters Captain Vancouver

sailed to the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) to meet his supply ship *Daedalus*

bringing supplies from New South Wales, Australia -- January 1794

Vancouver spent three months on Kealakekua Bay on the Kona Coast of the big island of Hawaii

making repairs to the *Discovery* and *Chatham* and their boats

Vancouver used his time to reestablish his alliance with Hawaiian leader King Kamehameha

who had been equipping his army with modern muskets and cannons

and training his men in their use under the direction of British sailor John Young

Vancouver’s assistance to the king was particularly helpful

skilled British craftsmen and their tools were loaned to Kamehameha

who used them to build an armed thirty-six-foot vessel, the *Britannia*

(this ship and its armaments aided Kamehameha in winning the decisive battle

to conquer Oahu --the last Hawaiian island to come under his control [spring 1794])

HAWAIIAN VOLCANO MAUNA LOA IS SUCCESSFULLY CLIMBED

Lieutenant Joseph Baker accompanied Dr. Archibald Menzies and Midshipman George McKenzie

along with one other man whose name was not recorded made the first recorded ascent

of Mauna Loa the highest of the five volcanoes on the Big Island of Hawaii

they summated the 13,679-foot mountain -- February 16, 1794

using a barometer they measured its height (within fifty feet of today’s accepted height)

KING KAMEHAMEHA PROCLAIMS HIS LOYALTY TO GREAT BRITAIN

Hawaiian King Kamehameha made a formal proclamation declaring to Captain George Vancouver

that his people were *“Tanata no Britanee”* (“People of Britain”) -- February 25, 1794

exactly what Kamehameha meant was not be entirely clear

since Great Britain exerted no sovereignty over the islands during his reign as king

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* SAIL FROM THE SANDWICH ISLANDS FOR THE FINAL TIME

After a very relaxing winter, Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget

guided their ships out to sea -- March 15, 1794

and made directly to (Cook Inlet) in Russian-American (Alaska) waters

this was the northern limit of his survey

SPANISH COMMANDANT JUAN DE LA BODEGA Y QUADRA DIES SUDDENLY

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra for years had suffered from chronic headaches

he had requested a leave of absence from his duties in Monterey, California to restore his health

Quadra moved to Guadalajara, New Spain (Mexico) where he suffered a brain hemorrhage

he traveled to Mexico City where he had a seizure and died (probably of a brain tumor)

at age forty-nine -- March 26, 1794

Quadra’s successor as commissioner to implement 1794 Third Nootka Convention

was Commandant of Acapulco Brigadier General Jose Manuel de Alava

(today Cape Alava commemorates his name)

HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY RECOGNIZED DAVID THOMPSON’S SKILL AS A SURVEYOR

In recognition of his map making skills exhibited in mapping a route

from Cumberland House on the Saskatchewan River to Lake Athabasca

Hudson’s Bay Company promoted David Thompson to the position of surveyor -- 1794

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE DECIDES TO LEAVE FORT CHIPEWYAN

Mackenzie’s long winter at Fort Chipewyan took its toll -- he decided to return to civilization

he was as an appointed agent at Montreal by the North West Company -- spring 1794

NORTH WEST COMPANY BUILDS FORT AUGUSTA (ALBERTA) CANADA

North West Company leader Simon McTavish pushed field operations further toward the Pacific

he assigned his nephew Duncan McGillivray to open a trading post about a mile upstream

from where the Sturgeon River enters the Saskatchewan River (in today’s Alberta, Canada)

John McDonald of Garth worked for the North West Company as a clerk

his early fur trade years were spent principally on the Saskatchewan River he was sent by Duncan McGillivray to build Fort Augusta which became an important stop

on the main North West Company overland brigade route -- 1794 [until 1795]

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* REACH THE WATERS OF THE NORTH PACIFIC

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget reached the North Pacific coast

of Russian-America where they surveyed the unexamined coastline southwards

beginning from what was referred to as Cook River in honor of British Captain James Cook

to where Vancouver had stopped during the previous year’s effort

Vancouver established his base of operation at Cook River

which was renamed “Cook Inlet” (today’s Anchorage, Alaska)

he began his survey -- late April 1794

Vancouver’s men visited the very heart of Russian-America

and traded with Russian settlements and natives alike

Captain Vancouver himself reached the head of “Knik Arm”

Master Joseph Whidbey reached the head of “Turnagain Arm”

ALEXANDER BARANOV SEEKS A CONFERENCE WITH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER

Alexander Baranov, the head of the Russian trading operations in Russian-America

repeatedly asked Captain George Vancouver for a conference -- 1794

but the British captain refused out of concern such a meeting would further complicate

relations between Great Britain and Spain -- especially regarding Nootka Sound Vancouver arranged his sailing schedule to avoid the Russian trade leader

(Baranov, aware of the British slight, would later retaliate by expanding the Russian area of trade)

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER SURVEYS PRINCE WILLIAM SOUND

Vancouver turned his attention from surveying the Cook Inlet region

he sailed around the Kenai Peninsula to chart Prince William Sound -- end of May

Lieutenant James Johnstone explored from “Bligh Island” to the east and south

Master Joseph Whidbey surveyed the western half to Bligh Island as far as Valdez Arm

first explored by Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo [1790]

Vancouver’s men once again conducted trade with both the natives and the Russians

Captain Vancouver pressed his expedition on toward the east

freezing weather killed their store of live turtles that had been kept for meat

and Dr. Archibald Menzies’ quarterdeck greenhouse froze killing all of his plant specimens

While Captain Vancouver named many features in (today’s Alaska) waters,

Lieutenant Peter Puget named many notable places in Prince William Sound

after members of his family

LIEUTENANT WILLIAM BROUGHTON ARRIVES IN LONDON

Lieutenant William Broughton had traveled across New Spain (Mexico) and the Atlantic Ocean

carrying dispatches from Captain George Vancouver and Vancouver’s request

for further orders in negotiating a settlement with the Spanish regarding Nootka Sound

Broughton reached London -- July 1793

he was informed the entire matter had been taken out of Vancouver’s hands

as the issue had been settled by the British and Spanish foreign offices

another person would be dispatched from London [November 11, 1794]

to conclude negotiations regarding the Nootka affair

VANCOUVER TURNS HIS ATTENTION TO (ALASKA’S CHICHAGOF ISLAND)

Sailing south from Prince William Sound Captain Vancouver

continued to minutely explore the (Alaskan) waters -- July 1794

Vancouver’s *Discovery* and Lieutenant Peter Puget’s *Chatham* sailed to (Chichagof Island)

*Discovery* and the armed tender *Chatham* anchored at what Vancouver named “Port Althorp”

on the northwest coast of (Chichagof Island) -- July 9, 1794

Master Joseph Whidbey was dispatched to the northeast with a boat expedition

to survey what he named “Favorite Channel” (north of today’s Juneau, Alaska)

despite constant rain and more than one hostile encounter with a large group of Tlingit Indians,

Whidbey was able to explore “Lynn Canal” (to the vicinity of today’s Haines, Alaska)

where he reached heads of (Chilkat Inlet) and (Chilkoot Inlet)

he followed the length of the west coast (of what Vancouver later named “Admiralty Island”)

rounding its southern point to spend a night near (“Point Townshend”) on its southeast coast

Tlingit Indians attacked and were defeated with loss of two of Whidbey’s men wounded

this was the first attack to occur on the cruise

“Betton Island” was named in honor of one of the wounded men

JOSEPH WHIDBEY RETURNS TO *DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM*

Master Joseph Whidbey returned from his survey of the “Favorite Channel” region

in the vicinity of (today’s Juneau, Alaska) -- July 27, 1794

After Whidbey’s return preparations were undertaken

to move the base of operation to a new anchorage

VANCOUVER ESTABLISHES HIS LAST BASE OF OPERATIONS

Port Althorp was left behind as *Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed south along the west coast

of (Chichagof Island) to (Baranof Island) which was reached -- August 2, 1794

Vancouver named a cove on southern tip of (Baranof Island) “Port Conclusion”

Two boat parties were dispatched from Port Conclusion -- August 3

Lieutenant James Johnstone charted the west, north and east coasts of (Kuiu Island)

and the south and east shore of (Kupreanof Island)

Master Joseph Whidbey proceeded up “Stephens Passage” in the Alexander Archipelago

he completed the survey of the east coast of “Admiralty Island”

including “Seymour Canal” and “Glass Peninsula” and the continental shore opposite

Whidbey investigated the channel to the east of (Kupreanof Island)

before being stopped by shoals (in the vicinity of today’s Petersburg, Alaska)

Whidbey and Johnstone met each other off the northeast coast of (Kupreanof Island)

Master Joseph Whidbey noted: **“…that it is not possible for language to describe the joy that was manifested in every countenance on thus meeting their comrades and fellow adventurers, by which happy circumstance, a principal object of the voyage was brought to a conclusion.”**[[128]](#footnote-128)

NO CHANGE HAS TAKEN PLACE REGARDING THE STATUS OF NOOTKA SOUND

Spain continued to maintain its Nootka Sound garrison at Fort San Miguel

and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca although the future of that colony

and the colony located at Bahia de Nunez Gaona(Neah Bay) remained in doubt

Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo entered Nootka Sound on *Princesa* -- August 14, 1794

he brought word that Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra had died [March 26]

Lieutenant Fidalgo was accompanied by Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava

who was ordered to deliver Fort San Miguel and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca

to British Captain George Vancouver

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER CONCLUDES HIS DETAILED COASTAL SURVEY

Master Joseph Whidbey and Lieutenant James Johnstone returned to Port Conclusion

with their supplies completely exhausted -- August 19, 1794

According to the diaries of several officers, they felt great joy with the completion of their survey

realizing they could now return home

Captain Vancouver further noted: **“In order that the valuable crews of both vessels on whom great hardships had fallen, and who had uniformly encountered their difficulties with unremitting exertion, might celebrate the day, that had thus terminated their labours in these regions; they were served with such additional allowance of grog as was fully sufficient to answer every purpose of festivity on the occasion.”**[[129]](#footnote-129)

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* SAIL FROM RUSSIAN-AMERICAN (ALASKA) WATERS

Within a few days of the return of Whidbey and Johnstone, Vancouver left Port Conclusion

unfortunately, as they set out for Nootka Sound British sailor Isaac Wooden

was lost in a boating accident off (Cape Ommaney) -- one of the few to die on the expedition

Vancouver named these treacherous rocks “Wooden Rocks” in his memory

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget

reached Nootka Sound -- September 1, 1794

Vancouver was to negotiate an end to the Nootka Sound Crisis

Spanish Brigadier General Jose Alava, now the Commandant of Nootka Sound

had arrived about two weeks before

Vancouver found General Alava to be cooperative and friendly

but no instructions had arrived for Vancouver to resolve the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis

thus neither Vancouver nor Alava knew how to properly conclude the Nootka affair

Vancouver and his men were saddened to learn

that Spanish Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra had suddenly died

Vancouver noted in his journal: **“The death of our highly valuable and much esteemed friend Senr** (sic) **Quadra, who in the month of March had died at St. Blas, universally lamaneted.** (sic) **Having endeavoured, on a former occasion, to point out the degree of admiration and respect with which the conduct of Sen’r Quadra toward our little community had impressed us during his life, I cannot refrain, now that he is no more, from rendering that justice to his memory to which it is so amply intitled,** (sic) **by stating, that the unexpected melancholey** (sic) **event of his decease operated on the minds of us all, in a way more easily to be imagined than described: and whilst it excited our most grateful acknowledgements, it produced the deepest regret for the loss of a character so amiable, and so truly ornamental to civil society.”**[[130]](#footnote-130)

BOTH CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND GENERAL ALAVA REMAIN ON FRIENDLY TERMS

Compatible relations were established

Vancouver and Alava investigated a branch of Nootka Sound they named “Tiupana Arm”

(present-day Tlupana Inlet) -- September 27, 1794

both men attended a large celebration in Maquinna’s village of Tahsheis

*Discovery* and *Chatham* and their crews were anxious to set sail

both Vancouver and Alava decided to journey to Monterey, California

where they hoped instructions were awaiting them

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER LEAVES NOOTKA SOUND FOR THE LAST TIME

Captain George Vancouver and Lieutenant Peter Puget sailed the *Discovery* and *Chatham*

out of Nootka Sound bound for Monterey, California -- October 6, 1794

Vancouver’s supply ship, *Daedelus*, was sent back to England accompanied by a troublesome sailor

Thomas Pitt, fifteen years old when he first sailed with Vancouver, had been disciplined

for numerous infractions -- Vancouver dismissed him in disgrace

(Pitt, the cousin Prime Minister William Pitt [the Younger]

later became Thomas Pitt, 2nd Baron Camelford

his dismissal by Vancouver later had a major impact on the later life of Vancouver)

SPANISH COMMANDER OF NOOTKA SOUND ARRIVES IN MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

Commandant of Fort San Miguel and the colony of Santa Cruz de Nuca Brigadier General Jose Alava

arrived in Monterey, California on the Spanish corvette *Princesa*

sailing under the command of Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo -- October 15, 1794

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LIEUTENANT PUGET ARRIVE IN MONTERY, CALIFORNIA

Captain Vancouver and Lieutenant Puget reached Monterey, California

with the *Discovery* and *Chatham* -- November 6, 1794

there they joined Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava

and learned there were still no instructions for Vancouver

(Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo had already sailed the *Princesa*

for San Blas, New Spain [Mexico])

Vancouver and Alava waited for documents to arrive from their governments

Vancouver used the time to recondition his ships for the long voyage back to London

UNITED STATES AND GREAT BRITAIN SIGN A TREATY TO RESOLVE ONGOING ISSUES

Questions regarding outstanding issues between the two countries left by the [1783] Treaty of Paris

that had ended the American Revolution were addressed in a treaty known by several names:

Treaty of Amity, Commerce, and Navigation, Between His Britannic Majesty and The United

States of America -- more commonly known as the Jay Treaty; and also as Jay’s Treaty,

the British Treaty and the Treaty of London of 1794

in the United States it was named after the chief American negotiator John Jay

who was the head of the Federalist Party that believed in a strong federal government

but many of the terms of the agreement were introduced

by Secretary of State Alexander Hamilton

and were supported by President George Washington

of immediate concern was the establishment of the international boundary

between the United States and Canada in the Great Lakes region

What became known as the Jay Treaty in the United States was signed -- November 18, 1794

it called for arbitration to settle the U.S.-Canadian border

this was one the first times that arbitration had been used for diplomatic purposes

Jay Treaty eventually called for the removal of British troops from forts ceded to the United States

at the end of the Revolutionary War

and required that British trading posts operating in American territory be closed

*DISCOVERY* AND *CHATHAM* BEGIN THEIR JOURNEY BACK TO ENGLAND

(Although negotiations regarding the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis

had been concluded in Europe this was unknown to Captain George Vancouver)

*Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed out of Monterey, California bound for London -- December 2, 1794

by way of Cape Horn thus circumnavigating the globe

OUTSIDERS IMPACT THE ONGOING CIVIL WAR IN THE SANDWICH ISLANDS (HAWAII)

(American Captain John Kendrick had sailed the *Lady Washington* to Macau, China [1792]

where finding buyers for his furs proved to be a very difficult task

he had sailed several times between the Sandwich Islands (Hawaii) and Clayoquot Sound [1793]

trading with the *Lady Washington* apparently for himself in his unhurried fashion[1793-1794]

he had a brief reunion with his son who now commanded the Spanish ship *Aranzazu*)

China bound, from Clayoquot Sound Captain John Kendrick reached Honolulu -- December 3, 1794

two British vessels were in Karakakooa Bay:

•*Jackal* under Captain William Brown;

•*Prince Lee Boo* under a Captain Robert Gordon

Civil war had gripped the island of Oahu as Hawaiian tribes fought for control

when the island of Oahu was invaded by Kauai Island Chief Keokulani

Chief Kalanikupule of Oahu asked Captain Brown for assistance in defending his island

from the invading forces of his uncle

Captain Brown provided support and was joined by the first mate of the *Prince Lee Boo*

Captain Kendrick also probably sent some of his men to help Chief Kalanikupule

With the help of muskets fired by the sailors, Chief Kalanikupule drove Chief Keokulani

to hills above Honolulu and into a ravine

Chief Keokulani tried to escape but Brown’s and Kendrick’s men

saw his scarlet and yellow feather cloak and fired from their ships to reveal his location

Oahu warriors killed Keokulani along with his wives and chiefs

AMERICAN CAPTAIN JOHN KENDRICK IS KILLED

While in Karakakoa Bay Captain John Kendrick fired a thirteen-gun salute to the British ship *Jackal*

in celebration of their part in winning the victory for Oahu Chief Kalanikupule -- 10:00 a.m. *Jackal* answered with a return salute -- December 12, 1794

one *Jackal’s* cannons was accidently loaded with grapeshot

which pierced the side of the *Lady Washington*, wounded several of the crew,

and removed Kendrick’s head as he sat at his table

Kendrick died from a round fired as a British salute in his honor

Captain Kendrick’s body and the bodies of his shipmates were taken ashore and buried on the beach

in a hidden cove of palm trees

VANCOUVER SAILS FROM MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA BOUND FOR ENGLAND

Although Captain George Vancouver had orders to avoid Spanish possessions in the Pacific Ocean

he also had orders to survey as much of the coast as possible

Vancouver’s expedition reached the Tres Maria Islands off the coast of New Spain (Mexico)

there they stopped for provisions -- December 17, 1794

and to allow Dr. Archibald Menzies to study the plant life

Christmas was spent at sea

STEPS ARE TAKEN TO RESOLVE THE LONG-STANDING NOOTKA SOUND CRISIS

Great Britain and Spain had long attempted to resolve the [1790] Nootka Sound Crisis

which centered around Spanish Commandant Francisco de Eliza

confiscating British vessels and land in Nootka Sound [1790]

Newly-named Commissioner Lieutenant Thomas Pierce of the British Royal Marines

was assigned to implement the “Convention for the Mutual Abandonment of Nootka

this was the third “Nootka Sound Claims Convention”

Commissioner Pierce replaced Captain George Vancouver as the diplomat responsible

Commissioner Pierce reached San Blas, New Spain (Mexico)

where he met with Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo

together the sailed north on the Spanish ship *Activa* to Monterey, California -- January 1795

accompanied by the small armed launch *San Carlos*

In Monterey Spanish Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo and British Commissioner Pierce

picked up Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava who had replaced Spanish Commissioner

Commandant Juan Francisco de la Bodega y Quadra as Spain’s representative

in implementing the Nootka Sound Claims Convention

COLUMBIA RIVER MYTHS LEADS TO MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT NORTH AMERICA

Samuel Hearne had advanced the idea of a Continental Divide [1773]

that is, a range of mountains beyond which all rivers ran to the west

Following this idea, Aaron Arrowsmith, a London mapmaker,

drew on his maps of North America a single ridge of western mountains

his [1790] map showed these mountains extending south only to 48º north latitude

with the “River Oregan” flowing west

this suggested an easy passage to the coast from the headwaters of the Mississippi River

Robert Gray’s discovery of the Columbia River [1792]

demonstrated the Columbia River is in the same latitude as the upper Missouri River

perhaps a portage between the two river would be possible

this led Americans to believe they were on the verge of discovering a “Passage to India”

(search for this passage motivated Thomas Jefferson to send Lewis and Clark [1804-1806])

Mapmaker Aaron Arrowsmith’s map -- 1795

showed a single ridge of mountains extending to about 49º north latitude

(his [1798] map extended the Stony Mountains [or Rocky Mountains] south to about 38º north

he noted the mountains were only 3,520 feet high [a ridiculous figure acquired from nowhere]

and gave credence to the belief they would not be a formidable barrier

an updated version of Arrowsmith’s map [circa 1800]

shows the “R. Oregan” and “R. Columbia”

these were connected with a dotted line to the other side of the single mountain range which suggested an eastern connection through the mountains)

REPRESENATIVES OF GREAT BRITAIN AND SPAIN ARRIVE AT NOOTKA SOUND

British and Spanish government commissioners had conferred in Europe

to resolve the issues remaining regarding the Third Nootka Convention

where they had agreed on mutual abandonment of Nootka Sound

Spanish Commissioner Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava

and British representative Lieutenant Thomas Pierce met formally

at the tiny piece of land where John Meares had built his schooner *Northwest America*

on the north side of Friendly Cove in Nootka Sound -- March 5, 1795

this time the instructions to resolve the Nootka Sound Controversy were complete

British Commissioner Thomas Pierce hoisted the British flag

over John Meares’ land claim as a token gesture of taking possession

NOOTKA SOUND IS VACATED BY THE SPANISH GOVERNMENT

Two papers written to preserve the honor of the signers of the various Nootka Agreements

were signed and exchanged by British Royal Marines Commissioner Lieutenant Thomas Pierce

and Spanish Commandant Brigadier General Jose Alava **--** March 28, 1795

Nootka Sound Claims Convention [1794] required the Spanish military post be destroyed

Spanish Brigadier General Jose Manuel Alava, Commandant of Santa Cruz de Nuca

gave the orders and Spanish sailors dismantled the little post of Fort San Miguel

all the guns were placed aboard the Spanish ships *Activa* and the *San Carlos*

they also took all of the moveable property from the second Spanish colony

at Santa Cruz de Nuca (Neah Bay)

When the British and Spanish commissioners’ ships departed,

Nootka Sound was left to the native people who had lived there for thousands of years

of course, all European visitors had completely disregarded native territorial claims

but Chief Maquinna of the Mowachat band of the Nu-Cha-Nulth people

was far from being an ignorant savage, he was a shrewd and astute leader of his people

he witnessed the talks which took place between the Spanish and English representatives

(although Maquinna appeared to favor the Spanish in the dispute, his statue is today

included with other early leaders who grace Victoria’s Legislative Buildings)

CAPATAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS HOMEWARD VOYAGE

Only Spanish ports existed in the Pacific Ocean

lack of places to provision his ships led to the men beginning to suffer from scurvy

also, necessity required some refitting of *Discovery* and *Chatham* be undertaken

Vancouver put in at Valparaiso in the Viceroyalty of Peru (today’s Chile) -- March 35, 1795

there for five weeks repairs were undertaken with the help of the Spanish

*Discovery* and *Chatham* sailed from Valparaiso -- May 5, 1795

Vancouver had intended to survey of the coast of Peru but this became impractical

with the onset of the Southern Hemisphere’s winter and the badly worn condition of the ships passage around Cape Horn would be hazardous

NORTH WEST COMPANY BUILDS FORT AUGUSTUS

Nor’Wester Angus Shaw established Fort Augustus on the bank of the Saskatchewan River

about a mile upstream from the confluence of the North Saskatchewan River

(near present day Edmonton, Alberta) -- 1795

this was an attempt to outdistance its Hudson’s Bay Company competition

and tap a new source for pelts

NORTH WEST COMPANY POSTS WERE USUALLY SIMILARILY CONSTRUCTED

Buildings at these posts were crude

squared timber walls were chinked with mud

whitewashed on the exterior with white mud

and, perhaps, plastered with mud on the interior

coniferous bark was the usual roofing material

occasionally substituted by mud and earth, or turf

fireplaces had stone fire-boxes

and wattle-and-daub (woven sticks and mud) chimneys

windows were covered with parchment paper -- not glass

EXCLUSIVE NORTH WEST COMPANY CLUB PROVIDES LEADERSHIP TO THE COMPANY

Beaver Club, located on Beaver Hall Hill in Montreal, was begun -- spring 1795

no North West Company partner was eligible for membership

unless he had spent at least one winter in the wilderness

men who had lived hardily through the rough life as a company “wintering partner”

could be relied upon to keep the Beaver Club from stagnating

members met each night to eat and drink and to toast the British King and each other

and all the lads of the North collectively and individually

Spring was a time of great joy in Montreal

for in spring the brigades came in with their furs

as April turned into May, hilarity broke out of the confining walls of the Beaver Club

and resounded through the streets and taverns of Montreal

and along the banks of the St. Lawrence River

boisterous scenes were enacted in the candle-lit banquet room of the Beaver Club

where brave and manly Scots sat wearing gold-braided uniforms,

eating from silver serving plates and drinking from silver goblets,

all engraved with the Club’s crest -- a beaver

and the motto: *Fortitude in Distress*

revelers danced the Highland sword-dance

At length the concluding ceremony was held

as a tribute to the voyageurs lordly Nor’Westers and their guests knelt on the floor

with tongs, pokers, canes, or whatever would serve the purpose,

as they imitated the canoeman’s swift, rhythmic strokes,

while they sang in rousing chorus one of the favorite paddle-songs**[[131]](#footnote-131)**

NORTH WEST COMPANY BRIGADES ARRIVE AT FORT WILLIAM

When canoe brigades arrived at Fort William on Lake Superior

even wilder scenes than those of the Beaver Club were enacted

Nor’Westers did not own Montreal -- but Fort William was theirs

Fort William possessed a huge banquet hall where two hundred men could feast at their ease

portraits of King George III and British hero Admiral Lord Horatio Nelson adorned the walls

French chefs paid lordly salaries were convinced to risk their life and culinary reputation

to prepare venison steaks and buffalo tongues to a king’s taste

fine wines had been carried over the long route from England to provide a glow of welcome

as casks were emptied allowing Nor’Westers who were able to sit astride them

to shout and sing

this would be the only civilization “wintering partners” may ever enjoy

and one of the few opportunities to speak with other white men

PREPARING TO RETURN WEST NORTH WEST COMPANY HELD ANNUAL BUFFALO HUNTS

Voyageurs, trappers and hunters weapons were overhauled by the company gun smith

Voyageurs wore little bells and jingling bits of metal to adorn his attire

Trappers garments were cut and fashioned -- probably by the trapper’s Indian wife

he must have his moccasins colorfully beaded or worked with brightly dyed quills

leggings and jacket must be fringed

trappers wore wonderful gloves for handling traps and avoiding the human scent

Voyageurs and trappers could have a bright sash, a beaded cap, as well as a fur cap for cold weather

fur pouches for powder and shot

and perhaps a beaded bear’s or swan’s foot pouch for his tobacco

Sadly, hunters were forced to give up the little bells and jingling bits of metal

enjoyed by the voyageurs as the sound would warn their prey of being stalked

Nor’Westers hunted huge buffalo for pemmican and dried meat to use in returning west

they also needed skins for clothing and for bedding, for making tents, saddles and bull-boats

bone was used to supplement the trapper’s steel weapons

sinew sometimes served as thread or cord

CAPTAIN VANCOUVER AND LIEUTENANT PUGET REACH ST. HELENA ISLAND

*Discovery* and *Chatham* put in at the island of St. Helena in the South Atlantic Ocean -- July 2, 1795

members of the crew learned that Great Britain was at war with Jamaica

(Second Maroon War would be an eight-month conflict)

Vancouver’s battered ships were nearly the weakest vessels in the Atlantic Ocean

even so he managed to capture a Dutch East India merchant ship by surprise

this event required Vancouver to recruit additional crewmen

from among the non-sailors on his ship

during a storm he ordered Dr. Archibald Menzies’ servant aloft to serve as a lookout

this left Menzies’ plants untended

many plant specimens had suffered damage and some died

an angry Dr. Menzies was placed under arrest by Vancouver for “insolence and contempt”

VANCOUVER CONTINUES HIS HOMEWARD VOYAGE

In the vicinity of the Cape Verde Islands located off the North Africa coast in the Atlantic Ocean

*Discovery* caught up with a British convoy escorted by HMS *Sceptre*

*Discovery* arrived in relative safety at Shannon, Ireland as part of this British fleet

At Shannon Vancouver departed from his ship to report to the British Admiralty in London

AMERICAN GOVERNMENT SIGNS IT FIRST TREATY WITH THE INIANS

When the architects of the American government created the U.S. Constitution,

they clearly recognized that treaties along with the Constitution itself

are the supreme law of the land

Indian people and Indian country loomed as a large threat that challenged national growth President Washington’s Administration negotiated its first Indian Treaty -- August 3, 1795

with seven northern tribes: Shawnee, Miami, Ottawa, Chippewa, Iroquois, Sauk and Fox

following the natives’ loss at the Battle of Fallen Timbers a year earlier

Washington’s government dealt with Indians as foreign nations like Great Britain and France

rather than as domestic subjects

primary goal of Washington’s Indian policy was to acquire Indian lands -- in that he succeeded

his second goal, of far less importance to Washington and his government,

was to establish just policies for dealings with Indian people

Because the treaties recognized Indians as living in independent nations

each recognized Indian tribe has a government-to-government relationship with the United States

this tribal sovereignty assures certain federal benefits, services and protections are maintained

recognized tribes have the right to form their own government, exclude people from tribal land,

make and enforce their own civil and criminal laws, determine tribal membership, tax,

zone their land and license and regulate activities within their jurisdiction

furthermore, federally recognized tribes possess both the right and the authority

to regulate activities on their lands independently from state government control

they can enact and enforce stricter or more lenient laws and regulations

that differ from the laws of the state that surrounds their reservation

states have no authority over tribal governments

except when that control is expressly authorized by Congress

BRITISH CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER RETURNS TO LONDON, ENGLAND

Captain George Vancouver arrived in London -- September 1795

he had proven there was no Northwest Passage, Vancouver wrote: **“I trust the precision with which the survey of the coast of North West America has been carried into effect will removed every doubt, and set aside every opinion of a north-west passage, or any water communication navigable for shipping, existing between the North Pacific, and the interior of the American continent, within the limits of our researches.”[[132]](#footnote-132)**

in addition Captain Vancouver had achieved several other notable goals:

•he had helped remove Spain as a power in the Pacific Northwest;

•he had assisted in the unification of the Kingdom of Hawaii under Kamehameha

and further established British domination of Australia and New Zealand;

•he left the world hundreds, perhaps thousands, of place names

as Dr. Archibald Menzies added hundreds of plant species names;

but Vancouver was disappointed he was not allowed to resolve the Nootka Sound Crisis

that had taken so much of his time

HMS *DISCOVERY* ARRIVES IN LONDON

Lieutenant Joseph Baker, an America, brought *Discovery* safely home

to Long Reach on the Thames in London, England-- September 12, 1795

*Discovery* had been at sea four and a half years

(armed tender *Chatham* under the command of Peter Puget arrived a few weeks later)

Vancouver, Puget and members of his expedition had minutely explored the Strait of Juan de Fuca,

Puget Sound, the Salish Sea and Alaskan waters during their three-year visit

beginning [April 26, 1792]

but British citizens and their government were more interested in the ongoing war with Jamaica

than they were in Pacific explorations

CAPTAIN GEORGE VANCOUVER DID NOT RECEIVE A HERO’S WELCOME

Captain George Vancouver faced difficulties when he returned to London

he seemed to have generated a certain amount of respect from his officers

and many of his crewmen -- even if he had few friends among them

even so, George Vancouver was accused of strict, even harsh, treatment of his crew

(Vancouver’s shipmate on the James Cook’s third expedition, Lieutenant William Bligh

had lost his ship during the “Mutiny on the *Bounty*” [1789]

Captain Vancouver was constantly leery of an insurrection on his own ship)

Captain Vancouver was attacked by politically well-connected enemies:

•such as naturalist Dr. Archibald Menzies who was usually on good terms with Vancouver

became upset when his plant specimens and been damage and some died

because his servant had been pressed into service as a lookout during a storm

Menzies who had been arrested by Vancouver for insolence and contempt

also Vancouver demanded Menzies’ journals but the doctor refused to give them up

leading to the involvement of the British Admiralty and Sir Joseph Banks

president of the British Royal Society of London for Improving Natural Knowledge

•sailing Master Joseph Whidbey placed a claim for additional pay as expedition astronomer

this claim was not supported by Vancouver

•young Thomas Pitt, 2nd Baron Camelford and cousin of Prime Minister William Pitt the Younger,

had been returned to England by Vancouver in disgrace aboard the supply ship, *Daedelus* Thomas Pitt challenged Vancouver to a duel

but the captain refused to be held personally responsible for any professional decision

Pitt chose to stalk Vancouver and ultimately assaulted him on a London street corner

Vancouver’s brother, Charles, attacked Pitt on a London street and had to be restrained

newspapers attacked Vancouver -- his career was effectively over

in the end one of Britain’s greatest navigators was no match for the political powers

that had been thrust against him -- and he was dying

Vancouver’s massive cartographical work was only a few hundred pages short of completion

when he died in obscurity at Petersham, Richmond, England at age forty-one [May 10, 1798]

less than three years after completing his voyage

his modest grave lies in St. Peters churchyard, Petersham, England

his cartographical work was completed by Peter Puget

SPANISH HERO CAPTAIN ALESSANDRO MALASPINA’S REPORT IS NOT PUBLISHED

(France’s scientific expedition [1786] led by Comte Jean Francoise de La Perouse [Count Galaup]

and British Captain George Vancouver’s survey of the North Pacific Coast [1792-1795]

had resulted in reports that were published by the governments of France [1797]

and Great Britain and [1798])

Alejandro Malaspina, Spain’s popular romantic hero and leader of her greatest scientific expedition,

came to the conclusion after examining the political situation in Spain’s Pacific colonies

that instead of economically plundering her colonies Spain must develop a confederation

of states whose members would conduct international trade

managed by the Spanish from Acapulco

Malaspina prepared a very large report for the Spanish government

seven volumes with seventy maps and seventy other illustrations

but this report was never published

after his return to Spain Malaspina became involved in political intrigues

to overthrow Spanish Prime Minister Manuel de Godoy

Captain Alejandro Malaspina was imprisoned by the prime minister

for plotting against the state -- 1795

Spain had planned to publish a grand report and atlas about his expedition

but after his political downfall this became impossible

Malaspina’s report and supporters were scattered

Spanish authorities, unwilling to publish Malaspina’s report, which would have surpassed any other,

settled on publishing only the account of Dionisio Alcala Galiano’s portion of the expedition

Malaspina’s name and information was completely ignored

in effect, Galiano replaced Malaspina as Spain’s great explorer of the late 18th Century

Alejandro Malaspina was released from prison after seven years

when France’s Napoleon Bonaparte intervened on his behalf

Malaspina retired to Pontremoli, Spain where he died at age fifty-five [April 9, 1810]

ERA OF SPANISH CONTROL OF THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST COMES TO AN END

British Captain Charles Bishop’s *Ruby* was the sister ship of Captain James Baker’s *Jenny*

(*Jenny* was found at anchor in the Columbia River by Lieutenant William Broughton [1792])

Captain Bishop made a note in his ship’s log -- October 1795

that after trading for furs in the north, he stopped “at a deserted Spanish village”[[133]](#footnote-133) to gather boards to protect his ship and men from the weather

this could have been either Santa Cruz de Nuca at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound

or Nunez Gaona (Neah Bay)

EDMONTON HOUSE IS BUILT BY HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY

Edmonton House (also known as Fort Edmonton and as Fort-des-Prairies by French-Canadians) was constructed by Hudson’s Bay Company’s William Tomison

on the Saskatchewan River -- fall 1795

within a musket shot of the Nor’Westers’ Fort Augustus

Histories of Fort Augustus and Edmonton House were very closely linked as the two rival companies

carried the British flag and British commerce along the great rivers of Canada

from the shores of the Atlantic Ocean and Hudson Bay to the Pacific and Arctic Oceans

both of these forts served as the end point of the Carlton Trail, the main overland route

used by Metis freighters between the Red River Colony and the west

RUSSIAN TRADING ACTIVITIES EXPAND AS FAR SOUTH AS CALIFORNIA

Independent Russian trappers under the rule of leader Alexander Baranov

held the claim of settlement in Russian-America (Alaska) north of 54º-40’ latitude -- 1796

In response to Captain George Vancouver’s activities in Russian waters [1792-1795]

and the British captain’s failure to meet with him

Alexander Baranov convinced Russian fur traders to migrate south

Indian hunters working for Russian traders expanded their operations

to include the coast of California

forts and trading posts were constructed into the Spanish claim below 42º north

(today’s Oregon-California border) as far south as the Russian River

(today’s Sacramento) in California

Spain still claimed all of the territory of North America

in a dispatch to Russian Czar Paul who ascended the throne on Empress Catherine’s death -- 1796

Spain protested the violation of Spanish claims by aggressive independent Russian fur trappers

Russian incursions into Spanish territory aroused Spanish activity once again

presidios (fortresses) and missions were built in Upper (Northern) California

Monterey became the capitol of California

Spanish expeditions were sent to block Russian advances

making landings and claiming land as far north as 60º north (today’s Gulf of Alaska)

DAVID THOMPSON CHANGES COMPANIES

Hudson’s Bay Company resident Chief at York Factory Joseph Colen

ordered company surveyor David Thompson to stop surveying

he was to confine his activities to trading

Thompson’s soul must have fared poorly behind a desk or cramped behind a counter

trading furs for pots and pans and blankets

David Thompson became frustrated with Joseph Colen’s interpretation of the company’s policies

at age twenty-seven he quit Hudson’s Bay Company

he walked eighty miles in the snow with most of his instruments and books

from Bedford House on Reindeer Lake, Saskatchewan to the North West Company’s post

on the Reindeer River -- May 8, 1797

DAVID THOMPSON LEAVES HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY

Frustrated with the strong emphasis on trade that characterized Hudson’s Bay Company David Thompson decided to join the rival North West Company

which encouraged exploration and mapping

Thompson wrote in his journal -- May 23, 1797

**“This day I left the service of the Hudson’s Bay Company and entered that of the Company of the Merchants** (North West Company) **from Canada. May God Almighty prosper me.”[[134]](#footnote-134)**

DAVID THOMPSON JOINS THE NORTH WEST COMPANY

Thompson set out from the North West Company post on the Reindeer River, Saskatchewan

he reached North West Company headquarters at Grand Portage on Lake Superior -- July 22, 1797

Thompson went to work as a fur trader and surveyor but he had not provided Hudson’s Bay Company

one year’s notice of his intention to resign as was the usual practice

this oversight upset his former employer

Nor’Westers pronounced him the company astronomer, surveyor and geographer

Captain Cook’s map which had just been published may have provided some inspiration

for the North West Company to compile accurate information in their area of operation

Thompson made an arrangement with the North West Company which was mutually agreed upon

he would combine fur trading with surveying

half of the North American continent was blank and Thompson set out to fill in the map

DAVID THOMPSON SETS OUT FOR THE U.S.-CANADIAN BORDER REGION

Thompson was assigned by the North West Company to identify the locations

of the company’s trading houses and the water routes which were likely to be affected

by the [1794] Jay Treaty establishing the international boundary

between the United States and Great Britain’s Canada

David Thompson set out from North West Company headquarters at Grand Portage -- August 9, 1797

on a remarkable journey of exploration

he traveled with experienced Nor’Wester Hugh McGillis

down the Rainy River to Rainy Lake, then to Lake of the Woods

and on to Lake Winnipeg before arriving at Lake Manitoba

Thompson carried a ten-inch brass sextant and set of charts and tables wherever he went

because he had no ocean, he used a small pan into which he poured mercury

creating an artificial horizon to reflect the sun, moon and stars

in his kit were two thermometers, drawing instruments and foolscap-sized (13” by 16”) paper

he was more like a British sea captain than a trader -- his figures were remarkably accurate

Thompson’s traveling companions often saw him gazing for hours into the skies

Indians called him Koo-Koo-Sint -- “the Man Who Looks at Stars”

Thompson noted: **“I told them it was to determine the distance and direction from the place I observed to other places, neither the Canadians nor the Indians believed me. Their opinions were that I was looking into futurity.”**[[135]](#footnote-135)

DAVID THOMPSON’S SURVEY

David Thompson and Hugh McGillis traveled from Lake Manitoba and Lake Winnipegoisis

there they borrowed horses from a Hudson’s Bay Company post located nearby

to travel on to the Assiniboine River -- September 17, 1797

Nor’Westers David Thompson and Hugh McGillis took separate routes

McGillis proceeded on to Red Deer Lake to revisit Fort Red Deer River which he founded [1794]

David Thompson continued his surveying efforts for the next two months

he ascended the Shoal River to Swan River House

then traveled the Swan River Valley to the Assiniboine and Red Deer rivers

DAVID THOMPSON CONTINES HIS EFFORT TO SURVEY THE UPPER MISSOURI RIVER

Not content with this exploration, Thompson set out with nine men

Thompson set out from Grand Portage on Lake Superior

to try to accurately survey the Mandan Villages located along the banks of the Missouri River

and two of its tributaries, the Heart and Knife rivers (in today’s North and South Dakota)

(Mandans had first encountered Europeans [1738]

it was estimated that at that time 15,000 Mandans resided in the nine villages on the Heart River

their villages featured large, round earth lodges about forty feet in diameter

that surrounded a central plaza

they lived on bison and farmed as they actively traded goods with other Great Plains tribes

they served as middlemen in the trade in furs, horses, guns, crops and buffalo products)

David Thompson arrived at the Mandan Villages

located along Lake Sakakawea on the upper Missouri River -- November 28, 1797 Thompson was given the task of developing trade with these Indians

he tried to persuade the Mandans to travel to the nearest North West Company post to trade

but they were fearful of the Sioux Indians who had long been their enemy

although he was unable to convince the Mandans to travel to trade,

he did manage to record 375 words of the Mandan vocabulary

DAVID THOMPSON CONTINUES HIS SURVERY OF THE UPPER MISSOURI RIVER

Thompson remained with the Mandan Indians until -- January 10, 1798

when he moved on to investigate the headwaters of the Mississippi River system

Thompson set out to survey the route linking the Mississippi River and Red River

with the North West Company headquarters at Grand Portage (Minnesota) on Lake Superior

then he pressed on to survey Lake Superior’s southern shore

DAVID THOMPSON SETS OUT TO SURVEY THE RED RIVER (OF THE NORTH)

Thompson set out from Lake Superior bound for the Red River (of the North) -- January 26, 1798

he mapped the Red River which runs between (today’s states of Minnesota and North Dakota)

it flows northward through the Red River Valley before emptying into Lake Winnipeg

and joins the Nelson River and ultimately enters Hudson Bay

David Thompson ascended the Red River and Red Lake Rivers to Red Lake (Minnesota)

where he waited for spring -- March 24, 1798

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE’S LATER LIFE

With his explorations of to the Arctic Ocean and across the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean

Alexander Mackenzie provided conclusive proof of no Northwest Passage North of 50º north

he discovered and described for others to follow a Northern route across the continent

although the Columbia River was inaccurately mapped

he was interested in creating a line of posts from the mouth of Columbia River

to connect with head of Saskatchewan River and on to Lake Winnipeg

and Nelson River to Hudson Bay

as he reported: **“By these waters that discharge themselves into Hudson’s Bay at Port Nelson, it is proposed to carry on the trade to their source at the head of the Saskatchewan River, which rises in the Rocky Mountains, not eight degrees of longitude from the Pacific Ocean. The Tacouche Tesse, or Columbia** [in this Mackenzie was in error as what he knew as the Tacouche Tesse is today’s Fraser River] **flows also from the same mountains and discharges itself likewise into the Pacific in latitude forty-six degrees twenty minutes. Both of them are capable of receiving ships at their mouths, and are navigable throughout for boats.”[[136]](#footnote-136)**

Alexander Mackenzie announced his retirement from the fur trade -- 1798

(Mackenzie went to London where his journal was published [1801]

*Alexander Mackenzie’s Voyages From Montreal to the Frozen and Pacific Ocean in 1793*

Mackenzie explained the lengthytime between the event and the publication: **“The delay actually arose from the very active and busy mode of life in which I was engaged since the voyages have been completed.”**[[137]](#footnote-137)

[his book was read by President Thomas Jefferson and was carried by Lewis and Clark]

Alexander Mackenzie was knighted by England’s King George III

for his efforts in exploring the northern and western portions of North America

Sir Alexander Mackenzie returned to Canada

he was elected to the legislature of Lower Canada [today’s Quebec in [1804-1808]

as a member of the Canadian Parliament he proposed the North West Company

and Hudson’s Bay Company unite and partner with the East India Company

this proved to be beyond the reach of even Alexander Mackenzie

unable to sell his grand scheme and not particularly interested in politics

Mackenzie returned to England at age forty-five

three years later married fourteen-year-old heiress Geddes Mackenzie of Avoch

two-thirds of the village of Avoch, Scotland was part of the Mackenzie estate

Alexander Mackenzie maintained two houses

one on the Avoch estate and another in London until his death [March 12, 1820])

DAVID THOMPSON CONTINUES HIS MAPPING OF THE NORTH WEST COMPANY ROUTE

Thompson journeyed eastward from Red Lake (Minnesota) -- March 24, 1798

he traveled toward Turtle Lake (Wisconsin) which he mistakenly declared

to be the headwaters of the Mississippi River

(he missed the river’s source located at Lake Itasca about forty-five miles to the west)

DAVID THOMPSON COMPLETES HIS SURVEY OF THE UPPER MISSISSIPPI RIVER

Thompson continued on from the headwaters of the Mississippi River

to Lake Superior where he arrived -- May 1798

he surveyed its southern shore to Sault Ste. Marie

before surveying the northern shore of Lake Superior to Grand Portage

David Thompson completed his survey of 4,190 miles from Grand Portage, through Lake Winnipeg,

to the headwaters of the Assiniboine and Mississippi rivers,

as well as two sides of Lake Superior

Thompson located many North West Company trading houses

some of these were south of the new international border which meant

they would have to be given up to the Americans

As a result of Thompson’s efforts North West Company relocated its headquarters

from Grand Portage to Fort Kaministiquia (later renamed Fort William)

on the north shore of Lake Superior at Thunder Bay, Ontario

to comply with demands of the [1794] Jay Treaty

DAVID THOMPSON CONDUCTS TRADE WITH THE INDIANS

David Thompson was given the task of developing trade with the Indians

he would have no liquor in his brigades nor would he use it in the trade for furs

once he was ordered by company partners

Donald McTavish and John McDonald of Garth

to take some kegs of whiskey for trade with the tribes in the mountains

Thompson selected a vicious, unbroken horse to pack the kegs

and then let it go through the rough country at its own speed

only splinters of the kegs remained when the brigade reached the trading post

Thompson reported he felt sure the same costly accident would occur

if another unwise attempt were made to transport liquor across the mountains

Nor’Wester David Thompson was goaded by his partners for his piety

devoutly religious, Thompson preached the moral life

to the voyageurs and coureurs-de-bois who traveled with him

seldom did an evening pass in camp that Thompson did not read aloud from his Bible

to his illiterate men as they smoked their clay pipes by the campfire

three chapters from the Old Testament

and three chapters from the New Testament,

and then he expounded their meaning

in **“most extraordinarily pronounced French”[[138]](#footnote-138)**

he grew to value the spiritual life of native Americans

Thompson was off again, this time through Rainy Lake to Lake Winnipeg -- July 14, 1798

he went up the Saskatchewan River to Hudson’s Bay Company’s Cumberland House

which was under the control of his friend Peter Fidler from the Grey Coat School days

DAVID THOMPSON AGAIN SURVEYS FOR NORTH WEST COMPANY

Half of the continent was blank and Thompson set out to fill in the map

arrangements with the North West Company to combine business with surveying

was mutually agreed upon

North West Company sent Thompson up to Lac La Biche (Alberta, Canada)

for this trip, he traveled by way of the Churchill River, through Lac La Ronge (Saskatchewan)

and on to Lac Ile-a-la-Crosse (Saskatchewan) then up the Beaver River

he arrived back at Lac la Biche -- September

DAVID THOMPSON EXPLORES NORTHERN ALBERTA

He set out from Lac la Biche (Alberta, Canada) -- March 1799

traveling first to Fort Augustus (near present day Edmonton)

before returning to Lac la Biche

He surveyed the Pembina River and Athabasca River to Lesser Slave Lake (all in Alberta)

he continued down the Athabasca River to the Clearwater River (at today’s Fort McMurray)

then traveled up the Clearwater River (then called tge Methy Portage River) to Methy Lake,

before moving on to Lac Ile-a-la-Crosse [where he arrived May 20])

DAVID THOMPSON TAKES A WIFE

David Thompson married at Ile-a-la-Crosse -- June 10, 1799

Charlotte Small was nearly fourteen years old and the daughter of a Cree Indian

and North West Company partner Patrick Small who had worked with Peter Pond

inter-racial marriages among whites and natives were accepted and even encouraged

by both sides to encourage kinship ties

Theirs was to be a lasting union, and perhaps a partnership as well

years later Thompson wrote **“My lovely wife is of the blood of these [Cree] people, speaking their language, and well educated in the English language, which gives me a great advantage”[[139]](#footnote-139)**

(Charlotte’s first child, Fanny, was born two years later [1801]

seven sons and five more daughters followed

she accompanied him on many of his travels,

and return with him to Montreal at the end of his career of exploration)

After his wedding, David Thompson traveled to Grand Portage

returning there with John McDonald of Garth (who married one of Charlotte's sisters)

as far as Fort George (near St. Paul, Alberta), Thompson spent the winter there

DAVID THOMPSON’S MAPS ARE ACCURATE

Latitude can be relatively easily fixed by observing the angle of the noonday sun

Longitude requires other methods

some of which involve knowing local time (observable from the sun)

and comparing it to the time at some other point

Thompson used Greenwich Observatory Time in England

Chronometers to keep Greenwich time were too fragile

to be carried across a roadless country

because of this surveying the wilderness lands presented far greater problems than at sea

Two methods of plotting longitude were used by Thompson

both of which took a lot of time

one was to observe Greenwich time, derivable from tables,

from the moment of an eclipse of one of Jupiter’s moons,

observed through a telescope,

but considerable time had to be spent peering through the telescope

so as not to miss the exact moment of the eclipse

other method (called the method of lunar distances) involved observations

of the angle between the moon and two fixed stars

and then reference to a set of astronomical tables,

this was a reliable method but one which took about three hours to perform

Thompson spent endless hours making thousands of observations

for latitude and longitude by these methods

but through this work he was able to accurately fix the position

of thousands of points on his travels

ACTION HOUSE IS CONSTRUCTED BY HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY

James Bird had charge of Hudson’s Bay Company’s Edmonton House

he led a party of men up the Saskatchewan River to supervise the construction of Action House

near the North West Company’s Rocky Mountain House -- 1799

Hudson’s Bay Company hoped to attract the trade of the Kootenai Indians

who resided west of the Rockies

James Bird soon returned to Edmonton House

but probably resided at Acton House the following winter season 1799-[1800]

RUSSIAN-AMERICA COMPANY IS FOUNDED IN (TODAY’S ALASKA)

Czar Paul I consolidated the independent Russian traders into the Russian-America Company

he granted a trade monopoly of all coastal commerce above 55º north to run for twenty years

to the Russian-America Company headquartered in St. Petersburg, Russian-America (Alaska)

first company board meeting was held -- September 16, 1799

General Manager Alexander Andreyevich Baranov was named head of Russian-American Company

he was the sole governor of Russian-America and maintained his headquarters Kodiak (Alaska)

(company headquarters was moved to St. Petersburg [Alaska] in [1801])

Baranov provided leadership and stability to Russian trading operations in the New World

his devotion to the company and his fur traders resulted in vast prosperity for the organization

Baranov controlled settlements and trade as far north as Bristol Bay (Alaska)

and as far south as Ross, California

Russian-America was divided into several districts

each district had several storehouses or factories

each district was supervised by a sub-governor who reported to Baranov

ROCKY MOUNTAIN HOUSE IS ESTABLISHED BY THE NORTH WEST COMPANY

Nor’Wester Duncan McGillivry was instructed to set up Rocky Mountain House

on the Eastern side of the Rockies within close view of the great mountains

John McDonald of Garth led a North West Company party from Fort Augustus -- 1799

to construct Rocky Mountain House on the Saskatchewan River (near Calgary, Alberta)

(next year he was made a wintering partner in the North West Company)

Aboriginal peoples arrived at the site of Rocky Mountain House to build the fort

before construction could begin the site had to be cleared of a thick forest cover

felling trees, hauling logs, squaring timbers and sawing planks and boards

were the next back-breaking and time-consuming tasks

first structure constructed was the “trading house”

this was a large one-and-a-half or two-story building containing a trading room

storage room and “master’s room”

second building put up was the “Victual House” where meat and other perishables

were preserved with ice cut from the river during the winter

next structure built was the blacksmith’s house and forge

palisades and bastions and, lastly, the men’s cabins were completed

MUCH MAINTANINCE WAS REQUIRED ON OUTPOSTS

Regular maintenance was required at the Rocky Mountain House

when the traders arrived in the autumn

tall grass would have to be cleared from around the fort

each autumn, the buildings were freshly chinked and whitewashed with mud

roofs were often re-insulated before the onset of (winter)

with hay lining the inside and soil on the outside

often, buildings needed to be replaced completely

or needed repairs to their roofs, chimneys, floors or windows

sections of the palisade, rotted or knocked down by wind, also might need replacing snow removal was required in the (winter) months

When the site was vacated for the (summer), a controlled fire might be set around the fort just prior to the traders’ leaving to create a firebreak

and prevent bush fires from destroying the fort

doors and gates were often hidden in the woods

hardware, such as hinges, bolts and nails, usually made by the fort blacksmith,

were buried in a cache to prevent theft

on at least one occasion, the location of the cache, known only to two men

was forgotten and discovered by accident twenty years afterwards

(Spring) routine was reversed in the (autumn)

gates and doors were rehung and the fort put in order for another winter's business

TRADE FOR PELTS BEGAN TO DECLINE

Figures for the four year period [1798-1802] showed 48,500 skins were sold in China

where a capital investment of $50,000 could yield $284,000 in gross profits (before expenses)

One captain related he had collected as many as 6,000 fine furs in a single voyage

on one occasion he secured 560 of the best quality pelts in one day

Indians, however, had become independent contractors

they had become expert traders and negotiators -- they raised their prices

phenomenal profits could no longer be obtained [by 1802]

DIVIDING THE CONTINENT AT THE TURN OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY

Spain controlled vast possessions in North America

in the area east of the Mississippi River Spain maintained weak control

over Florida and New Orleans by right of discovery, exploration and settlement

in the area West of the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains

Spain maintained control of the Southwest from (today’s Texas to California)

Spain gave up her claim North of 42º (the California-Oregon border)

in the [1794] Third Nootka Convention

French possession in North America West of the Mississippi River was known as Louisiana Territory

this included all land to the Rocky Mountains south of Great Britain’s Canada

which had been lost during the French and Indian War [1754–1763]

Great Britain claimed possession of both Canada and the Great Lakes region

she held the claims of discovery, exploration and settlement

Hudson’s Bay Company and North West Company

were conducting a series of company wars along the western frontier

British maritime activities had slowed

only nine British vessels traded on the Northwest coast during the years [1800-1810]

Russia’s possessions north of 55º north latitude were being developed

by the Russian-America Company’s Alexander Andreyevich Baranov

but delivering trade goods from Russia to the company headquarters was difficult

and most furs were sold in China -- not Russia

but a lack of ships made this trade difficult and irregular

Baranov expanded his control south as far as California

United States maintained control of the Eastern seaboard of North America

in the region North of Spanish Florida, South of British Canada and East of the Mississippi River

thus surrounded the United States was trapped in the Appalachian Mountains and Eastward

and in the valley of the Ohio River which was contested by Great Britain

1. Locations noted in parenthesis (for example Mexico) were not known by that name at the time. [↑](#footnote-ref-1)
2. Rev. I.D. Drover, D.D., Oregon Pioneer Association, Transactions of the Fifteenth Annual Reunion, 1887, P. 72. [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
3. *The General Evening Post* and *The Whitehall Evening Post,* May 1, 1790 [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
4. Murray C. Morgan, *The John Meares Expedition,* P. 22. [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
5. David Lavender, *Land of Giants,* P. 36. [↑](#footnote-ref-5)
6. Oscar Osburn Winther, *The Old Oregon Country: A History of Frontier Trade Transportation and Trave*l, P. 19. [↑](#footnote-ref-6)
7. Gordon Speck. *Northwest Explorations,* P. 153-154. [↑](#footnote-ref-7)
8. Locations noted in parenthesis (for example Mexico) were not known by that name at the time. [↑](#footnote-ref-8)
9. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 85. [↑](#footnote-ref-9)
10. Joseph Schafer, *A History of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 20. [↑](#footnote-ref-10)
11. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 85. [↑](#footnote-ref-11)
12. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest.,* P. 85. [↑](#footnote-ref-12)
13. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations,* P. 132-133. [↑](#footnote-ref-13)
14. David Lavender, *Land of Giants,* P. 41. [↑](#footnote-ref-14)
15. David Lavender, *Land of Giants,* P. 39. [↑](#footnote-ref-15)
16. Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names.* P. 280. [↑](#footnote-ref-16)
17. David J. Weber, *Spaniards and Their Savages in the Age of Enlightenment,* P. 43. [↑](#footnote-ref-17)
18. Hubert Howe Bancroft, *History of the Northwest Coast,* P. 723. [↑](#footnote-ref-18)
19. Johansen and Gates. *Empire of the Columbia.* P. 68-69. [↑](#footnote-ref-19)
20. Note: Captain Vancouver’s journal is one day off due to not having taken into account his crossing of today’s [International Date Line](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Date_Line) which did not exist until 1884 and even then its specific course through the Pacific Ocean was not identified. [↑](#footnote-ref-20)
21. Oscar Winther, *The Great Northwest,* P. 29. [↑](#footnote-ref-21)
22. Johansen and Gates, *Empire of the Columbia,* P. 52. [↑](#footnote-ref-22)
23. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Exploration,* P. 135. [↑](#footnote-ref-23)
24. Locations that are in quotation marks and highlighted i.e., **“Point Grenville”** were named at approximately that time. [↑](#footnote-ref-24)
25. Lyman William Denison, *The Columbia River,* P. 63. [↑](#footnote-ref-25)
26. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P 34. [↑](#footnote-ref-26)
27. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P 34. [↑](#footnote-ref-27)
28. Captain Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names*, P. 27. [↑](#footnote-ref-28)
29. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P 34. [↑](#footnote-ref-29)
30. Johansen and Gates, *Empire of the Columbia,* P. 53-54. [↑](#footnote-ref-30)
31. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P. 34. [↑](#footnote-ref-31)
32. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P. 34-35. [↑](#footnote-ref-32)
33. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State.* P. 35-36. [↑](#footnote-ref-33)
34. Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names, P*. 143. [↑](#footnote-ref-34)
35. Locations that are in quotation marks and highlighted i.e., **“Port Hudson”** were named at approximately that time. [↑](#footnote-ref-35)
36. Names in parentheses but not highlighted, i.e., (Kilisut Harbor) were applied at some later time. [↑](#footnote-ref-36)
37. Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon.*, P. 24. [↑](#footnote-ref-37)
38. Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage,* P. 86. [↑](#footnote-ref-38)
39. Captain George Vancouver, *A Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean, and Round the World*, Vol. 1, P. 234. [↑](#footnote-ref-39)
40. Richard W. Blumenthal editor, *With Vancouver in Inland Washington Waters,* P. 26. [↑](#footnote-ref-40)
41. Lucile McDonald *Search for the Northwest Passage,* P. 87. [↑](#footnote-ref-41)
42. Richard W. Blumenthal editor, *With Vancouver in Inland Washington Waters,* P. 21. [↑](#footnote-ref-42)
43. James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington,* P. 9. [↑](#footnote-ref-43)
44. “REMNANT OF the Official Log of the ‘Columbia,’” in Voyages of the “Columbia” to the Northwest Coast: 1787-1790 and 1790-1793, ed. Frederic W. Howay, (Boston: Massachusetts Historical Society, 1941), P. 435. [↑](#footnote-ref-44)
45. James A Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington,* P. 9. [↑](#footnote-ref-45)
46. Samuel Eliot Morison, *The Maritime History of Massachusetts 1783-1860, P. 50-51.* [↑](#footnote-ref-46)
47. “REMNANT OF the Official Log of the ‘Columbia,’” in Voyages of the “Columbia” to the Northwest Coast: 1787-1790 and 1790-1793, ed. Frederic W. Howay (Boston: Massachusetts Historical Society, 1941), P. 435. [↑](#footnote-ref-47)
48. James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington,* P. 9. [↑](#footnote-ref-48)
49. “REMNANT OF the Official Log of the ‘Columbia,’” in Voyages of the “Columbia” to the Northwest Coast: 1787-1790 and 1790-1793, ed. Frederic W. Howay (Boston: Massachusetts Historical Society, 1941), P. 435. [↑](#footnote-ref-49)
50. Archibald Menzies, *Journal of Dr. Archibald Menzies*, P. 19. [↑](#footnote-ref-50)
51. James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington,* P. 10. [↑](#footnote-ref-51)
52. David Lavender, *Land of Giants,* P. 45. [↑](#footnote-ref-52)
53. James R. Fichter, So Great a Proffit, P. 311. [↑](#footnote-ref-53)
54. James A. Crutchfield, *It Happened in Washington,* P. 10. [↑](#footnote-ref-54)
55. Captain George Vancouver, *Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean and Round the World,* P. 260-261. [↑](#footnote-ref-55)
56. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations,* P. 144. [↑](#footnote-ref-56)
57. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-57)
58. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-58)
59. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-59)
60. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-60)
61. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-61)
62. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P. 29-30. [↑](#footnote-ref-62)
63. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations,* P. 160. [↑](#footnote-ref-63)
64. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-64)
65. Juan Francisco de Eliza named this Isla de Pacheco (1791) [↑](#footnote-ref-65)
66. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-66)
67. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-67)
68. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-68)
69. This is today’s Ketron Island. [↑](#footnote-ref-69)
70. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-70)
71. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-71)
72. This is today’s Ketron Island [↑](#footnote-ref-72)
73. Al Gibbs, “The News Tribune,” May 17, 1992. [↑](#footnote-ref-73)
74. Edmond S. Meany, Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound, P. 162. [↑](#footnote-ref-74)
75. Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage,* P. 91. [↑](#footnote-ref-75)
76. Named by Lieutenant Francisco de Eliza in 1790 for Lieutenant-Commander Jacinto Caamano of the Spanish Navy. [↑](#footnote-ref-76)
77. Juan Francisco de Eliza named the island Isla de Fidalgo for Lieutenant Salvador Fidalgo of the Spanish Navy. [↑](#footnote-ref-77)
78. Clarence Bagley, History of Seattle from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time…, Vol. 1 P. 5. [↑](#footnote-ref-78)
79. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-79)
80. Edmond S. Meany, Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound, P. 178. [↑](#footnote-ref-80)
81. Vendovi received the name of Islas de Aguayo from Dionisio Galiano. [↑](#footnote-ref-81)
82. Lieutenant Dionisio Galiano of the *Sutil* journal entry [↑](#footnote-ref-82)
83. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 87. [↑](#footnote-ref-83)
84. Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names,* P. 477-478. [↑](#footnote-ref-84)
85. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 87. [↑](#footnote-ref-85)
86. Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 321-323. [↑](#footnote-ref-86)
87. Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage,* P. 114. [↑](#footnote-ref-87)
88. Oscar Osburn Winther, *The Great Northwest,* P. 29. [↑](#footnote-ref-88)
89. Oscar Osburn Winther, *The Great Northwest,* P. 29. [↑](#footnote-ref-89)
90. Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 347-349. [↑](#footnote-ref-90)
91. Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 347-349. [↑](#footnote-ref-91)
92. Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 355-357. [↑](#footnote-ref-92)
93. Edmond S. Meany, *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*, P. 360-361. [↑](#footnote-ref-93)
94. Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage,* P. 118. [↑](#footnote-ref-94)
95. Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage,* P. 118. [↑](#footnote-ref-95)
96. George Fuller, *A History of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 55. [↑](#footnote-ref-96)
97. George W. Fuller, *A History of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 52. [↑](#footnote-ref-97)
98. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest.* P. 88. [↑](#footnote-ref-98)
99. George W. Fuller, *A History of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 56. [↑](#footnote-ref-99)
100. Charles Chapman, *History of California*, P. 405. [↑](#footnote-ref-100)
101. Alexander Mackenzie, *The Journals of Alexander Mackenzie: Exploring Across Canada in 1789 & 1793*, P. 65. [↑](#footnote-ref-101)
102. Alexander Mackenzie, First Man West: Alexander Mackenzie's Journal of His Voyage to the Pacific Coast of Canada in 1793. P. 63. [↑](#footnote-ref-102)
103. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations,* P. 225. [↑](#footnote-ref-103)
104. George Bird Grinnell, *Trails of the Pathfinders*, P. 106-107. [↑](#footnote-ref-104)
105. Joseph Schafer, *A History of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-105)
106. Johansen and Gates, *Empire of the Columbia,* P. 84. [↑](#footnote-ref-106)
107. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 32. [↑](#footnote-ref-107)
108. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 40. [↑](#footnote-ref-108)
109. Gordon Speck. *Northwest Explorations,* P. 226. [↑](#footnote-ref-109)
110. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 43. [↑](#footnote-ref-110)
111. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 43. [↑](#footnote-ref-111)
112. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 44. [↑](#footnote-ref-112)
113. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 54. [↑](#footnote-ref-113)
114. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 74. [↑](#footnote-ref-114)
115. Captain George Vancouver, *Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean and Round the World.* P. 268. [↑](#footnote-ref-115)
116. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations,* P. 228. [↑](#footnote-ref-116)
117. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 95. [↑](#footnote-ref-117)
118. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 102. [↑](#footnote-ref-118)
119. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 112. [↑](#footnote-ref-119)
120. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 137. [↑](#footnote-ref-120)
121. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 139-140. [↑](#footnote-ref-121)
122. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 193. [↑](#footnote-ref-122)
123. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 251. [↑](#footnote-ref-123)
124. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 261-262. [↑](#footnote-ref-124)
125. Germaine Warkentin, editor *Canadian Exploration Literature.* [↑](#footnote-ref-125)
126. Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyage to the Pacific Ocean in 1793,* P. 298-299. [↑](#footnote-ref-126)
127. Alexander Mackenzie, *Voyages from Montreal,* P. 340. [↑](#footnote-ref-127)
128. Captain John T. Walbran, *British Columbia Coast Names,* P. 528. [↑](#footnote-ref-128)
129. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Exploration,* P. 143-144. [↑](#footnote-ref-129)
130. Captain George Vancouver, *A Voyage of Discovery to the North Pacific Ocean, and Round the World*, Vol. 3, P. 301. [↑](#footnote-ref-130)
131. Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon,* P. 104. [↑](#footnote-ref-131)
132. Derek Hayes, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 90. [↑](#footnote-ref-132)
133. Lucile McDonald, *Search for the Northwest Passage,* P. 28 [↑](#footnote-ref-133)
134. Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon,* P. 96. [↑](#footnote-ref-134)
135. *National Geographic,* May, 1996. Priit J. Vesilind. P. 122. [↑](#footnote-ref-135)
136. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations,* P. 231. [↑](#footnote-ref-136)
137. Gordon Speck, *Northwest Explorations,* P. 234. [↑](#footnote-ref-137)
138. Constance Lindsay Skinner, *Adventurers of Oregon,* P. 100. [↑](#footnote-ref-138)
139. Jack Nisbet, *Source of the River,* P. 49. [↑](#footnote-ref-139)